BANK OF NOVA SCOTIA /
Form 424B3
August 20, 2014
Filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3)

Registration Statement No. 333-188984

The Bank of Nova Scotia
(a Canadian chartered bank)

unconditionally and irrevocably guaranteed as to payments of interest and principal by

Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership
(a limited partnership established under the laws of the Province of Ontario)
Covered Bonds

up to an aggregate initial offering price of U.S.$15,000,000,000

or the equivalent thereof in other currencies under the global registered covered bond program

This prospectus describes some of the general terms that may apply to these covered bonds and the related guarantee and the general manner in which they may be offered. We will give you the specific prices and other terms of the covered bonds we are offering in supplements to this prospectus. You should read this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement carefully before you invest. We may sell the covered bonds to or through one or more dealers or agents. The names of the dealers or agents will be set forth in supplements to this prospectus.

Prospective investors should be aware that the acquisition of the covered bonds described herein may have tax consequences both in the United States and in Canada. Such consequences may not be described fully herein or in any applicable prospectus supplement.

Investing in the covered bonds involves risks. See "*Risk Factors*" beginning on page 22 of this prospectus.

The enforcement by investors of civil liabilities under United States federal securities laws may be affected adversely by the fact that The Bank of Nova Scotia is a Canadian bank, that many of its officers and directors are residents of Canada, that Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership is a limited partnership existing under the laws of the Province of Ontario, that some or all of the dealers or experts named in the registration statement may be residents outside of the United States, and that all or a substantial portion of the assets of The Bank of Nova Scotia, Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership and such persons may be located outside the United States.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined that this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The covered bonds described herein will not constitute deposits that are insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (Canada) or by the United States Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

THE COVERED BONDS HAVE NOT BEEN APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED BY CANADA MORTGAGE AND HOUSING CORPORATION ("CMHC") NOR HAS CMHC PASSED UPON THE ACCURACY OR

ADEQUACY OF THIS PROSPECTUS. THE COVERED BONDS ARE NEITHER INSURED NOR GUARANTEED BY CMHC OR THE GOVERNMENT OF CANADA OR ANY OTHER AGENCY THEREOF.

Arrangers for the Program

Barclays Scotiabank

The date of this prospectus is August 20, 2014

Table of Contents

	Page
ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	3
SUMMARY	9
PROGRAM STRUCTURE DIAGRAM	12
SUMMARY OF THE COVERED BOND PROGRAM	13
RISK FACTORS	22
USE OF PROCEEDS	53
CONSOLIDATED EARNINGS RATIOS	54
CONSOLIDATED CAPITALIZATION OF THE BANK	55
THE BANK OF NOVA SCOTIA	56
SCOTIABANK COVERED BOND GUARANTOR LIMITED PARTNERSHIP	58
DESCRIPTION OF THE COVERED BONDS	63
TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE COVERED BONDS	70
SUMMARY OF THE PRINCIPAL DOCUMENTS	114
CASHFLOWS	179
COVERED BOND PORTFOLIO	194
LOAN ORIGINATION AND LENDING CRITERIA	196
THE SERVICER	203
DESCRIPTION OF THE CANADIAN REGISTERED COVERED BOND PROGRAM REGIME	207
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION (AND CONFLICTS OF INTEREST)	210
TAXATION	214
BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR CONSIDERATIONS	232
OWNERSHIP AND BOOK-ENTRY	235
EXPERTS	239
LEGAL MATTERS	240
OTHER EXPENSES OF ISSUANCE AND DISTRIBUTION	241
GLOSSARY	242

In this prospectus, unless the context otherwise indicates, the "**Issuer**" or the "**Bank**" means The Bank of Nova Scotia, and "**Guarantor**" means Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership, and "**we**," "**us**" or "**our**" means the Bank and Guarantor collectively. In this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, currency amounts are stated in Canadian Dollars (**$**), unless specified otherwise.

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This document is called a prospectus and is part of a registration statement that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**SEC**") using a "shelf" registration or continuous offering process. The registration statement containing this prospectus, including exhibits to the registration statement, provides additional information about us and the covered bonds and related guarantee offered under this prospectus. The registration statement can be accessed at the SEC's website at www.sec.gov or inspected at the offices of the SEC.

This prospectus provides you with a general description of the covered bonds the Bank may offer and the Guarantor may guarantee. Each time the Bank offers covered bonds pursuant to this prospectus, it will provide a prospectus supplement containing specific information about the terms of the covered bonds being offered. A prospectus supplement may include a discussion of any risk factors or other special considerations applicable to those covered bonds or to us. A prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information in this prospectus. If there is any inconsistency between the information in this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, you should rely on the information in the prospectus supplement. You should read both this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement together with additional information described under the heading "*Where You Can Find More Information*" on page 5 of this prospectus.

The Bank may sell covered bonds to dealers who will sell the covered bonds to the public on terms fixed at the time of sale. In addition, the covered bonds may be sold by the Bank directly or through agents designated from time to time. If the Bank, directly or through agents, solicits offers to purchase the covered bonds, it reserves the sole right to accept and, together with any agents, to reject, in whole or in part, any of those offers.

Any prospectus supplement will contain the names of the dealers or agents, if any, together with the terms of offering, the compensation of those dealers and the net proceeds to us. Any dealers or agents participating in the offering may be deemed "underwriters" within the meaning of the Securities Act.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to "incorporate by reference" into this prospectus the information in documents we file with it. This means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is considered to be a part of this prospectus and should be read with the same care. When we update the information contained in documents that have been incorporated by reference by making future filings with the SEC the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus is considered to be automatically updated and superseded. The modifying or superseding statement need not state that it has modified or superseded a prior statement or include any other information set forth in the document that it modifies or supersedes. In other words, in the case of a conflict or inconsistency between information contained in this prospectus and information incorporated by reference into this prospectus, you should rely on the information contained in the document that was filed later. The making of a modifying or superseding statement will not be deemed an admission for any purposes that the modified or superseded statement, when made, constituted a misrepresentation, an untrue statement of a material fact or an omission to state a material fact that is required to be stated or that is necessary to make a statement not misleading in light of the circumstances in which it was made. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus.

The Bank incorporates by reference into this prospectus its annual report on Form 40-F for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013 (the "**2013 Annual Report**"), the Bank's reports filed on Form 6-K filed on March 4, 2014 (Film No. 14664929), March 4, 2014 (Film No. 14665464), May 27, 2014 (Film No. 14869142) and May 27, 2014 (Film No. 14869530) and each of the Bank's reports on Form 6-K after that date in which the Bank states that such report is also incorporated by reference into one or more of the Bank's registration statements filed under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"). In addition, the Bank will incorporate by reference into this prospectus all documents that it has filed under Section 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act and, to the extent, if any, the Bank designates therein, reports on Form 6-K it furnishes to the SEC after the date of this prospectus and prior to the termination of any offering contemplated in this prospectus.

The Guarantor will file ongoing disclosure regarding the Covered Bond Guarantee and the Portfolio in reports on Form 10-K, Form 8-K and Form 10-D. The Guarantor incorporates by reference its Form 10-D filed on August 15, 2014 (Film No. 141047452), its annual report on Form 10-K filed after the date of this prospectus and each Form 8-K and Form 10-D filed with the SEC after the date of this prospectus. In addition, the Guarantor will incorporate by reference into this prospectus all documents that it has filed under Section 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after the date of this prospectus and prior to the termination of every offering contemplated in this prospectus.

Upon a new annual report and the related annual financial statements being filed by the Bank with, and, where required, accepted by, the SEC, the previous annual report will be deemed no longer incorporated by reference into this prospectus for purposes of future offers and sales of covered bonds under this prospectus.

Upon a new annual report being filed by the Guarantor with, and, where required, accepted by, the SEC, the previous annual report will be deemed no longer incorporated by reference into this prospectus for the purposes of further offers and sales of covered bonds under this prospectus.

All documents incorporated by reference, or to be incorporated by reference, have been filed with or furnished to, or will be filed with or furnished to, the SEC.

You may request a copy of these filings, other than an exhibit to a filing unless that exhibit is specifically incorporated by reference into that filing, at no cost, by writing to or telephoning us at the following address:

The Bank of Nova Scotia

Scotia Plaza, 44 King Street West

Toronto, Ontario

Canada M5H 1H1

Attention: Secretary

Telephone: (416) 866-3672

4

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

In addition to the continuous disclosure obligations under the securities laws of the provinces and territories of Canada, the Bank and the Guarantor are subject to the informational reporting requirements of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**Exchange Act**"), and in accordance therewith files reports and other information with the SEC. Under a multijurisdictional disclosure system adopted by the United States and Canada, such reports and other information may be prepared in accordance with the disclosure requirements of the provincial and territorial securities regulatory authorities of Canada, which requirements are different from those of the United States. These reports and other information, when filed or furnished by us in accordance with such requirements, can be inspected and copied by you at the SEC's Public Reference Room located at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You can get further information about the SEC's Public Reference Room by calling 1-800-SEC-0330. The Bank's and the Guarantor's filings with the SEC are also available to the public through the SEC's website at www.sec.gov. The Bank's common shares are listed on the New York Stock Exchange, and reports and other information concerning the Bank can be inspected at the offices of the New York Stock Exchange, 20 Broad Street, New York, New York 10005.

The Bank and the Guarantor have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form F-3 with respect to the covered bonds and related guarantee covered by this prospectus. This prospectus does not contain all of the information that is set forth in the registration statement, certain parts of which are omitted in accordance with the rules and regulations of the SEC. Statements made in this prospectus as to the contents of any contract, agreement or other document referred to are not necessarily complete, and in each instance, you should refer to the exhibits that are a part of the registration statement for a copy of the contract, agreement or other document for a more complete description of the matter. For further information with respect to the Bank, the Guarantor, the covered bonds and the related guarantee, reference is made to the registration statement and the exhibits thereto, which are publicly available as described in the preceding paragraph.

Additional information with respect to the Bank, the Guarantor, the Portfolio and certain other matters, together with copies of each of the Transaction Documents and the Investor Reports filed by the Bank from time to time, is also available on the Bank's website specified in the applicable prospectus supplement and through the CMHC's covered bond registry at http://www.cmhc-schl.gc.ca/coveredbonds. Information on or accessible through the Bank's website does not form part of this prospectus and should not be relied upon.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

From time to time, the Bank or the Guarantor may make written or oral forward-looking statements. Statements of this type are included in this Prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference in this Prospectus, and may be included in other filings with Canadian securities regulators or the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, or in other communications. All such statements by the Bank (but not the Guarantor) are made pursuant to the "safe harbor" provisions of the United States Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 and any applicable Canadian securities legislation. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements made in this document, the Management's Discussion and Analysis in the Bank's 2013 Annual Report under the headings *"Overview – Outlook"*, for Group Financial Performance "Outlook", for each business segment "Outlook" and in other statements regarding the Bank's objectives, strategies to achieve those objectives, expected financial results (including those in the area of risk management), and the outlook for the Bank's businesses and for the Canadian, United States and global economies. Such statements are typically identified by words or phrases such as "believe," "expect," "anticipate," "intent," "estimate," "plan," "may increase," "may fluctuate," and similar expressions of future or condi verbs, such as "will," "should," "would" and "could."

By their very nature, forward-looking statements involve numerous assumptions, inherent risks and uncertainties, both general and specific, and the risk that predictions and other forward-looking statements will not prove to be accurate. Do not unduly rely on forward-looking statements, as a number of important factors, many of which are beyond the control of the Bank and the Guarantor, could cause actual results to differ materially from the estimates and intentions expressed in such forward-looking statements. These factors include, but are not limited to: the economic and financial conditions in Canada and globally; fluctuations in interest rates and currency values; liquidity; significant market volatility and interruptions; the failure of third parties to comply with their obligations to the Bank and its affiliates; the effect of changes in monetary policy; legislative and regulatory developments in Canada and elsewhere, including changes in tax laws; the effect of changes to the Bank's credit ratings; amendments to, and interpretations of, risk based capital guidelines and reporting instructions and liquidity regulatory guidance; operational and reputational risks; the risk that the Bank's risk management models may not take into account all relevant factors; the accuracy and completeness of information the Bank receives on customers and counterparties; the timely development and introduction of new products and services in receptive markets; the Bank's ability to expand existing distribution channels and to develop and realize revenues from new distribution channels; the Bank's ability to complete and integrate acquisitions and its other growth strategies; changes in accounting policies and methods the Bank uses to report its financial condition and financial performance, including uncertainties associated with critical accounting assumptions and estimates (see *"Controls and Accounting Policies – Critical accounting estimates"* in the Bank's 2013 Annual Report); the effect of applying future accounting changes (see *"Controls and Accounting Policies – Future accounting developments"* in the Bank's 2013 Annual Report); global capital markets activity; the Bank's ability to attract and retain key executives; reliance on third parties to provide components of the Bank's business infrastructure; unexpected changes in consumer spending and saving habits; technological developments; fraud by internal or external parties, including the use of new technologies in unprecedented ways to defraud the Bank or its customers; consolidation in the Canadian financial services sector; competition, both from new entrants and established competitors; judicial and regulatory proceedings; acts of God, such as earthquakes and hurricanes; the possible impact of international conflicts and other developments, including terrorist acts and war on terrorism; the effects of disease or illness on local, national or international economies; disruptions to public infrastructure, including transportation, communication, power and water; and the Bank's anticipation of and success in managing the risks implied by the foregoing. A substantial amount of the Bank's business involves making loans or otherwise committing resources to specific companies, industries or countries. Unforeseen events affecting such borrowers, industries or countries could have a material adverse effect on the Bank's financial results, businesses, financial condition or liquidity. These and other factors may cause the Bank's actual performance to differ materially from that contemplated by forward-looking statements. For more information, see the "Risk Management" section starting on page 60 of the Bank's 2013 Annual Report incorporated herein by reference.

Material economic assumptions underlying the forward-looking statements are contained in the 2013 Annual Report under the headings *"Overview – Outlook"*, as updated in subsequently filed quarterly reports to shareholders; and for each business segment *"Outlook"*. These *"Outlook"* sections are based on the Bank's views and the actual outcome is uncertain. Readers should consider the above-noted factors when reviewing these sections. The preceding list of important factors is not exhaustive. When relying on forward-looking statements to make decisions with respect to the Bank and its securities or the Guarantor, investors and others should carefully consider the preceding factors, other uncertainties and potential events. The Bank and the Guarantor do not undertake to update any forward-looking statements, whether written or oral, that may be made from time to time by or on their behalf.

PRESENTATION OF FINANCIAL INFORMATION

The Bank prepares its consolidated financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ("**IFRS**"), which replaced Canadian generally accepted accounting principles ("**GAAP**") for publicly accountable enterprises beginning in 2011. IFRS became effective for the Bank for its interim and annual periods commencing November 1, 2011 (adoption date), and includes the preparation and reporting of one year of comparative figures, including an opening balance sheet as of November 1, 2010 (transition date).

Additionally, we publish our consolidated financial statements in Canadian Dollars. In this prospectus and any applicable supplement, currency amounts are stated in Canadian Dollars ($), unless specified otherwise. As indicated in the table below, the Canadian Dollar has fluctuated in value compared to the U.S. Dollar over time.

The tables below set forth the high and low daily noon exchange rates, the average yearly rate and the rate at period end between Canadian Dollars and U.S. Dollars (in U.S. Dollars per Canadian Dollar) for the five-year period ended October 31, 2013 and the high and low daily noon exchange rates for the three months ended January 31, 2014, the three months ended April 30, 2014, the three months ended July 31, 2014 and for the period August 1, 2014 through August 19, 2014. On August 19, 2014, the daily noon exchange rate was U.S.$0.9150 = $1.00. Our reference to the "**daily noon exchange rate**" is the daily noon exchange rate as reported by the Bank of Canada.

Year Ended October 31,	**High**	**Low**	**Average Rate[1]**	**At Period End**
2009	0.9716	0.7692	0.8567	0.9282
2010	1.0039	0.9278	0.9602	0.9815
2011	1.0583	0.9430	1.0156	1.0065
2012	1.0299	0.9536	0.9966	1.0004
2013	1.0164	0.9455	0.9773	0.9589

Three months ending	**High**	**Low**
January 31, 2014	0.9602	0.8952
April 30, 2014	0.9172	0.8888
July 31, 2014	0.9404	0.9106

Period of	**High**	**Low**
August 1, 2014 through August 19, 2014	0.9184	0.9106

(1) The average of the daily noon exchange rates on the last business day of each full month during the relevant period.

LIMITATIONS ON THE ENFORCEMENT OF U.S. LAWS
AGAINST THE BANK, OUR MANAGEMENT AND OTHERS

The Bank is incorporated under the federal laws of Canada under the *Bank Act* (Canada) (the "**Bank Act**"). The Guarantor is an Ontario limited partnership. Substantially all of the Bank's directors and executive officers, including many of the persons who signed the Registration Statement on Form F-3, of which this prospectus forms a part, and some or all of the experts named in this document, reside outside the United States, and all or a substantial portion of the Bank and the Guarantor's assets and the assets of such persons are located outside the United States. As a result, it may be difficult for you to effect service of process within the United States upon such persons, or to realize upon judgments rendered against the Bank or such persons by the courts of the United States predicated upon, among other things, the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the United States. In addition, it may be difficult for you to enforce, in original actions brought in courts in jurisdictions located outside the United States, among other things, civil liabilities predicated upon such securities laws.

The Bank has been advised by its Canadian counsel, Osler, Hoskin & Harcourt LLP, that a judgment of a United States court predicated solely upon civil liability under such laws and that would not be contrary to public policy would probably be enforceable in Canada if the United States court in which the judgment was obtained has a basis for jurisdiction in the matter that was recognized by a Canadian court for such purposes. The Bank has also been advised by such counsel, however, that there is substantial doubt whether an original action could be brought successfully in Canada predicated solely upon such civil liabilities.

SUMMARY

This summary highlights key information described in greater detail elsewhere, or incorporated by reference, in this prospectus. You should read carefully the entire prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference and any applicable prospectus supplement before making an investment decision.

The Bank of Nova Scotia

The Bank is a leading multinational financial services provider and Canada's most international bank. With more than 86,000 employees, the Bank and its affiliates serve some 21 million customers in more than 55 countries around the world. The Bank offers a broad range of products and services including personal, commercial, corporate and investment banking.

Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership

The Guarantor is a limited partnership established under the laws of the Province of Ontario whose principal business is to provide a guarantee of the obligations of the Bank pursuant to covered bonds issued by it, from time to time, pursuant to the Bank's Global Registered Covered Bond Program (the "**Program**") and certain ancillary activities with respect thereto.

The Global Registered Covered Bond Program

The Bank intends to issue, offer and sell covered bonds under the Program in the United States pursuant to this prospectus. These covered bonds will be issued under a trust deed governed by Ontario law (as amended and/or supplemented and/or restated from time to time, the "**Trust Deed**"). The Bond Trustee acts as the trustee under the Trust Deed. All Series of the covered bonds under the Program will have the benefit of the covered bond guarantee (the "**Covered Bond Guarantee**") issued by the Guarantor and be secured by a pledge of the Portfolio to the Bond Trustee. The Bank anticipates that it will continue to issue covered bonds by means other than this prospectus under the Trust Deed from time to time.

On March 25, 2013, the Bank was accepted as a registered issuer under Part I.1 of the *National Housing Act* (Canada) (the "**NHA**") and the CMHC Guide in accordance with their terms and on July 22, 2013, the Program was registered as a registered program under Part I.1 of the NHA and the CMHC Guide. All future covered bonds issued by the Bank under the Program will be covered bonds issued under its registered covered bond program pursuant to Part I.1 of the NHA and the CMHC Guide.

The Legislative Framework sets out certain statutory protections for holders of covered bonds under Canadian federal and provincial bankruptcy, insolvency and fraudulent conveyance laws. The CMHC Guide elaborates on the role and powers of CMHC as administrator of the Legislative Framework and sets out the conditions and restrictions applicable to registered covered bond issuers and registered covered bond programs.

The Portfolio

The assets in the "**Portfolio**" consist primarily of first lien Canadian residential mortgage loans and their related security interest in residential property, cash and in some cases certain

Substitute Assets up to a certain threshold amount. As required by the CMHC Guide, the Portfolio does not include any residential mortgages that are insured by a Prohibited Insurer such as the CMHC.

Global Public Sector Covered Bond Programme

The Bank has previously issued the equivalent of approximately $15.79 billion of covered bonds in multiple currencies both outside and in the United States utilizing Regulation S and Rule 144A under the Bank’s Global Public Sector Covered Bond Programme backed by mortgage loans insured by CMHC. $13.19 billion of these covered bonds remain outstanding as of the date of this prospectus, and such covered bonds are guaranteed by a different guarantor entity and are secured by a different cover pool. The covered bonds outstanding under the Bank's Global Public Sector Covered Bond Programme do not benefit from the statutory protections afforded by the Legislative Framework, and such program is not subject to CMHC administration.

The Covered Bond Guarantee

Pursuant to the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guarantor has irrevocably and unconditionally guaranteed the due and punctual payment of the Guaranteed Amounts on the covered bonds of each Series issued by the Bank in accordance with the Trust Deed.

Program Structure Overview

The Covered Bond Guarantee is secured by a pledge of certain assets of the Guarantor, which includes the Portfolio, to the Bond Trustee pursuant to the terms of the Security Agreement. The Guarantor purchased the initial Loans and their Related Security included in the Portfolio from the Bank using amounts borrowed from the Bank under the Intercompany Loan. Proceeds from the Intercompany Loan may also be used to purchase additional Loans and their Related Security for the Portfolio and for other purposes as described in “*Summary of the Principal Documents—Mortgage Sale Agreement*.” The Guarantor and the Bank will enter a Covered Bond Swap Agreement in respect of which the Guarantor and the Bank will enter into a new confirmation for each Series of covered bonds that are issued by the Bank, and an Interest Rate Swap Agreement. Following the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date, the Interest Rate Swap Agreement converts interest received on the Portfolio to an amount in excess of the interest rate payable on the Intercompany Loan and, for each Series, the Covered Bond Swap Agreement converts a certain portion of the Canadian Dollar payments from the Interest Rate Swap Agreement (or if not then in place for any reason, the Portfolio) to the currency and interest amounts payable on the related covered bonds. No cash flows will be exchanged under either of the Swap Agreements until after the occurrence of certain specified events.

Risk Factors

An investment in the covered bonds involves risks. You should carefully consider all of the information set forth in this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement and, in particular, should evaluate the specific factors set forth below under “*Risk Factors*” in deciding whether to invest in the covered bonds. For a discussion of important business and financial risks relating to the Bank, please see the Bank’s 2013 Annual Report, which is incorporated in this prospectus by reference (and in any of our annual or quarterly reports for a subsequent financial period that are so incorporated).

Corporate Offices

The Bank's executive offices are located at Scotia Plaza, 44 King Street West, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5H 1H1 and the head office is located at 1709 Hollis Street, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada B3J 3B7. The telephone number is (416) 866-3672.

The Guarantor's address is 100 King Street West, Suite 6600, 1 First Canadian Place, Toronto, Ontario, M5X 1B8. The telephone number is (416) 866-3672.

PROGRAM STRUCTURE DIAGRAM

The following structure diagram provides an indicative summary of the principal features of the Program. The diagram must be read in conjunction with and is qualified in its entirety by the detailed information presented elsewhere in this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement.

**Cashflows under the Interest Rate Swap Agreement and the Covered Bond Swap Agreement will be exchanged only after the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date or the Covered Bond Swap Effective Date, respectively.*

12

SUMMARY OF THE COVERED BOND PROGRAM

This section is a summary and does not describe every aspect of the covered bonds. This section summarizes the material terms of the covered bonds that are common to all Series of covered bonds and which are more fully described elsewhere in this prospectus. References to "Conditions" in this summary refer to the Terms and Conditions described elsewhere in this prospectus. This summary is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to all the provisions of the Trust Deed and other Transaction Documents, including definitions of certain terms used in the Trust Deed and other Transaction Documents. In this summary, we describe the meaning of only some of the more important terms. This summary is also subject to and qualified by reference to the description of the particular terms of your Series or Tranche described in the applicable prospectus supplement. Those terms may vary from the terms described in this prospectus. The applicable prospectus supplement relating to each Series or Tranche of covered bonds will be attached to the front of this prospectus.

Bank:	The Bank of Nova Scotia. For a more detailed description of the Bank, see "*The Bank of Nova Scotia.*"
Guarantor:	Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership. For a more detailed description of the Bank, see "*Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership.*"
Dealers:	Barclays Capital Inc., Scotia Capital Inc. (for distributions in Canada), and Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. (for distributions in the U.S.) and any other dealer appointed from time to time by the Bank generally in respect of the Program or in relation to a particular Series or Tranche of covered bonds.
Seller:	The Bank, any New Seller, or other Limited Partner, who may from time to time accede to, and sell Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor.
Servicer:	The Bank, subject to replacement in accordance with the terms of the Servicing Agreement.
Cash Manager:	The Bank, subject to replacement in accordance with the terms of the Cash Management Agreement.
Calculation Agent:	The Bank, acting through its office located at 201 Bishopsgate, London EC2M 3NS.
Custodian:	Computershare Trust Company of Canada, acting through its office located at 100 University Avenue, 11th Floor, Toronto, Ontario Canada M5J 2Y1.
Registrar, Principal Paying Agent, and Transfer Agent:	The Bank of Nova Scotia, London Branch acting through its office located at 201 Bishopsgate, 6th Floor, London EC2M 3NS.

U.S. Registrar, Paying Agent, Transfer Agent and Exchange Agent:	The Bank of Nova Scotia - New York Agency, acting through its office located at 250 Vesey Street, New York, New York, 10281.
Bond Trustee:	Computershare Trust Company of Canada, acting through its office located at 100 University Avenue, 11th Floor, North Tower, Toronto, Ontario Canada M5J 2Y1.
Cover Pool Monitor:	KPMG LLP, acting through its office at Bay Adelaide Centre, 333 Bay Street, Suite 4600, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5H 2S5.
Interest Rate Swap Provider:	The Bank, subject to replacement in accordance with the terms of the Interest Rate Swap Agreement.
Covered Bond Swap Provider:	The Bank, subject to replacement in accordance with the terms of the Covered Bond Swap Agreement.
GDA Provider:	The Bank, acting through its main branch in Toronto.
Account Bank:	The Bank, acting through its main branch in Toronto.
Standby Account Bank:	Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, acting through its office at 161 Bay Street, 11th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, M5J 2S8.
Standby GDA Provider:	Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, acting through its office at 161 Bay Street, 11th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, M5J 2S8.
Intercompany Loan Provider:	The Bank, acting through its main branch in Toronto.
Legislative Framework:	The legislative framework established by Part I.1 of the NHA, including the CMHC Guide.
Issuance of Series:	Covered bonds will be issued in series (each, a "**Series**"). Each Series may comprise one or more tranches ("**Tranches**" and each, a "**Tranche**") issued on different issue dates. The covered bonds of each Series will all be subject to identical terms, except that the issue date and the amount of the first payment of interest may be different in respect of different Tranches. The covered bonds will be issued by the Bank, as a CMHC registered issuer, under its CMHC registered covered bond program, which is registered pursuant to Part I.1 of the NHA.
Currency and Denomination:	Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, covered bonds will be issued in U.S.$ and in such denominations as may be agreed to between the Dealers and the Bank and as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Maturities:	Such maturities as may be agreed between the Bank and the Dealers or covered bondholders, as the case may be, and as indicated in the prospectus supplement, subject to such minimum or maximum maturities as may be allowed or required from time to time by the relevant regulator (or equivalent body) or any laws or regulations applicable to the Bank or the relevant specified currency.
Form of the Covered Bonds:	The covered bonds will be issued in registered form as a global covered bond held through The Depository Trust Company, or its successors ("**DTC**").
Interest:	Covered bonds may be interest bearing or non-interest bearing. Interest (if any) may accrue at a fixed or floating rate (detailed in a formula or otherwise) and may vary during the lifetime of the relevant Series.
Types of covered bonds:	Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, the types of covered bonds that may be issued pursuant to this prospectus are (i) fixed rate covered bonds and (ii) floating rate covered bonds.
Fixed Rate Covered Bonds:	Fixed rate covered bonds will bear interest at a fixed rate which will be payable on such date or dates as may be agreed between the Bank and the Dealers and on redemption and will be calculated on the basis of such day count basis as may be agreed between the Bank and the Dealers (as set out in the applicable prospectus supplement), provided that if an Extended Due for Payment Date is specified in the prospectus supplement, interest following the Original Due for Payment Date will continue to accrue and be payable on the unpaid amount in accordance with Condition 4 (*Interest*), at a rate of interest determined in accordance with Condition 4.1 (*Interest on Fixed Rate Covered Bonds*) (in the same manner as the rate of interest for floating rate covered bonds) even where the relevant covered bonds are fixed rate covered bonds.
Floating Rate Covered Bonds:	Floating rate covered bonds will bear interest at a rate determined on such basis as may be agreed between the Bank and the Dealers, as set out in the applicable prospectus supplement.
Other provisions in relation to Floating Rate Covered Bonds:	Floating Rate Covered Bonds may also have a Maximum Rate of Interest, a Minimum Rate of Interest or both (as indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement). Interest on Floating Rate Covered Bonds in respect of each Interest Period, as agreed prior to issue by the Bank and the relevant Dealer(s), will be payable on such Interest Payment Dates, and will be calculated on a day count basis, in each case as may be agreed between the Bank and the relevant Dealer(s).

15

Hard Bullet Covered Bonds:	Hard Bullet Covered Bonds may be offered and will be subject to a Pre-Maturity Test. The intention of the Pre-Maturity Test is to test the liquidity of the Guarantor's assets in respect of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds maturing within 12 months from the relevant Pre-Maturity Test Date when the Bank's credit ratings have fallen below the Pre-Maturity Required Ratings.
Rating Agency Condition:	Any issuance of covered bonds will be conditional upon satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition.
Listing:	Covered bonds will not be listed on any stock exchange unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.
Redemption:	The applicable prospectus supplement relating to each Tranche of covered bonds will indicate either that the relevant covered bonds of such Tranche cannot be redeemed prior to their stated maturity (other than following an Issuer Event of Default and a Guarantor Event of Default or as indicated below) or that such covered bonds will be redeemable at the option of the Bank upon giving notice to the holders of the covered bonds, on a date or dates specified prior to such stated maturity and at a price or prices and on such other terms as may be agreed between the Bank and the Dealers (as set out in the applicable prospectus supplement). Early redemption will be permitted for taxation reasons and illegality as described in Conditions 6.2 (*Redemption for taxation reasons*) and 6.5 (*Redemption due to illegality or invalidity*), but will otherwise be permitted only to the extent specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.
Extendable obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee:	The applicable prospectus supplement may also provide that (if a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor) the Guarantor's obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee to pay the Guaranteed Amounts corresponding to the Final Redemption Amount of the applicable Series of covered bonds on their Final Maturity Date (subject to applicable grace periods) may be deferred until the Extended Due for Payment Date.

	In such case, such deferral will occur automatically (i) if the Bank fails to pay the Final Redemption Amount of the relevant Series of covered bonds on their Final Maturity Date (subject to applicable grace periods) and (ii) if the Guaranteed Amounts equal to the Final Redemption Amount in respect of such Series of covered bonds are not paid in full by the Guarantor by the Extension Determination Date (for example, because the Guarantor has insufficient funds in accordance with the Priorities of Payments to pay in full the Guaranteed Amounts corresponding to the Final Redemption Amount of the relevant Series of covered bonds after payment of higher ranking amounts and taking into account amounts ranking *pari passu* in the Priorities of Payments). To the extent a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor and the Guarantor has sufficient time and sufficient funds to pay in part the Final Redemption Amount, such partial payment will be made by the Guarantor on any Interest Payment Date up to and including the relevant Extended Due for Payment Date as described in Condition 6.1 (*Final redemption*). Interest will continue to accrue and be payable on the unpaid amount in accordance with Condition 4 (*Interest*) at a rate of interest determined in accordance with Condition 4 (*Interest*) (in the same manner as the rate of interest for floating rate covered bonds). The Guarantor will pay Guaranteed Amounts constituting Scheduled Interest on each Original Due for Payment Date and the Extended Due for Payment Date and any unpaid amounts in respect thereof will be due and payable on the Extended Due for Payment Date.
Taxation:	Payments made by the Bank in respect of covered bonds will be made without withholding or deduction for, or on account of, any present or future taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges of whatever nature imposed or levied by or on behalf of Canada or any province or territory thereof, or, in the case of covered bonds issued by a branch of the Bank located outside Canada, the country in which such branch is located, or any political subdivision thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, unless the withholding or deduction of such taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges is required by law. In that event, the Bank will (subject to customary exceptions) pay such additional amounts as will result in the holders of covered bonds receiving such amounts as they would have received in respect of such covered bonds had no such withholding or deduction been required. Under the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guarantor will not be liable to pay any such additional amounts as a consequence of any applicable tax withholding or deduction, including such additional amounts which may become payable by the Bank under Condition 7 (*Taxation*).

	If (i) any portion of interest payable on a covered bond is contingent or dependent on the use of, or production from, property in Canada or is computed by reference to revenue, profit, cash flow, commodity price or any other similar criteria or by reference to dividends paid or payable to shareholders of a corporation; (ii) the recipient of interest payable on a covered bond does not deal at arm's length with the Bank or the Guarantor for purposes of the *Income Tax Act* (Canada) (the "**ITA**"); (iii) interest is payable in respect of a covered bond owned by a person with whom the Bank or the Guarantor does not deal at arm's length for purposes of the ITA; or (iv) the recipient of interest payable on a covered bond is a "specified shareholder" of the Bank or a non-resident person that does not deal at arm's length with a specified shareholder of the Bank (in each case within the meaning of the ITA for purposes of the thin capitalization rules contained in subsection 18(4) of the ITA), such interest may be subject to Canadian nonresident withholding tax. A "**specified shareholder**" of the Bank is a person who owns, or is deemed to own, alone or together with persons with whom that person does not deal at arm's length, shares entitled to 25% or more of the votes that could be cast at an annual shareholders' meeting or shares having a fair market value of 25% or more of the fair market value of all the issued and outstanding shares of the Bank. Special rules, which are not discussed in this summary, may apply to a non-Canadian Holder that is an insurer that carries on an insurance business in Canada and elsewhere. Additional opinions from Canadian tax counsel may be required. See the discussion under the caption "*Taxation—Canadian Taxation.*"
ERISA:	In general, a covered bond may be purchased by U.S. benefit plan investors as defined in Section 3(42) of the U.S. Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended ("**ERISA**"), subject to certain conditions. See "*Benefit Plan Investor Considerations.*"
Cross Default:	If a Guarantor Acceleration Notice is served in respect of a series of covered bonds, then the obligation of the Guarantor to pay Guaranteed Amounts in respect of all covered bonds outstanding will be accelerated. If an Issuer Acceleration Notice is served in respect of a series of covered bonds, all outstanding covered bonds issued under the Program will accelerate against the Bank but will be subject to, and have the benefit of, the Guaranteed Amounts under the Covered Bond Guarantee.
Status of the Covered Bonds:	The covered bonds will constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the Bank Act, however the covered bonds will not be insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (Canada), and will constitute legal, valid and binding direct, unconditional, unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank and rank *pari passu* with all deposit liabilities of the Bank without any preference among themselves and at least *pari passu* with all other unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank, present and future, except as prescribed by law.
Governing Law and Jurisdiction:	The covered bonds and the Transaction Documents (other than the Underwriting Agreement) will be governed by, and construed in accordance with the laws of the Province of Ontario and the laws of Canada applicable therein. The Underwriting Agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of New York.

	Ontario courts have non-exclusive jurisdiction in the event of litigation in respect of the contractual documentation and the covered bonds governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein.
Terms and Conditions:	A prospectus supplement will be prepared in respect of each Tranche of covered bonds. The terms and conditions applicable to each Tranche will be those described under "*Terms and Conditions of the Covered Bonds*" as supplemented, modified or replaced by the applicable prospectus supplement.
Clearing System:	DTC and/or, in relation to any covered bonds, any other clearing system as may be specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.
Non-U.S. Selling Restrictions:	There will be specific restrictions on offers, sales and deliveries of covered bonds and on the distribution of offering material in Canada, Japan, the EEA, the United Kingdom, France, Australia and Italy, as well as such other restrictions as may be required in connection with a particular issue of covered bonds as set out in the applicable prospectus supplement.
Covered Bond Guarantee:	Payment of interest and principal in respect of the covered bonds when Due for Payment will be irrevocably guaranteed by the Guarantor. The obligations of the Guarantor to make payment in respect of the Guaranteed Amounts when Due for Payment are subject to the condition that a Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event has occurred. The obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will accelerate against the Guarantor upon the service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice. The obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee constitute direct obligations of the Guarantor secured against the assets of the Guarantor, including the Portfolio.
Security for Covered Bond Guarantee:	Payments made by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be made subject to, and in accordance with, the applicable Priorities of Payments. To secure its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee and the Transaction Documents to which it is a party, the Guarantor has granted a first ranking security interest over all of its present and future acquired assets, including the Portfolio, in favor of the Bond Trustee (for itself and on behalf of the other Secured Creditors) pursuant to the terms of the Security Agreement.

Intercompany Loan:	Under the terms of the Intercompany Loan Agreement, the Bank will make available to the Guarantor an interest-bearing Intercompany Loan, comprised of a Guarantee Loan and a revolving Demand Loan, in a combined aggregate amount equal to the Total Credit Commitment, subject to increases and decreases as described below. The Intercompany Loan will be denominated in Canadian Dollars. The interest rate on the Intercompany Loan will be a Canadian Dollar floating rate determined by the Bank from time to time, subject to a maximum of (i) prior to the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date, the yield on the Portfolio, and (ii) following the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date, the amount received by the Guarantor pursuant to the Interest Rate Swap Agreement, and, in each case, less a minimum spread and an amount for certain expenses of the Guarantor. The balance of the Guarantee Loan and Demand Loan will fluctuate with the issuances and redemptions of covered bonds and the requirements of the Asset Coverage Test. To the extent the Portfolio increases or is required to be increased to meet the Asset Coverage Test, the Bank may increase the Total Credit Commitment to enable the Guarantor to acquire Loans and their Related Security from the Seller. The balance of the Guarantee Loan and the Demand Loan will be disclosed in each Investor Report.
Guarantee Loan:	The Guarantee Loan is in an amount equal to the balance of outstanding covered bonds at any relevant time plus that portion of the Portfolio required in accordance with the Asset Coverage Test as overcollateralization for the covered bonds in excess of the amount of then outstanding covered bonds (see "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Guarantor Agreement—Asset Coverage Test*").
Demand Loan:	The Demand Loan is a revolving credit facility, the outstanding balance of which is equal to the difference between the balance of the Intercompany Loan and the balance of the Guarantee Loan at any relevant time. At any time prior to a Demand Loan Repayment Event, the Guarantor may borrow, repay or re-borrow any amount repaid by the Guarantor under the Intercompany Loan for a permitted purpose provided, among other things, (i) such drawing does not result in the Intercompany Loan exceeding the Total Credit Commitment; and (ii) no Issuer Event of Default or Guarantor Event of Default has occurred and is continuing.

The Proceeds of the Intercompany Loan:	The Guarantor will use the initial advance under the Intercompany Loan to purchase Loans and their Related Security for inclusion in the Portfolio from the Seller in accordance with the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and may use additional advances (i) to purchase additional Loans and their Related Security pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement; and/or (ii) to invest in Substitute Assets in an amount not exceeding the prescribed limit under the CMHC Guide; and/or (iii) subject to complying with the Asset Coverage Test and the CMHC Guide to make Capital Distributions to the Limited Partner; and/or (iv) to make deposits of the proceeds in the Guarantor Accounts (including, without limitation, to fund the Reserve Fund and the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Required Amount, in each case to an amount not exceeding the Prescribed Cash Limitation).
Capital Contributions:	The Limited Partner may from time to time make Capital Contributions to the Guarantor including Capital Contributions of Loans and their Related Security. The Managing GP and the Liquidation GP respectively hold 99 percent and 1 percent of the 0.05 percent general partner interest in the Guarantor. The Limited Partner holds the substantial economic interest in the Guarantor (99.95 percent).
Consideration:	Under the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Seller will sell Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor for the Portfolio on a fully-serviced basis for consideration equal to the fair market value of such Loans on their Transfer Date, or if so determined by the Limited Partner, the Limited Partner may make Capital Contributions of Loans and their Related Security on a fully-serviced basis to the Guarantor in exchange for additional interests in the capital of the Guarantor.
Interest Rate Swap Agreement:	The Guarantor will enter into the Interest Rate Swap Agreement with the Interest Rate Swap Provider to provide a hedge, following the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date, against possible variances in the rates of interest payable on the Loans in the Portfolio (which may, for instance, include variable rates of interest or fixed rates of interest), the amounts payable on the Intercompany Loan and (following the Covered Bond Swap Effective Date) the Covered Bond Swap Agreement.
Covered Bond Swap Agreement:	To provide a hedge against currency risks arising, following the Covered Bond Swap Effective Date, in respect of amounts received by the Guarantor under the Interest Rate Swap Agreement and amounts payable in respect of its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guarantor will enter into the Covered Bond Swap Agreement (which may include a new ISDA Master Agreement schedule and confirmation(s) and credit support annex, if applicable, for each Tranche and/or Series of covered bonds) with the Covered Bond Swap Provider.

RISK FACTORS

Investment in the covered bonds is subject to various risks including those risks inherent in conducting the business of a diversified financial institution. Before deciding whether to invest in the covered bonds, you should consider carefully the risks described in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus (including subsequently filed documents incorporated by reference) and, if applicable, those described in a prospectus supplement, as the case may be, relating to a specific offering of covered bonds.

Risks relating to the covered bonds generally

The covered bonds may not be a suitable investment for all investors

The purchase of covered bonds involve substantial risks and are suitable only for investors who have the knowledge and experience in financial and business matters necessary to enable them to evaluate the risks and the merits of an investment in the covered bonds. Covered bonds are complex financial instruments. Sophisticated institutional investors generally do not purchase complex financial instruments as stand-alone investments. They purchase complex financial instruments as a way to reduce risk or enhance yield with an understood, measured, appropriate addition of risk to their overall portfolios. A potential investor should not invest in covered bonds which are complex financial instruments unless it has the expertise (either alone or with a financial adviser) to evaluate how the covered bonds will perform under changing conditions, the resulting effect on the value of the covered bonds and the impact this investment will have on the potential investor's overall investment portfolio.

Prior to making an investment decision, prospective investors should consider carefully, in light of their own financial circumstances and investment objectives, (i) all the information set forth in this prospectus and, in particular, the considerations set forth below and (ii) all the information set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. Prospective investors should make such inquiries as they deem necessary without relying on us or any arranger or dealer.

Each potential investor in the covered bonds must determine the suitability of its investment in light of its own circumstances. In particular, each potential investor should:

- have sufficient knowledge and experience to make a meaningful evaluation of the covered bonds, the merits and risks of investing in the covered bonds and the information contained in this prospectus or incorporated herein by reference or any applicable supplement;
- have access to, and knowledge of, appropriate analytical tools to evaluate, in the context of its particular financial situation, an investment in the covered bonds and the impact the covered bonds will have on its overall investment portfolio;
- have sufficient financial resources and liquidity to bear all of the risks of an investment in the covered bonds, including covered bonds with principal or interest payable in one or more currencies, or where the currency for principal or interest payments is different from the currency in which the potential investor's financial activities are principally denominated;

- understand thoroughly the terms of the covered bonds and be familiar with the behavior of any relevant indices and financial markets; and
- be able to evaluate (either alone or with the help of a financial adviser) possible scenarios for economic, interest rate and other factors that may affect its investment and its ability to bear the applicable risks.

Covered bonds involve a high degree of risk and potential investors should be prepared to sustain a loss of all or part of their investment.

The covered bonds will constitute unsecured and uninsured deposit obligations of the Bank

The covered bonds will constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the Bank Act, however the covered bonds will not be insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (Canada), and will constitute legal, valid and binding direct, unconditional, unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank and rank *pari passu* with all deposit liabilities of the Bank without any preference among themselves and at least *pari passu* with all other unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank, present and future, except as prescribed by law. If the Bank enters into any bankruptcy, liquidation, rehabilitation or other winding-up proceedings and there is a default in payment under any of the Bank's secured or unsecured indebtedness or if there is an acceleration of any of the Bank's indebtedness, the value of the covered bonds may decline. Further, the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default alone does not constitute a Guarantor Event of Default and does not entitle the Bond Trustee to accelerate payment of the Guaranteed Amounts. The Guarantor has no obligation to pay the Guaranteed Amounts payable under the Covered Bond Guarantee until service on the Guarantor of (i) a Notice to Pay following service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice on the Bank following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default, or (ii) a Guarantor Acceleration Notice following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default. However, failure by the Guarantor to pay amounts when Due for Payment under the Covered Bond Guarantee constitutes a Guarantor Event of Default (subject to any applicable grace periods) and following service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, the covered bonds will become immediately due and payable against the Bank and the obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be accelerated.

The covered bonds are obligations of the Bank and the Guarantor only and do not extend to any of their affiliates or the parties to the Program, including the Bond Trustee

The payment obligations in relation to the covered bonds will be solely obligations of the Bank and, subject to the terms of the Covered Bond Guarantee, obligations of the Guarantor. Accordingly, the payment obligations under the covered bonds will not be obligations of, or guaranteed by, any other affiliate of the Bank. In particular, the covered bonds will not be obligations of, and will not be guaranteed by, any of the Arrangers, the Dealers, the Bond Trustee, the Cash Manager, the Custodian, any Swap Provider, any of their agents, any company in the same group of companies as such entities or any other party to the Transaction Documents relating to the Program. Any failure by the Bank or the Guarantor to pay any amount due under the covered bonds will not result in any liability whatsoever in respect of such failure being accepted by any of the Arrangers, any of the Dealers, the Bond Trustee, the Custodian, any Swap Provider, any of their agents, the Partners, any company in the same group of companies as such entities or any other party to the Transaction Documents relating to the Program.

The obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee may be subject to an Extended Due for Payment Date and payment on the Final Redemption Amount may be deferred beyond the Final Maturity Date

The prospectus supplement for a Series of covered bonds may specify that they are subject to an Extended Due for Payment Date. If specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, in circumstances where neither the Bank nor the Guarantor has sufficient funds available to pay in full the Final Redemption Amount due on a Series of covered bonds on the relevant Final Maturity Date or within the relevant grace period, then the Final Maturity Date of the relevant Series of covered bonds may be deferred to an Extended Due for Payment Date. If payment has been deferred as discussed below, failure by the Guarantor to make payment in respect of all or any portion of the Final Redemption Amount on the Final Maturity Date (or such later date within any applicable grace period) will not constitute a Guarantor Event of Default.

If and to the extent that the Guarantor has sufficient funds available to partially redeem the relevant Series of covered bonds, either on the Final Maturity Date or on the applicable Original Due for Payment Dates for that Series of covered bonds up to and including the Extended Due for Payment Date, then (assuming that the Guarantor Acceleration Notice and Notice to Pay for the relevant amount have been served to the Guarantor within the relevant timeframes) the Guarantor will make such partial redemption in accordance with the Guarantee Priority of Payments and as described in Condition 6.1 (*Final redemption*).

Interest will continue to accrue and be payable on the unpaid amount of the relevant Series of covered bonds in accordance with Condition 4 (*Interest*) and at the rate of interest specified in the applicable prospectus supplement and the Guarantor will pay Guaranteed Amounts constituting Scheduled Interest on each Original Due for Payment Date and the Extended Due for Payment Date.

Failure by the Guarantor to pay Guaranteed Amounts corresponding to the unpaid portion of the Final Redemption Amount or the balance thereof, as the case may be, on the Extended Due for Payment Date and/or pay Guaranteed Amounts constituting Scheduled Interest on any Original Due for Payment Date or the Extended Due for Payment Date will in each case (subject to any applicable grace period) constitute a Guarantor Event of Default.

Covered bonds issued under the Program will rank pari passu with each other and will accelerate at the same time

Covered bonds issued under the Program (except for the first issue of the covered bonds) will either be fungible with an existing Series of covered bonds or have different terms from an existing Series of covered bonds (in which case they will constitute a new Series). All covered bonds issued under the Program from time to time will rank *pari passu* with each other in all respects and, as obligations of the Bank, *pari passu* with covered bonds issued previously under the Bank’s Global Public Sector Covered Bond Programme. Following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service by the Bond Trustee of an Issuer Acceleration Notice, all outstanding covered bonds issued under the Program will accelerate against the Bank but will be subject to, and have the benefit of, the Guaranteed Amounts under the Covered Bond Guarantee (following a Notice to Pay having been served by the Bond Trustee on the Guarantor).

Following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and service by the Bond Trustee of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, all outstanding covered bonds will accelerate against the Bank (if not already accelerated following service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice) and the obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will accelerate.

All covered bonds issued under the Program will share *pari passu* in the Security granted by the Guarantor under the Security Agreement on a *pro rata* basis. Accordingly, the holders of each Series of covered bonds issued under the Program will be required to share recovery proceeds from the Security with all other holders of each other Series of the covered bonds issued under the Program on a *pro rata* and *pari passu* basis. However, holders of covered bonds issued under the Program will not share in the security granted under the Bank's Global Public Sector Covered Bond Programme, which is guaranteed by a different guarantor entity and secured by a different pool. The covered bonds outstanding under the Bank's Global Public Sector Covered Bond Programme do not benefit from the statutory protections afforded by the Legislative Framework, and such program is not subject to CMHC administration.

Credit ratings assigned to the covered bonds may not reflect all risks

The credit ratings assigned to the covered bonds may not reflect the potential impact of all risks related to structure, market, and other factors that may affect the value of the covered bonds. The ratings assigned to the covered bonds with respect to Fitch Ratings Limited ("**Fitch**") address the following: the likelihood of full and timely payment to covered bondholders of all payments of interest on each Interest Payment Date; and the likelihood of ultimate payment of principal in relation to covered bonds on (a) their applicable Final Maturity Date, or (b) if the covered bonds are subject to an Extended Due for Payment Date in respect of the Covered Bond Guarantee in accordance with the applicable prospectus supplement, the applicable Extended Due for Payment Date. With respect to DBRS Limited and its successors ("**DBRS**"), the ratings assigned to the covered bonds address the risk that the Bank will fail to satisfy its financial obligations in accordance with the terms under which the covered bonds have been issued and are based on quantitative and qualitative considerations relating to the Bank and the relevant ranking of claims. With respect to Moody's, the ratings assigned to the covered bonds address the expected loss posed to investors.

Any Rating Agency may lower or withdraw its credit rating if, in the sole judgment of the Rating Agency, the credit quality of the covered bonds has declined or is in question. If any rating assigned to the covered bonds is lowered or withdrawn, the market value of the covered bonds may be reduced. A downgrade or potential downgrade of these ratings, the assignment of new ratings that are lower than existing ratings, or a downgrade or potential downgrade of the ratings assigned to the Bank or any other securities of the Bank could reduce the number of potential investors in the covered bonds and adversely affect the price and liquidity of the covered bonds. A rating is based upon information furnished by the Bank or obtained by the rating agency from its own sources and is subject to revision, suspension or withdrawal by the rating agency at any time. A credit rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be subject to revision, suspension or withdrawal at any time.

Modifications, waivers and substitution under the covered bonds may, in certain circumstances, be made without consent of the covered bondholders

The Terms and Conditions contain provisions for calling meetings of covered bondholders to consider matters affecting their interests generally. These provisions permit defined majorities to bind all covered bondholders including covered bondholders who did not attend and vote at the relevant meeting and covered bondholders who voted in a manner contrary to the majority. Except to the extent the US Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the "**Trust Indenture Act**") applies, an individual covered bondholder may not be in a position to affect the outcome of the resolutions adopted by the meetings of covered bondholders.

The Terms and Conditions of the covered bonds also provide that the Bond Trustee may, without the consent of covered bondholders, (a) agree to any modification, waiver or authorization, of any breach, or proposed breach, of any of the provisions of the covered bonds, (b) determine that any Issuer Event of Default or Guarantor Event of Default will not be treated as such, (c) agree to the substitution of another company as principal debtor under any covered bonds in place of the Bank or the Guarantor or (d) agree to any modification which is of a formal, minor or technical nature or to correct a manifest error or an error which, in the opinion of the Bond Trustee, is proven, in the circumstances described in Condition 14 (*Meetings of Covered Bondholders, Modification, Waiver and Substitution*). The covered bondholders will not be in a position to give instructions to the Bond Trustee in relation to the matters set out above.

The Guarantor's ability to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee will depend primarily on the Portfolio

The Guarantor's ability to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee will depend primarily on the realizable value of Loans and Substitute Assets in the Portfolio, the amount of Revenue Receipts and Principal Receipts generated by the Portfolio and the timing thereof, amounts received from, and payable to, the Swap Providers and the receipt by it of credit balances and interest on credit balances in the GDA Account and the other Guarantor Accounts. The Guarantor will not have any other sources of funds available to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee. In addition, the Security granted pursuant to the Security Agreement may not be sufficient to meet the claims of all the Secured Creditors, including the covered bondholders. Following enforcement of the Security, Secured Creditors may still have an unsecured claim against the Bank for the deficiency, which will rank *pari passu* with the other deposit obligations of the Bank. However, there can be no assurance that the Bank will have sufficient funds to pay that shortfall.

If there is a call on the Covered Bond Guarantee, the claims of covered bondholders will be limited to the Guarantor's available funds from time to time, which may be limited due to a lack of liquidity in respect of the Portfolio

If there is a call on the Covered Bond Guarantee and sale of the Portfolio, the proceeds from the sale of the Portfolio will depend on market conditions at the time of sale. If market conditions are unfavorable, the sale of the Portfolio may result in proceeds that are less than the amount due on the covered bonds. Furthermore, the maturities of the Loans in the Portfolio may not match those of the covered bonds which may require the Guarantor to sell Loans in order to pay principal on those covered bonds. Any such sale of Loans exposes investors to market risk, as the then current market value of the Loans may be less than the principal amount on the covered bonds. In addition, should an Issuer Event of Default or other Registered Title Event occur, there may be a delay in any and all borrowers switching payments to the new Servicer or the Guarantor.

There is no tax gross-up under the Covered Bond Guarantee

All payments of principal and interest in respect of the covered bonds will be made by the Bank without withholding or deduction for, or on account of, taxes imposed by any governmental or other taxing authority (subject to customary exceptions), unless such withholding or deduction is required by law. In the event that any such withholding or deduction is imposed by a tax jurisdiction specified under the Terms and Conditions, the Bank will, save in certain limited circumstances provided in the Terms and Conditions, be required to pay additional amounts to cover the amounts so deducted. By contrast, under the terms of the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guarantor will not be liable to pay any such additional amounts payable by the Bank under the Terms and Conditions, or to pay any additional amounts in respect of any amount withheld or deducted for, or on account of, taxes from a payment by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

The Guarantor may not be able to sell Loans prior to maturity of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds upon a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test or upon an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice or Notice to Pay

Upon the breach of the Pre-Maturity Test and unless the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Required Amount is otherwise fully funded from Capital Contributions, the Guarantor is obligated to sell Selected Loans (selected on a random basis) to a purchaser in order to generate sufficient cash to enable the Guarantor to pay the Final Redemption Amount on any Hard Bullet Covered Bond in the event that the Bank fails to pay that amount on the relevant Final Maturity Date. If an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice or a Notice to Pay is served to the Guarantor, the Guarantor may be obliged to sell Selected Loans (selected on a random basis) in order to remedy a breach of the Asset Coverage Test or to make payments to the Guarantor's creditors, including payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee, as appropriate. There is no guarantee that a purchaser will be found to acquire Selected Loans at the times required and there can be no guarantee or assurance as to the price which may be obtained, which may affect the ability of the Guarantor to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

In addition, the Guarantor will not be permitted to give representations and warranties or indemnities for those Selected Loans. There is no obligation for the Seller to give, and no assurance that the Seller would give, any representations and warranties or indemnities in respect of the Selected Loans. Any representations or warranties or indemnities previously given by the Seller in respect of Loans in the Portfolio may not have value for a purchaser if the Seller is then insolvent. Accordingly, there is a risk that the realizable value of the Selected Loans could be adversely affected by the lack of representations, warranties or indemnities which in turn could adversely affect the ability of the Guarantor to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

The Bond Trustee will not be required to release the Loans and their Related Security from the Security pursuant to any sale and purchase agreement with respect to the sale of Selected Loans unless (i) the Bond Trustee has provided its prior written consent to the terms of such sale in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement, and (ii) the Guarantor has provided a certificate to the Bond Trustee that such sale of Loans and their Related Security has been made in accordance with the terms of the Transaction Documents. See *"Summary of the Principal Documents—Security Agreement—Release of Security*" below.

Later maturing covered bonds may not be paid in full or at all under the Covered Bond Guarantee as Portfolio assets are not segregated by different Series of covered bonds and will be used to repay earlier maturing covered bonds first

Although each Series of covered bonds will rank *pari passu* with all other Series of covered bonds issued under the Program, each Series of covered bonds may not necessarily have the same Final Maturity Date. As Portfolio assets are not segregated in relation to each Series of covered bonds and will be used to repay earlier maturing covered bonds first, there is a risk that later maturing covered bonds will not be paid in full (or at all) under the Covered Bond Guarantee. The Amortization Test may not mitigate this risk. A breach of the Amortization Test will occur if the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of all covered bonds issued under the Program is greater than the aggregate value of the Portfolio's assets. Upon the occurrence of a breach of the Amortization Test, a Guarantor Event of Default will also occur which will (subject to the Terms and Conditions) lead to the service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor and the acceleration of the obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee in relation to all covered bonds then outstanding (hence any further timing subordination will cease to exist). There is however no guarantee that the remaining Portfolio assets will be sufficient to meet the claims of the remaining covered bondholders under the Covered Bond Guarantee in full.

Reliance on certain transaction parties

The Guarantor and the covered bondholders place significant reliance on the Bank in connection with the multiple roles of the Bank under the Transaction Documents and such reliance may give rise to conflicts of interest

The Guarantor and the covered bondholders place significant reliance on the Bank in connection with the servicing of the Loans in the Portfolio, as well as for the Guarantor's administration and funding. In particular, the Bank performs the initial roles of (a) Cash Manager, (b) Servicer, (c) GDA Provider, (d) Swap Provider, (e) Intercompany Loan Provider, and (f) Calculation Agent. The Bank holds substantially all of the interests in the Guarantor and is the sole shareholder of the initial Managing GP. Prior to the occurrence of a Managing GP Default Event, subject to the occurrence of certain events, the Bank has the ability to control the Guarantor through its control of the initial Managing GP. The Bank, under the Servicing Agreement, will be responsible for servicing and administering the Loans and their Related Security. Furthermore, the Bank, as the Seller of assets to the Portfolio, (a) has considerable discretion to substitute Portfolio assets during the course of the Program and can generate and store the data and documentation relating to the Portfolio assets underlying the transfer, retransfer and servicing of the Loans and the Related Security, which data is also provided to third parties in their respective functions under the Program, and (b) is obligated in certain circumstances to repurchase Loans and their Related Security from the Guarantor. See "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Mortgage Sale Agreement—Repurchase of Loans*."

The Bank, as Cash Manager, has, (a) prior to the earlier of (i) its credit rating falling below any of the threshold ratings of (x) P-1 (in respect of Moody's), (y) BBB+ and F2 (in respect of Fitch), and (z) BBB (low) (in respect of DBRS), as applicable, of the unsecured, unsubordinated and unguaranteed debt obligations (or in the case of Fitch, the issuer default rating) of the Cash Manager by the Rating Agencies (the "**Cash Manager Required Ratings**") or (ii) the occurrence of a Cash Manager Termination Event, unrestricted access to the funds standing to the credit accounts of the Guarantor, and (b) the obligation to identify Non-Performing Eligible Loans for purposes of performing the Asset Coverage Test, the Amortization

Test and the Valuation Calculation from time to time. The Guarantor is also reliant on the Swap Providers to provide it with the funds matching its obligations under advances and the Covered Bond Guarantee. In view of these multiple roles of the Bank, such reliance may give rise to a wide variety of substantial conflicts of interests. The Bank will have significant influence over important services required to maintain the Program and provided to the Guarantor, which may conflict with the interests of the Guarantor and holders of the covered bonds. This influence could adversely affect the Program and value of the covered bonds. If the Bank does not adequately perform or withdraws from performing such services for the Guarantor or if there are disputes between the Bank and the Guarantor, the Guarantor’s performance of its obligations could be affected. There can be no assurance that the conflicts of interest described above will not have a material adverse effect on the Guarantor’s performance of its payment and other obligations and/or on the covered bondholders.

Further, the Bond Trustee is not obliged under any circumstances to act as Servicer, as Cash Manager or as any other third party on which the Guarantor relies, or to monitor the performance of any obligations of any third parties under any relevant agreement.

Reliance on Swap Providers

The Guarantor will enter into the Interest Rate Swap Agreement with the Interest Rate Swap Provider to provide a hedge, following the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date, against possible variances in the rates of interest payable on the Loans in the Portfolio (which may, for instance, include variable rates of interest or fixed rates of interest), the amounts payable on the Intercompany Loan and (following the Covered Bond Swap Effective Date) the Covered Bond Swap Agreement. To provide a hedge against currency risks arising, following the Covered Bond Swap Effective Date, in respect of amounts received by the Guarantor under the Interest Rate Swap Agreement and amounts payable in respect of its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guarantor will enter into the Covered Bond Swap Agreement with the Covered Bond Swap Provider.

If the Guarantor fails to make timely payments of amounts due under any Swap Agreement (except where such failure is caused by the funds available to the Guarantor being insufficient to make the required payment in full), then it will have defaulted under that Swap Agreement and such Swap Agreement may be terminated. Further, a Swap Provider is only obliged to make payments to the Guarantor as long as and to the extent that the Guarantor complies with its payment obligations. The Guarantor will not be in breach of its payment obligations where the Guarantor fails to pay a required payment in full, provided such non-payment is caused by the funds of the Guarantor being insufficient to make such payment in full under the relevant Swap Agreement. If a Swap Agreement terminates or the Swap Provider is not obliged to make payments or if it defaults in its obligations to make payments of amounts (including in the relevant currency, if applicable) to the Guarantor on the payment date under the relevant Swap Agreement, the Guarantor will be exposed to changes in the relevant currency exchange rates to Canadian dollars and to any changes in the relevant rates of interest. Unless a replacement Swap Agreement is entered into, the Guarantor may have insufficient funds to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

If a Swap Agreement terminates, the Guarantor may be obliged to make a termination payment in an amount related to the mark to market value of such Swap Agreement to the relevant Swap Provider. There can be no assurance that the Guarantor will have sufficient funds available to make such termination payment under the relevant Swap Agreement, nor can there be any assurance that the Guarantor will be able to find a replacement swap counterparty which (i) agrees to enter into a replacement swap agreement on substantially the same terms as the terminated swap agreement, and (ii) has sufficiently high ratings to prevent a downgrade of the then current ratings of the covered bonds by any one of the Rating Agencies.

The obligation to pay a termination payment may reduce the funds available to the Guarantor, which may adversely affect the ability of the Guarantor to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee. Additionally, the failure of the Guarantor to receive a termination payment from the relevant Swap Provider may reduce the funds available to the Guarantor, which may adversely affect the ability of the Guarantor to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

Replacement of the Bank as services provider may not be found on acceptable terms or within an acceptable time period and the ability of the Guarantor to perform its obligations may be impaired

As noted above, the Bank performs a number of initial roles. In addition, the Bank will, as Servicer of the Loans and Related Security, continue to service and administer the Loans and Related Security until revocation of the relevant authority by the Guarantor.

In certain circumstances, the Bank is required to be replaced as provider of these services, for instance if it ceases to have the requisite minimum rating (and it is unable to take other mitigating steps), or if an Issuer Event of Default occurs in relation to the Bank. If the Bank is replaced as Cash Manager, then the Guarantor will be obliged to procure that the funds in the Guarantor’s accounts deposited with the Bank are transferred to a newly opened account with a replacement Cash Manager that meets the Cash Manager Required Ratings. See “*Summary of the Principal Documents—Cash Management Agreement.*”

There is no certainty that a relevant replacement third party services provider/counterparty could be found who would be willing to enter into the relevant agreement with the Guarantor. The ability of that servicer/counterparty to perform fully its services would depend in part on the information, software and records which are then available to it. In addition, the replacement servicer may be required to acquire or develop new servicing systems or platforms, which may require substantial time and expense to implement. There can be no assurance that the Guarantor will be able to enter into such replacement agreements and transactions on acceptable terms and within a time period which will ensure uninterrupted payments of amounts due by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee (if called). Moreover, any entity appointed as Servicer would not become bound by the Bank’s obligations under the Mortgage Sale Agreement.

In the event that any of the Cash Manager, the Account Bank, the Servicer, a Swap Provider, the Custodian or other relevant party providing services to the Guarantor under the Transaction Documents fails to perform its obligations or the Guarantor is unable to replace such service providers, in a timely manner, the Guarantor’s ability to perform its payment and other obligations may be compromised. Furthermore, any delay or inability to appoint a suitable replacement Servicer may have an impact on the realizable value of the Portfolio’s assets.

Depending on market conditions and the existence of a potential replacement Swap Provider with the required ratings and other applicable characteristics, the Guarantor may not be able to enter into replacement swaps if the Bank is required to be replaced as Swap Provider. If no such replacement swaps are executed, an investor in the relevant covered bonds will be exposed to the interest rate and currency risks that were otherwise hedged by the relevant swaps prior to their termination. Such exposure may result in a reduction of the amounts available to be paid on the covered bonds.

In addition, should the applicable criteria (other than ratings requirements which, if not satisfied, will require the replacement of the Bank unless the Guarantor is Independently Controlled and Governed) cease to be satisfied, the parties to the relevant Transaction Document may agree to amend or waive certain of the terms of such document, including the applicable criteria, in order to avoid the need for a replacement entity to be appointed. Although in certain circumstances the consent of the Bond Trustee and satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition may be required, the consent of covered bondholders may not be required in relation to such amendments and/or waivers.

Further, the Bank will act in its own interests under the Program which may be adverse to your interests as a holder of the covered bonds. See "*—Program related legal and regulatory risks—The Bank will act in its own interest in connection with the Program, and such actions may not be in the best interests of, and may be detrimental to, the holders of covered bonds*."

Bankruptcy or Insolvency Risk

The assignments of the Portfolio assets from the Seller to the Guarantor pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement are intended by the Seller and the Guarantor to be and have been documented as sales for legal purposes. As the subject of a legal sale, the Portfolio assets would not form part of the assets of the Bank available for distribution to the creditors of the Bank. However, if the Seller or the Guarantor were to become bankrupt or otherwise subject to insolvency, winding-up, receivership and/or restructuring proceedings, the Superintendent of Financial Institutions (the "**Superintendent**"), appointed pursuant to *the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions Act* (Canada), *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation*, appointed as receiver pursuant to the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (Canada), or any liquidator or other stakeholder of the Seller, could attempt to re-characterize the sale of the Portfolio assets as a loan from the Guarantor to the Seller secured by the Portfolio assets, to challenge the sale under the fraudulent transfer or similar provisions of the *Winding-up and Restructuring Act* (Canada) ("**WURA**") or other applicable laws or to consolidate the assets of the Seller with the assets of the Guarantor. In this regard, the Transaction Documents contain restrictions on the Seller and the Guarantor intended to reduce the possibility that a Canadian court would order consolidation of the assets and liabilities of the Seller and the Guarantor given, among other things, current jurisprudence on the matter. Further, the Legislative Framework contains provisions that will limit the application of the laws of Canada and the provinces and territories relating to bankruptcy, insolvency and fraudulent conveyance to the assignments of the Portfolio assets from the Seller to the Guarantor. Nonetheless, any attempt to challenge the transaction or to consolidate the assets of the Seller with the assets of the Guarantor, even if unsuccessful, could result in a delay or reduction of collections on the Portfolio assets available to the Guarantor to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee, which could prevent timely or ultimate payment of amounts due to the Guarantor, and consequently, the holders of the covered bonds.

The interests of the Guarantor may be subordinate to statutory deemed trusts and other non-consensual liens, trusts and claims created or imposed by statute or rule of law on the property of the Seller arising prior to the time that the Portfolio assets are transferred to the

Guarantor, which may reduce the amounts that may be available to the Guarantor and, consequently, the holders of the covered bonds. The Guarantor will not, at the time of sale, give notice to borrowers of the transfer to the Guarantor of the Portfolio assets or the grant of a security interest therein to the Bond Trustee. However, under the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Seller will warrant that the Portfolio assets have been or will be transferred to the Guarantor free and clear of the security interest or lien of any third party claiming an interest therein, through or under the Seller, other than certain permitted security interests. The Guarantor will warrant and covenant that it has not taken and will not take any action to encumber or create any security interests or other liens in any of the property of the Guarantor, except for the security interest granted to the Bond Trustee and except as permitted under the Transaction Documents.

Amounts that are on deposit from time to time in the Guarantor Accounts may be invested in certain permitted investments pursuant to the Transaction Documents. In the event of the liquidation, insolvency, receivership or administration of any entity with which an investment of the Guarantor is made (such as pursuant to the Guaranteed Deposit Account Contract or the Standby Guaranteed Deposit Account Contract) or which is an issuer, obligor or guarantor of any investment, the ability of the Guarantor to enforce its rights to any such investments and the ability of the Guarantor to make payments to holders of the covered bonds in a timely manner may be adversely affected and may result in a loss on the covered bonds. In order to reduce this risk, these investments must satisfy certain criteria.

Payments of interest and principal on the covered bonds are subordinate to certain payments (including payments for certain services provided to the Guarantor), taxes and the reimbursement of all costs, charges and expenses of and incidental to the enforcement of the Trust Deed and the other Transaction Documents to which the Bond Trustee is a party, including the appointment of a receiver in respect of the Portfolio assets (including legal fees and disbursements) and the exercise by the receiver or the Bond Trustee of all or any of the powers granted to them under the Trust Deed and the other Transaction Documents to which the Bond Trustee is a party, and the reasonable remuneration of such receiver or any agent or employee of such receiver or any agent of the Bond Trustee and all reasonable costs, charges and expenses properly incurred by such receiver or the Bond Trustee in exercising their power. These amounts could increase, especially in adverse circumstances such as the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default, the insolvency of the Bank or the Guarantor or a Servicer Termination Event. If after the insolvency of the Bank such expenses or the costs of a receiver or the Bond Trustee become too great, payments of interest on and principal of the covered bonds may be reduced or delayed.

The ability of the Bond Trustee (for itself and on behalf of the other Secured Creditors) to exercise remedies in respect of the covered bonds and the Covered Bond Guarantee and to enforce the security granted to it pursuant to the terms of the Security Agreement is subject to the bankruptcy and insolvency laws of Canada. The *Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act* (Canada) ("**BIA**") and the *Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act* (Canada) ("**CCAA**") both provide regimes pursuant to which debtor companies are entitled to seek temporary relief from their creditors. The BIA applies to limited partnerships. In addition, Canadian jurisprudence makes it clear that both the BIA and the CCAA can apply to limited partnerships. Further, it is a possibility that a liquidator or receiver of the Seller, another creditor of the Guarantor or the Superintendent could seek the court appointment of a receiver of the Guarantor or a winding-up of the Guarantor, or might commence involuntary bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against the Guarantor under the BIA or the CCAA.

If the Guarantor or Bank, including as Seller and initial Servicer, voluntarily or involuntarily becomes subject to bankruptcy, insolvency or winding-up proceedings including pursuant to the BIA, the CCAA or the WURA or if a receiver is appointed over the Bank or the Guarantor, notwithstanding the protective provisions of the Legislative Framework, this may delay or otherwise impair the exercise of rights or any realization by the Bond Trustee (for itself and on behalf of the other Secured Creditors) under the covered bonds, the Covered Bond Guarantee and/or the Security Agreement and/or impair the ability of the Guarantor or Bond Trustee to trace and recover any funds which the Servicer has commingled with any other funds held by it prior to such funds being paid into the GDA Account. In the event of a Servicer Termination Event as a result of the insolvency of the Bank, the right of the Guarantor to appoint a successor Servicer may be stayed or prevented.

Risks relating to the Portfolio

When realizing assets of the Portfolio following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default, the proceeds may be insufficient to repay all amounts due to covered bondholders

All Guaranteed Amounts will immediately become due and payable following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and the service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor. At such time, the Bond Trustee will then be entitled to liquidate the Portfolio and otherwise enforce assets under the Portfolio in accordance with, and subject to, the provisions of the Security Agreement. The enforcement proceeds thereof may be used to make payments to the Guarantor’s creditors, including payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee in accordance with the Post-Enforcement Priority of Payments, described below in “*Cashflows*.” However, there is no guarantee that the proceeds of enforcement of the Portfolio will be in an amount sufficient to repay all amounts due to the covered bondholders and any relevant creditors.

In the case of insolvency of the Account Bank, the Guarantor will only have an unsecured claim against the estate for funds deposited

While the Guarantor has undertaken to transfer the funds standing to the credit of the Account Bank to another bank if the credit rating of the Account Bank falls below the Account Bank Required Ratings, there can be no assurance that such transfer would be completed before the Account Bank becomes insolvent. If such an event occurs, the Guarantor would have a claim as an unsecured creditor of the Account Bank. Accordingly, there is a potential risk of a loss of the Guarantor’s funds held with the Account Bank in the event that the Account Bank has insufficient funds to meet all the claims of its unsecured creditors.

The Asset Coverage Test, Amortization Test, Valuation Calculation and Pre-Maturity Test may not ensure that adequate funds will be available to satisfy the Guarantor’s obligations in full

While the Asset Coverage Test, the Amortization Test and the Pre-Maturity Test have been designed to mitigate certain economic and legal stresses in connection with the performance and valuation of the Portfolio in order to ensure that the Guarantor is able to meet its ongoing requirements at all relevant times, in setting the values and criteria for such tests, modeling has been undertaken on the basis of certain assumptions in certain stress scenarios. No assurance can be given that the assumptions utilized in such modeling have been able to incorporate or examine all possible scenarios that may occur in respect of the Guarantor and the Portfolio. As such, no assurance can be given that the methodology and modeling utilized to set the relevant values and criteria within such tests will be sufficient in all scenarios to ensure that the Guarantor will be able to meet its obligations in full.

The Mortgaged Properties subject to the Related Security for Loans in the Portfolio do not undergo periodic valuations and prior to July 1, 2014 were not required to be indexed to account for subsequent market developments. Valuations are obtained when a Loan is originated, but generally not subsequent to origination.

Starting July 1, 2014, the Guarantor employed an indexation methodology that meets the requirements provided for in the CMHC Guide to determine indexed valuations for Mortgaged Properties relating to the Loans in the Portfolio (which methodology may be updated from time to time and will, at any time, be disclosed in the then-current Investor Report and each future Investor Report for periods from and after July 1, 2014, the "**Indexation Methodology**") for purposes of the Asset Coverage Test, the Amortization Test and the Valuation Calculation as set forth in the Guarantor Agreement, and for all other purposes as required by the CMHC Guide. Any change to the Indexation Methodology must comply with the requirements of the CMHC Guide and will (i) require notice to CMHC and satisfaction of any other conditions specified by CMHC in relation thereto, (ii) if such change constitutes a material amendment thereto, require satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition, and (iii) if such change is materially prejudicial to the covered bondholders, require the consent of the Bond Trustee.

Initially, the Indexation Methodology employed by the Guarantor is based on (i) with respect to Mortgaged Properties located in cities of Vancouver, Victoria, Calgary, Edmonton, Winnipeg, Ottawa-Gatineau, Hamilton, Toronto, Montreal, Quebec City and Halifax, data provided by Teranet through the Teranet-National Bank National Composite House Price Index™ (the "**House Price Index**"), and (ii) for Mortgage Properties located in all other areas of Canada, national residential statistics compiled by the Canadian Real Estate Association ("**CREA**").

The data derived by the House Price Index is based on a repeat sales method, which measures the change in price of certain residential properties within the related area based on at least two sales of each such property over time. Such price change data is then used to formulate the House Price Index for the related area. Details of the House Price Index may be found at www.housepriceindex.ca.

The national residential statistics derived by CREA are the average actual resale prices for residential properties in the related area, as well as overall figures for each province and territory of Canada. Details of the statistics provided by CREA may be found at www.crea.ca/statistics.

The indexation methodology employed by the Bank will index the Mortgaged Properties relating to the Loans in the Portfolio to reflect the latest valuation of such Mortgaged Properties.

Certain risks are associated with the use of composite indices and statistics including the House Price Index and CREA, such as (i) the data provided with respect to larger geographical areas could mask localized price fluctuations, and (ii) data on the growth rate for each type of dwelling is not available because the data provided combines all dwelling types and, therefore, the data provided may not reflect price fluctuations for the different types of dwellings. Accordingly, no assurance can be given that the valuation of the Mortgaged Properties in the Portfolio using the Indexation Methodology will result in an accurate determination of the actual realizable value of a particular Mortgaged Property or of the Portfolio as a whole.

The Bank can give no assurance as to the accuracy of the information provided by the House Price Index and CREA.

The Bond Trustee will not be responsible for monitoring compliance with, or the monitoring of, the Asset Coverage Test, the Amortization Test, the Valuation Calculation or the Pre-Maturity Test or any other test, or supervising the performance by any other party of its obligations under any Transaction Document. See "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Guarantor Agreement*."

While the Guarantor is required to perform the Valuation Calculation to monitor exposure to volatility of interest rate and currency market risk by measuring the present value of the Portfolio relative to the market value of the obligations guaranteed under the Covered Bond Guarantee, there is no obligation on the part of the Bank or the Guarantor to take any action in respect of the Valuation Calculation to the extent it shows the market value of the Portfolio is less than the market value of the obligations guaranteed under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

Borrowers may default in paying amounts due under the Loans. The inability of borrowers to pay amounts due under the Loans may reduce the amount of the Guarantor's available funds

Borrowers may for a variety of reasons default on their obligations due under the Loans. Various factors influence mortgage delinquency rates and the ultimate payment of interest and principal. Examples of such factors include changes in the national or international economic climate, regional economic or housing conditions, changes in tax laws, interest rates, inflation, the availability of financing, yields on alternative investments, political developments and government policies. Other factors in a borrower's individual, personal or financial circumstances may affect the ability of the borrower to repay its Loan. Loss of earnings, illness, divorce and other similar factors may also lead to an increase in delinquencies by and bankruptcies of borrowers, and could ultimately have an adverse impact on the ability of borrowers to repay the Loans. In addition to the above, the ability of a borrower to sell a property at a price sufficient to repay the amounts outstanding under that Loan will depend upon a number of factors, including the availability of purchasers for that property, the value of that property and property values in general at the time. See also "*—Risks relating to the Canadian residential mortgage market such as a deterioration in the market for real estate, could negatively affect the value and marketability of the covered bonds.*"

Risks relating to the Canadian residential mortgage market such as a deterioration in the market for real estate, could negatively affect the value and marketability of the covered bonds

A severe correction in the housing market could create strains in the residential mortgage market by causing an economic recession (and associated loss of income) and a reduction in homeowner equity, leading to rising delinquencies. The risk of a severe correction is considered low in most regions of the country, as valuations are moderate, affordability is reasonable and interest rates are likely to remain low for some time. The risk of a correction is somewhat larger in the Greater Vancouver and Toronto areas, which account for about one-quarter of the population, as valuations are high and affordability of detached properties is strained. The risk of a severe correction would increase if interest rates rose sharply or an external shock caused the economy to contract. In this case, the subsequent housing downturn would impair economic circumstances and create greater stress in the mortgage market.

Prior to the completion of a transfer of payments collected from the Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor, funds collected by the Servicer on behalf of the Guarantor are commingled with the funds of the Servicer, and there can be no assurance as to the ability of the Guarantor to obtain effective direct payments from borrowers

Notice is usually given to borrowers of the transfer of the Loan and Related Security to the Guarantor only after the occurrence of a Registered Title Event. Such notice will instruct the relevant borrower to pay all further amounts due under the relevant Loan to an account in the name of the Guarantor (as specified in such notice). As a matter of Canadian law, until such notice is received by the borrower, the borrower may continue to pay all amounts due under the relevant Loan to the Seller and receive good discharge for such payments.

There can be no assurance that upon the occurrence of a Registered Title Event, (a) notification to the borrower will be made duly and timely or (b) the Guarantor will have the ability to obtain effective direct payments from the borrower under the Loan and the Related Security.

Under the Servicing Agreement, the Servicer may receive funds belonging to the Guarantor that arise from the Loans and their Related Security comprised in the Portfolio and are to be paid into the GDA Account. Prior to a downgrade of the ratings of the Servicer by one or more Rating Agencies below any of the Servicer Deposit Threshold Ratings, the Servicer will transfer such funds on or before the next Guarantor Payment Date (i) to the Cash Manager prior to a downgrade of the ratings of the Cash Manager by one or more Rating Agencies below any of the Cash Management Deposit Ratings, and (ii) following a downgrade of the ratings of the Cash Manager by one or more Rating Agencies below any of the Cash Management Deposit Ratings, directly into the GDA Account. In the event of a downgrade of the ratings of the Servicer by one or more Rating Agencies below any of the Servicer Deposit Threshold Ratings, the Servicer will transfer such funds (i) to the Cash Manager prior to a downgrade of the ratings of the Cash Manager by one or more Rating Agencies below any of the Cash Management Deposit Ratings, and (ii) following a downgrade of the ratings of the Cash Manager by one or more Rating Agencies below any of the Cash Management Deposit Ratings, directly into the GDA Account, in each case within two Toronto Business Days of the collection and/or receipt thereof.

Until completion of the transfer of such payments collected on the Loans and Related Security to the Cash Manager or the GDA Account and prior to the circumstances as set out above, funds collected by the Servicer on the account of the Guarantor are commingled with the funds of the Servicer. This may adversely affect the timing and amount of payments on the covered bonds. Moreover, the Bank also serves as initial Account Bank to the Guarantor. Therefore, even if the transfer of such payments to the Guarantor's account with the Bank is completed, the covered bondholders bear the risk of an insolvency of the Bank unless the Bank has been replaced as Account Bank and transfer of the funds has been completed prior to such event.

The Lending Criteria applicable to any Loan at the time of its origination may not be the same as those set out in this prospectus, including lower creditworthiness

Each of the Loans originated by the Seller will have been originated in accordance with its Lending Criteria at the time of origination. Since the Portfolio is dynamic, Loans made based on different lending criteria may be included in the Portfolio so long as the Loan Representations and Warranties are satisfied as of the applicable Transfer Date with respect to each such Loan. It is expected that the Seller's Lending Criteria will generally consider type of property, term of loan, age of applicant, the Loan-To-Value ratio, insurance policies, high loan-to-value fees, status of applicants and credit history. In connection with the sale of any Loans and Related Security to the Guarantor, the Seller will warrant only that prior to making each advance under such Loans, the Lending Criteria and all other preconditions to the making of the Loans were satisfied. The Seller retains the right to revise its Lending Criteria from time to time but would only do so to the extent that such a change would be acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market. If the Lending Criteria of the Seller changes in a manner that affects the creditworthiness of the Loans, that may lead to increased defaults by borrowers and may affect the realizable value of the Portfolio, or part thereof, and the ability of the Guarantor to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

In addition, New Sellers who are affiliates of the Bank may in the future accede to the Program, become a limited partner of the Guarantor and sell Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor. Any loans originated by a New Seller will have been originated in accordance with the lending criteria of the New Seller, which may differ from the Lending Criteria for Loans originated by the Seller. If the lending criteria differ in a way that affects the creditworthiness of the Loans in the Portfolio, that may lead to increased defaults by borrowers and may affect the realizable value of the Portfolio or any part thereof or the ability of the Guarantor to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

Levels of arrears in the Portfolio included in the applicable prospectus supplement are as of the applicable cut-off dates, and may have changed at the date of the issuance of the relevant Series of covered bonds

For each Series of covered bonds, selected information about the Loans in the Portfolio, including information in respect of arrears as of the cut-off date prior to the time of the relevant issue of such Series of covered bonds, will be set out in the applicable prospectus supplement. Except as otherwise indicated in such prospectus supplement, the selected information will be prepared using the current balance as of the relevant cut-off date, which includes all principal and accrued interest for the Loans as of the relevant cut-off date and may not be a true reflection of the Loans as at the date of issuance of such Series of covered bonds. The selected information will not include any Loans assigned to the Portfolio since the relevant cut-off date.

New Loan Types may be included in the Portfolio without the consent of covered bondholders

As at the date of this prospectus, the Portfolio is comprised of Loans secured on residential property located in Canada which have been fully advanced at the date of sale to the Guarantor. In the event that New Loan Types are subsequently included, amendments will be made to the Eligibility Criteria, the Loan Representations and Warranties, and certain related provisions of the Mortgage Sale Agreement, subject to satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition. While New Loan Types will be required to comply with the eligibility requirements under Part I.1 of the NHA and the CMHC Guide, the consent of the covered bondholders to these changes will not need to be obtained and as a consequence the interests of the covered bondholders may be adversely affected.

The Guarantor does not have registered or recorded title to the Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio on the relevant Transfer Date which could affect its rights against borrowers

The Seller will transfer all of its right, title and interest in the Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor pursuant to the Mortgage Sale Agreement on the relevant Transfer Date. However, the registered or recorded title to the transferred Loans and their Related Security will remain with the Seller until the occurrence of a Registered Title Event. As a result (and until such time) application will not be made to the applicable land registry offices to register or record the Guarantor's ownership interest in the Loans and their Related Security and notice of the sale of the Loans and their Related Security will not be given to any borrower. Since prior to the occurrence of a Registered Title Event, the Guarantor will not have perfected its ownership interest in the Loans and their Related Security by completing the applicable registrations at the appropriate land registry or land titles office or providing notice of the sale of the Loans to the borrowers, the following risks exist:

- *first*, if the Seller sells a Loan and its Related Security, which has already been sold to the Guarantor, to another person and that person acted in good faith and did not have notice of the interest of the Guarantor in the Loan and its Related Security, then such person might obtain good title to the Loan and its Related Security, free from the interest of the Guarantor. If this occurs then the Guarantor may not have good title in the affected Loan and its Related Security and it may not be entitled to payments by a borrower in respect of that Loan;
- *second*, the rights of the Guarantor may be subject to the rights of the borrowers against the Seller, such as rights of set-off that may occur in relation to transactions or deposits made between borrowers and the Seller and the rights of borrowers to redeem their mortgages by repaying the Loans directly to the Seller; and
- *third*, unless the Guarantor has perfected the sale of the Loans (which it is only entitled to do in certain circumstances), the Guarantor may not be able to enforce any borrower's obligations under the relevant Loan itself but may have to join the Seller as a party to any legal proceedings.

If any of the risks described in the bullet points above were to occur, then the realizable value of the Portfolio or any part thereof and/or the ability of the Guarantor to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee may be adversely affected. In addition, the exercise of set-off rights by borrowers may also adversely affect the amount that the Bond Trustee (for covered bondholders and on behalf of the other Secured Creditors) is able to realize on the Portfolio under the Security Agreement.

Limitations on recourse to the Seller may adversely affect the Portfolio

The Guarantor and the Bond Trustee will not undertake any investigations, searches or other actions on any Loan or its Related Security and will rely instead on the representations and warranties provided by the Seller in connection with the transfer of such Loans and their Related Security. If any of the representations and warranties prove to be untrue or there is a material breach of these representations and warranties (subject to the Seller remedying such breach within a certain period of time), the Seller will be required to repurchase the Loan and its Related Security. There can be no assurance that the Seller will have the financial resources to repurchase the Loans and their Related Security. However, if the Seller does not repurchase those Loans and their Related Security that are in breach, those Loans will be given a zero value for the purposes of any calculation of the Asset Coverage Test, the Valuation Calculation and the Amortization Test. There is no further recourse to the Seller for a breach of a Loan Representation and Warranty.

Risks particular to STEP Loans

The Bank expects that the Portfolio will from time to time include STEP Loans. For a detailed description of the STEP Loans, see "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Mortgage Sale Agreement—Scotia Total Equity Plan and STEP Loans*." STEP Loans are subject to certain additional risks which include, among others, the following risks.

- The risk that Other STEP Products that are secured by the same STEP Collateral Mortgage may be sold to third parties. While as a condition precedent to a sale of such a Other STEP Product, such third party must first enter into a Security Sharing Agreement and provide a Release of Security to the Custodian to be held in trust, prior to such Release of Security becoming effective, the Custodian must obtain an opinion of legal counsel that the conditions precedent to the exercise of such Release of Security have occurred. There can be no assurance that such conditions precedent will be satisfied in the intended circumstance or that any delay by the Custodian in exercising such Release of Security would not have an adverse effect on the Portfolio.
- In the event of any required sale of any Selected Loans under the Transaction Documents, and if a STEP Loan is required to be sold, the risk that the terms of the STEP Plan, the related servicing and priority arrangements governing the STEP Loans and/or the continuing ownership interests of the Seller and/or Other STEP Creditors in the other related STEP Accounts and the related STEP Collateral Mortgages may make such STEP Loans more difficult to sell than other Loans that are not STEP Loans.
- The risk that the Guarantor, or the Servicer on its behalf, is or will become subject to certain fiduciary and other rights, duties and obligations under applicable law or under any applicable agreements in regard to the Seller and/or any Other STEP Creditor having an interest in the related STEP Collateral Mortgage which could delay or otherwise adversely affect its right to make certain servicing and/or enforcement decisions relating to such STEP Loans or, with respect to such agreements, which may affect the respective priorities of the related STEP Loans and Other STEP Products.

The Portfolio consists of Loans and their Related Security which have been randomly selected by the Seller and which are represented to satisfy the Loan Representations and Warranties and the CMHC Guide

None of the Arrangers, the Cover Pool Monitor, any Dealer, the Bond Trustee, or the Custodian has undertaken or will undertake any due diligence with respect to the wording or content of the individual agreements underlying such Portfolio assets or the facts and circumstances relating to the particular relationship between the relevant borrower or the related Mortgaged Property, respectively, and the Seller, all of which may impact the viability and interpretation of such agreements. The Guarantor will rely on the Loan Representations and Warranties given by the Seller in the Mortgage Sale Agreement. The remedies provided for in the Mortgage Sale Agreement to the Guarantor in respect of non-compliance with the Loan

Representations and Warranties (other than where such breach was waived at the point of assignment to the Guarantor), will be limited to the repurchase by the Seller of the related Loan and its Related Security for an amount equal to the applicable Repurchase Amount. Such obligation is not guaranteed by nor will it be the responsibility of any person other than the Seller and neither the Guarantor nor the Bond Trustee will have recourse to any other person in the event that the Seller, for whatever reason, fails to meet such obligation.

The sale of real property upon the enforcement of a mortgage security is subject to Canadian real property and insolvency regulations, property transfer taxes, capital gain taxes and legal liens

Limitations on enforceability of mortgage security. Generally, a lender's right to realize on its mortgage security may be subject to or regulated by statutes, the existing practice and procedures of a court of competent jurisdiction and that court's equitable powers. Under certain circumstances, a court may exercise equitable powers to relieve a borrower from the effects of certain defaults or acceleration. Certain proceedings taken by a lender to realize upon its mortgage security, such as foreclosure and judicial sale, are subject to most of the delays and expenses of other lawsuits, particularly if defenses or counterclaims are asserted, sometimes requiring up to several years to complete. If a borrower makes a proposal or an assignment or initiates or becomes subject to any other proceedings under the *Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act* (Canada) or other insolvency, arrangement or other legislation for the relief of debtors, the Seller or the Guarantor may not be permitted to accelerate the maturity of the related Loan, to foreclose on the Mortgaged Property or to exercise power of sale or other mortgage enforcement proceedings for a considerable period of time. For STEP Loans in the Province of Quebec, since the Seller and Other STEP Creditors will be entitled to an undivided interest in the STEP Collateral Mortgage to the extent of the outstanding indebtedness owing under any related STEP Accounts, the Guarantor will have to join the Seller and such Other STEP Creditors in enforcement proceedings against the related borrower.

Where a borrower or any beneficial owner of a Mortgaged Property is or subsequently becomes a non-resident of Canada under the ITA and remains a non-resident at the time that enforcement proceedings are taken under the Loan, the specific remedies available to the lender may be practically limited by the requirement that the lender comply with section 116 of the ITA upon any sale of the Mortgaged Property under or in respect of the related Loan which may require the lender to withhold from realization proceeds an amount equal to (or, in certain cases, greater than) the tax applicable to any accrued capital gain of such non-resident person triggered by such sale. Many of the Loans contain "due-on-sale" clauses, which permit the acceleration of the maturity of the related Loan if the borrower sells the related Mortgaged Property. The Loans also generally include a debt-acceleration clause, which permits the acceleration of the Loan upon a monetary or non-monetary default by the borrower. The enforceability of such due-on-sale and debt-acceleration clauses is subject to and may be affected by (i) applicable bankruptcy, insolvency and other laws of general application limiting the enforcement of creditors' rights and remedies generally, and (ii) applicable principles of law and equity, and in some provinces, applicable statutory provisions which limit restraint on alienation of real property and provide relief to a borrower, in certain circumstances, from the effects of certain defaults or acceleration.

Prior liens. The priority of mortgages securing the Loans may be subject to prior liens resulting from the operation of law, such as liens in favor of governmental authorities and persons having supplied work or materials to the relevant Mortgaged Property. In each province and territory, the priority of a mortgage against real property may be subject to a prior lien for unpaid realty taxes in favor of the applicable taxing authorities. In the Province of Québec, the priority of a hypothec on rents may be subject to a prior claim in favor of the government for amounts due under fiscal laws.

Registered title. The Mortgages securing the Loans will be registered in the name of the Seller, as agent, bare trustee and nominee in trust for the Guarantor. Upon the occurrence of a Registered Title Event, the Guarantor will have the right to demand that the Seller provide it with registered or recorded title to the Loans and their Related Security at the expense of the Seller, and if the Seller fails to do so, the Guarantor will exercise certain powers of attorney granted to it by the Seller, and record assignments and transfers of all Loans in its name (or in any other name it may decide) or, for STEP Loans in Quebec, to record an assignment of the STEP Collateral Mortgages to the extent of the Guarantor's interest therein. If such registration becomes necessary, there may be costs and delays associated with effecting such registrations (potentially resulting in delays in commencing, prosecuting and completing enforcement proceedings). The Seller will be responsible for meeting all costs associated with such registrations. However, if the Seller does not have the funds to pay such costs, any related expenses the Guarantor is required to pay may reduce the amounts available to pay the covered bondholders.

Adverse environmental conditions on a Mortgaged Property may affect the value of a Loan

If an adverse environmental condition exists with respect to a Mortgaged Property, the related Loan may be subject to the following risks: (i) a diminution in the value of such Mortgaged Property or the practical ability to foreclose or take other enforcement proceedings against such Mortgaged Property; (ii) the potential that the related borrower may default on the related Loan due to such borrower's inability to pay high remediation costs or difficulty in bringing the Mortgaged Property into compliance with environmental laws; (iii) in certain circumstances as more fully described below, the liability for clean-up costs or other remedial actions could exceed the value of the Mortgaged Property; or (iv) the practical inability to sell the Mortgaged Property or the related Loan in the secondary market. Under certain provincial laws, the reimbursement of remedial costs incurred by regulatory agencies to correct environmental conditions may be secured by a statutory lien over the subject property, which lien, in some instances, may be prior to the lien of an existing mortgage. Any such lien arising in respect of a Loan could adversely affect the value of such Loan and could make any foreclosure or other enforcement proceedings impracticable. Under various federal and provincial laws and regulations, a current or previous owner or operator of real property, as well as certain other categories of parties, may be liable for the costs of removal or remediation of hazardous or toxic substances on, under, adjacent to or in such property. The cost of any required remediation and the owner's liability therefor is generally not limited under applicable laws, and could exceed the value of the property and/or the assets of the owner. Under some environmental laws, a secured lender may be found to be an "owner" or "operator" or person in charge, management or control of, or otherwise responsible for, the Portfolio. In such cases, a secured lender may be liable for the costs of any required removal or remediation of adverse environmental conditions. The Guarantor and/or the Bond Trustee's exposure to liability for clean up costs will increase if it or its agent actually takes possession of the Mortgaged Property.

All of the real property securing the Loans in the Portfolio is located in Canada and a deterioration in the market for residential real estate in Canada could negatively affect the value of the covered bonds

All real property securing the Loans in the Portfolio is located in Canada. The performance of the Loans will therefore be affected by general economic conditions in Canada and the condition of the residential housing market in Canada. A significant deterioration in the market for residential or other real estate could negatively affect the value of the real property in the underlying Portfolio and the Canadian residential mortgage market, which in turn could have an adverse effect on the value and marketability of the covered bonds and the ability of the Guarantor to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

Interest obligations may be greater than the monthly installment payment for certain products and borrowers may refuse to pay excess amounts

When the Bank’s Prime Rate increases, the amount of interest payable by a borrower under a loan having a variable rate of interest increases. The borrower’s installment payment, however, remains constant (except as discussed below) and, the portion of the borrower’s monthly mortgage payment allocated towards the payment of principal is reduced. If the interest rate on a Loan reaches the level at which the borrower’s mortgage payment is insufficient to cover the interest payable, the difference is capitalized and added to the principal balance of the Loan. For certain variable rate products this may result in the principal balance of the Loan being greater than the original principal amount of the Loan. If the principal balance of the Loan increases in excess of 105 percent of the original principal amount of the Loan, the Bank may require the borrower to pay the excess amount, increase the amount of the borrower’s monthly installment, or (if the borrower has the right to do so under the Loan) convert the Loan to a fixed rate Loan.

Accordingly, an increase in a borrower’s monthly installment or principal balance may affect the borrower’s timely payment of scheduled payments of principal and interest on the related Loan and, accordingly, the actual rates of delinquencies, foreclosures and losses with respect to such Loan. Further, economic and market conditions may impair borrowers’ ability to make timely payment of scheduled payments of principal and interest on the Loans or to refinance or sell their residential properties, which may contribute to higher delinquency and default rates, and may in turn adversely affect the value of the covered bonds. See *“—Risks relating to the Canadian residential mortgage market such as a deterioration in the market for real estate, could negatively affect the value and marketability of the covered bonds.”*

The Portfolio consists of Loans with renewal risk due to short maturities

Canadian mortgage loans generally provide for the renewal of the loans periodically (e.g., every five years), but the amortization period of the loans is generally much longer (e.g., 25 years). See “*Covered Bond Portfolio—Characteristics of the Loans.*” The borrower faces a change, perhaps a substantial change, in the applicable interest rate on the loan at the time of renewal and the prospect of seeking a replacement loan from another lender if the current lender does not renew the loan. In an adverse economic environment, obtaining a replacement loan may be difficult. Accordingly, if prevailing interest rates have risen significantly, an existing lender may need to renew the loan at below market rates in order to avoid a default on a loan up for renewal.

If the Bank renews Loans at below market rates, it may adversely affect the market value of such Loans in the Portfolio and in the event that the Guarantor must liquidate some Loans in order to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee it may realize less than the principal amount of the Loans liquidated. If the Guarantor is required to liquidate a large number of Loans that have interest rates significantly below prevailing interest rates, the Guarantor may not realize sufficient proceeds to pay the covered bonds in full.

Risks relating to the Guarantor

There are limited events of default with respect to the Guarantor

Service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice on the Bank does not constitute an event of default with respect to the Guarantor and, therefore, does not in itself trigger an acceleration of the payment obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee. Instead, the Terms and Conditions contain limited events of default with respect to the Guarantor, the occurrence of which would entitle covered bondholders to accelerate payment obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee. Acceleration of the covered bonds following a Guarantor Event of Default may not lead to accelerated payments to covered bondholders, since there can be no assurance that the Guarantor or the Bond Trustee will be able to promptly sell the Portfolio.

Currency risks and risks related to Swap Agreements

Differences in timing of obligations of the Guarantor and the Covered Bond Swap Provider under the Covered Bond Swap Agreement could adversely affect the Guarantor’s ability to meet its obligations

Following the Covered Bond Swap Effective Date, the Guarantor will, on each Guarantor Payment Date, pay or provide for payment of an amount to the Covered Bond Swap Provider based on the Canadian Deposit Offering Rate for Canadian Dollar deposits (“**CDOR**”) having the relevant maturity for the agreed period. The Covered Bond Swap Provider may not be obliged to make corresponding swap payments to the Guarantor until amounts are due and payable by the Guarantor under the Intercompany Loan Agreement or Due for Payment under the Covered Bond Guarantee. If the Covered Bond Swap Provider does not meet its payment obligations to the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Swap Agreement or does not make a termination payment that has become due from it to the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Swap Agreement, the Guarantor may have a larger shortfall in funds with which to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee with respect to the covered bonds than if the Covered Bond Swap Provider satisfied its payment obligations on the same date as the date on which the Guarantor’s payment obligations under the Covered Bond Swap were due. Hence, the difference in timing between the obligations of the Guarantor and the obligations of the Covered Bond Swap Provider under the Covered Bond Swap Agreement may affect the Guarantor’s ability to make payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee with respect to the covered bonds. To mitigate the risk, the Covered Bond Swap Provider will be required, pursuant to the terms of the relevant Covered Bond Swap Agreement, to post collateral with the Guarantor if the Guarantor’s net exposure to the Covered Bond Swap Provider under the relevant Covered Bond Swap Agreement exceeds a certain threshold level or if certain ratings requirements are not met.

Risks related to the structure of a particular issue of covered bonds

Changes of law

The structure of the issue of the covered bonds and the ratings which are to be assigned to them are based on the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein including banking, bankruptcy and income tax laws in effect as at the date of this prospectus, unless otherwise indicated. No assurance can be given as to the impact of any possible change to these laws, including the NHA and the regulations and policies thereunder with respect to CMHC guidelines (including the CMHC Guide), the applicable laws, regulations and policies with respect to the issuance of covered bonds, the covered bonds themselves or the bankruptcy and receivership of the Bank or the Guarantor after the date of this prospectus, nor can any assurance be given as to whether such change could adversely affect the ability of the Bank to meet its obligations in respect of the covered bonds or the Guarantor to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

The covered bonds may be subject to optional redemption by the Bank

An optional redemption feature of a Series of covered bonds is likely to limit their market value. During any period when the Bank may elect to redeem such covered bonds, the market value of those covered bonds generally will not rise substantially above the price at which they can be redeemed. This also may occur prior to any redemption period.

The Bank may be expected to redeem such Series of covered bonds when its cost of borrowing is lower than the interest rate on the Series of covered bonds. At those times, an investor generally would not be able to reinvest the redemption proceeds at an effective interest rate as high as the interest rate on the Series of covered bonds being redeemed and may only be able to do so at a significantly lower rate. Potential investors should consider reinvestment risk in light of other investments available at that time.

The Bank may issue covered bonds that bear interest at a rate that converts from a Fixed Rate to a Floating Rate, or from a Floating Rate to a Fixed Rate

The Bank may issue a Tranche of covered bonds that bear interest at a rate that converts from a Fixed Rate to a Floating Rate, or from a Floating Rate to a Fixed Rate. Where the Bank has the right to affect such a conversion, this may affect the secondary market and the market value of the covered bonds since the Bank may be expected to convert the rate when it is likely to produce a lower overall cost of borrowing. If the Bank converts from a Fixed Rate to a Floating Rate, in such circumstances, the spread on such covered bonds may be less favorable than the prevailing spreads on comparable Floating Rate covered bonds tied to the same Reference Rate. In addition, the new Floating Rate at any time may be lower than the rates on the other covered bonds. If the Bank converts from a Floating Rate to a Fixed Rate, in such circumstances, the Fixed Rate may be lower than the prevailing rates on the other covered bonds.

Covered bonds issued at a substantial discount or premium may experience significant price volatility

The issue price of covered bonds specified in the applicable prospectus supplement may be more than the market value of such covered bonds as of the issue date, and the price, if any, at which a dealer or any other person is willing to purchase the covered bonds in secondary market transactions, may be lower than the issue price. Generally, the longer the remaining term of the securities, the greater the price volatility as compared to conventional interest bearing securities with comparable maturities.

The Bond Trustee’s powers may affect the interests of the holders of the covered bonds

In the exercise of its powers, trusts, authorities and discretions, the Bond Trustee will only have regard to the interests of the holders of the covered bonds. In the exercise of its powers, trusts, authorities and discretions, the Bond Trustee may not act on behalf of the Bank. If, in connection with the exercise of its powers, trusts, authorities or discretions, the Bond Trustee is of the opinion that the interests of the holders of the covered bonds of any one or more Series would be materially prejudiced thereby, the Bond Trustee will not exercise such power, trust, authority or discretion without the approval by Extraordinary Resolution of such holders of the relevant Series of covered bonds then outstanding or by a direction in writing of such holders of the covered bonds representing at least 25 percent of the Principal Amount Outstanding of covered bonds of the relevant Series then outstanding.

The Bond Trustee is not obligated to serve Issuer Acceleration Notice on the Bank upon an Issuer Event of Default or a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor, or to seek enforcement of the provisions of the Trust Deed on the covered bonds, except if so directed by the holders of the covered bonds. Accordingly, the powers of the Bond Trustee may adversely affect your interests in the covered bonds.

Additional risk factors

Additional risk factors in relation to specific issues of covered bonds may be included in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The covered bonds have no established trading market when issued and there is no assurance that an active and liquid secondary market will develop for the covered bonds

Covered bonds may have no established trading market when issued, and no assurance is provided that an active and liquid secondary market for the covered bonds will develop. To the extent a secondary market exists or develops, it may not continue for the life of the covered bonds or it may not provide covered bondholders with liquidity of investment with the result that a covered bondholder may not be able to find a buyer to buy its covered bonds readily or at prices that will enable the covered bondholder to realize a desired yield. This is particularly the case for covered bonds that are especially sensitive to interest rate, currency or market risks, are designed for specific investment objectives or strategies or have been structured to meet the investment requirements of limited categories of investors. These types of covered bonds generally would have a more limited secondary market and more price volatility than conventional debt securities. Illiquidity may severely and adversely affect the market value of covered bonds.

The covered bonds will initially be held in book-entry form and therefore you must rely on the procedures of the relevant clearing systems to exercise any rights and remedies

Unless and until definitive U.S. Registered Covered Bonds are issued in exchange for book-entry interests in the covered bonds, owners of the book-entry interests will not be considered owners or holders of the covered bonds. Instead, the registered holder, or their respective nominee, will be the sole holder of the covered bonds. Payments of principal, interest and other amounts owing on or in respect of the covered bonds in global form will be made to Paying Agent, which will make payments to DTC. Thereafter, payments will be made by DTC to participants in these systems and then by such participants to indirect participants. After payment to the common depositary neither the Bank, the Bond Trustee, nor the Paying Agent will have any responsibility or liability of any aspect of the records related to, or payments of, interest, principal or other amounts to DTC or to owners of book-entry interests.

Since the covered bonds are not represented in physical form, it may make it difficult for you to pledge the covered bonds as security if covered bonds in physical form are required or necessary for such purposes. Unlike holders of the covered bonds themselves, owners of book-entry interests will not have the direct right to act upon our solicitations or consents or requests for waivers or other actions from holders of the covered bonds that we may choose to make in the future. Rather, owners of book-entry interests will be permitted to act only to the extent that they have received appropriate proxies to do so from DTC or, if applicable, from a participant. We cannot assure you that procedures implemented for the granting of such proxies will be sufficient to enable you to vote on any such solicitations or requests for actions on a timely basis.

Issuance of covered bonds in book-entry form may affect liquidity and the ability to pledge the covered bonds

Some investors, including some insurance companies and other institutions, are required by law or otherwise to hold physical certificates for securities they invest in and are not permitted to hold securities in book-entry form. Unless a prospectus supplement provides to the contrary, it is expected that the covered bonds will be issued in registered form as global covered bonds through DTC and, accordingly, some investors may not be permitted to own covered bonds. This may reduce the liquidity for the covered bonds by limiting the purchasers eligible to purchase the covered bonds in the secondary market.

Exchange rate risks and exchange controls

The Bank will pay principal and interest on the covered bonds and the Guarantor will make any payments under the Covered Bond Guarantee in U.S. Dollars. This presents certain risks relating to currency conversions if an investor's financial activities are denominated principally in a currency or currency unit (the "**Investor's Currency**") other than U.S. Dollars. These include the risk that exchange rates may significantly change (including changes due to devaluation of the U.S. Dollar or revaluation of the Investor's Currency) and the risk that authorities with jurisdiction over the Investor's Currency may impose or modify exchange controls. An appreciation in the value of the Investor's Currency relative to the U.S. Dollar would decrease (i) the Investor's Currency-equivalent yield on the covered bonds, (ii) the Investor's Currency-equivalent value of the principal payable on the covered bonds and (iii) the Investor's Currency-equivalent market value of the covered bonds.

Government and monetary authorities may impose (as some have done in the past) exchange controls that could adversely affect an applicable exchange rate. As a result, investors may receive less interest or principal than expected, or no interest or principal.

Interest rate risks

Investment in Fixed Rate Covered Bonds involves the risk that subsequent changes in market interest rates may adversely affect the value of the Fixed Rate Covered Bonds.

Program related legal and regulatory risks

The covered bonds and the Bank's activities are subject to the remedial powers of the Superintendent under the Bank Act and the requirements of the Legislative Framework and the CMHC Guide

The Superintendent, under Section 645(1) of the Bank Act, has the power, where in the opinion of the Superintendent, a bank, or a person with respect to a bank, is committing, or is about to commit, an act that is an unsafe or unsound practice in conducting the business of the bank, or is pursuing or is about to pursue any course of conduct that is an unsafe or unsound practice in conducting the business of the bank, to direct the bank or person, as the case may be, to cease or refrain from committing the act or pursuing the course of conduct and to perform such acts as in the opinion of the Superintendent are necessary to remedy the situation.

Although the above remedial power exists, following an initial review of potential regulatory and policy concerns associated with the issuance of covered bonds by Canadian deposit-taking institutions (during which it requested that financial institutions refrain from issuing covered bonds), the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions ("**OSFI**") confirmed by letter dated June 27, 2007 that Canadian deposit-taking institutions may issue covered bonds, provided certain conditions are met. The conditions are as follows: (i) at the time of issuance, the covered bonds must not make up more than four percent of the OSFI Total Assets of the relevant deposit-taking institution; (ii) if at any time after issuance the four percent limit is exceeded, the relevant deposit-taking institution must immediately notify OSFI; and (iii) excesses (above the four percent limit) due to factors not under the control of the issuing institution, such as foreign exchange fluctuations, will not require the relevant deposit-taking institution to take action to reduce the amount outstanding, however, for other excesses, the relevant deposit-taking institution must provide a plan showing how it proposes to eliminate the excess quickly. "**OSFI Total Assets**", for the purpose of the foregoing limit, will be equal to the numerator of the asset-to-capital multiple of the relevant deposit-taking institution. In addition, relevant deposit-taking institutions are expected, prior to issuing any covered bonds, to amend the pledging policies they are required to maintain under the Bank Act to take into account the issuance of covered bonds consistent with the above limits and to obtain board and/or committee approval for such amendments prior to issuance of any covered bonds.

The full Program amount, when combined with the outstanding balance of the covered bonds issued by the Bank under its previous program, is less than four percent of the OSFI Total Assets of the Bank as of the date of this prospectus. The Bank did not issue covered bonds prior to June 27, 2007, and the Bank previously received the requisite board approval for amendments to its pledging policies which take into account the issuance of covered bonds under the Program.

In 2012, the NHA was amended to establish a legislative framework for covered bonds (the "**Legislative Framework**"). The amendments to the NHA have given CMHC the responsibility to administer the Legislative Framework, with discretionary authority to establish conditions and restrictions applicable to registered issuers and registered covered bond programs and to oversee and enforce compliance with those conditions and terms. On December 17, 2012, CMHC published the Canadian Registered Covered Bond Programs Guide (as amended from time to time, the "**CMHC Guide**") implementing the Legislative Framework. The CMHC Guide elaborates on the role and powers of CMHC as administrator of the Legislative Framework and sets out the conditions and restrictions applicable to registered issuers and registered covered

47

bond programs. The Bank and the Program are required to comply with the requirements of the NHA and CMHC Guide.

No assurance can be given that additional regulations or guidance from CMHC, OSFI, the Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation or any other regulatory authority will not arise with regard to the mortgage market in Canada generally, the Seller's or the Guarantor's particular sector in that market or specifically in relation to the Seller or the Guarantor. Any such action or developments may have a material adverse effect on the Seller and/or the Guarantor and their respective businesses and operations. This may adversely affect the ability of the Guarantor to dispose of the Portfolio or any part thereof in a timely manner and/or the realizable value of the Portfolio or any part thereof, and accordingly, affect the ability of the Bank and the Guarantor, respectively, to meet their obligations under the covered bonds in the case of the Bank and the Covered Bond Guarantee in the case of the Guarantor.

Suspension of the Bank's ability to issue covered bonds under Part I.1 of NHA and the CMHC Guide could negatively impact the covered bonds

Part I.1 of the NHA and the CMHC Guide impose certain ongoing obligations on both the Bank and the Guarantor and permit CMHC to take certain actions in respect of the Bank if such obligations are not complied with from time to time. Such actions include suspending the right of the Bank to issue covered bonds under the Program and directing the Bank to take specified steps for the purpose of complying with the CMHC Guide. There is a risk that suspending the right of the Bank to issue covered bonds under the Program or any non-compliance with a request from CMHC may negatively impact the value and/or liquidity of the covered bonds. However, pursuant to 9.1(a) (*Issuer Events of Default*), non-compliance by the Bank with Part I.1 of the NHA or the CMHC Guide will not constitute an Issuer Event of Default.

The Bank's residential mortgage underwriting practices and procedures may be affected by regulatory guidelines

Guideline B-20 — Residential Mortgage Underwriting Practices and Procedures ("**Guideline B-20**"), published by OSFI in June 2012, sets out OSFI's expectations for prudent residential mortgage underwriting by federally-regulated financial institutions, which includes the Seller in respect of Loans originated by it. Guideline B-20 calls for the establishment of a residential mortgage underwriting policy by the Seller and sets out expectations with respect to borrower due diligence, collateral management and appraisal processes and credit and counterparty risk management practices and procedures by the Seller. OSFI's expectation was for full compliance with Guideline B-20 by the end of the Seller's fiscal year 2012 and it had indicated that, where possible, federally-regulated financial institutions should comply immediately. The Bank is currently compliant with the guideline.

Loans that may be sold to the Guarantor in the future may have characteristics differing from current Loans generated before the implementation of Guideline B-20, including in respect of loss experience, delinquencies, revenue experience and monthly payment rates. Although uncertain at this time, compliance with Guideline B-20 may impact the Seller's ability to generate Loans at the same rate as the Seller originated prior to Guideline B-20 coming into effect.

Guideline B-20 also provides that where a federally-regulated financial institution acquires a residential mortgage loan, including a home equity line of credit, that has been originated by a third party, such federally regulated financial institution should ensure that the underwriting standards of that third party are consistent with those set out in the residential mortgage underwriting policy of the federally-regulated financial institution and compliant with Guideline B-20. To the extent that the Bond Trustee realizes upon the security it has on the Loans and Related Security, the Bond Trustee may be limited in its ability to sell such assets to a federally-regulated financial institution if such purchaser determines that the sale would not be in compliance with Guideline B-20.

Canadian usury laws

Unless otherwise indicated, all covered bonds issued under the Program are governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein. The *Criminal Code* (Canada) prohibits the receipt of "interest" at a "criminal rate" (namely, an effective annual rate of interest that exceeds 60 percent). Accordingly, the provisions for the payment of interest or a redemption amount in excess of the aggregate principal amount of the covered bonds may not be enforceable if the provision provides for the payment of "interest" in excess of an effective annual rate of interest of 60 percent.

Implementation of the Basel III risk-weighted asset framework may result in changes to the risk-weighting of the covered bonds

In order to promote a more resilient banking sector and strengthen global capital standards, the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision proposed significant enhancements and capital reforms to the current framework, referred to as Basel II. The revised framework, referred to as Basel III, was effective January 1, 2013 and provides lengthy periods for transitioning to numerous new requirements. The most significant aspects of the reforms are measures to improve the quality of capital and increase capital requirements for the global financial system. The Bank cannot predict the precise effects of the potential changes that might result from implementation of the Basel III framework on both its own financial performance or the impact on the pricing of the covered bonds.

Implementation of the Basel framework and any changes as described above may have an impact on the capital requirements in respect of ownership of the covered bonds and/or on incentives to hold the covered bonds for investors that are subject to requirements that follow the relevant framework and, as a result, may affect the liquidity and/or value of the covered bonds.

In general, investors should consult their own advisers as to the regulatory capital requirements in respect of the covered bonds and as to the consequences of and effect on them of any changes to the Basel framework (including the changes described above) and the relevant implementing measures. No predictions can be made as to the precise effects of such matters on any investor or otherwise.

The Bank will act in its own interest in connection with the Program, and such actions may not be in the best interests of, and may be detrimental to, the holders of covered bonds

The Bank has a number of roles pursuant to the Program including, but not limited to, Seller, Servicer, Cash Manager, Swap Provider, GDA Provider, Intercompany Loan Provider, Calculation Agent, and Limited Partner. In respect of the Program, the Bank will act in its own interest subject to compliance with the Transaction Documents. Such actions by the Bank may not be in the best interests of, and may be detrimental to, the holders of the covered bonds.

Subject to compliance with the Transaction Documents, the Bank may act in its own interest without incurring any liability to the holders of any Series or Tranche of covered bonds.

Legal investment considerations may restrict certain investments

The investment activities of certain investors are subject to legal investment laws and regulations, or review or regulation by certain authorities. Each potential investor should consult its legal advisers to determine whether and to what extent: (i) covered bonds are legal investments for it; (ii) covered bonds can be used as collateral for various types of borrowing; and (iii) other restrictions apply to its purchase or pledge of any covered bonds. Financial institutions should consult their legal advisers or the appropriate regulators to determine the appropriate treatment of covered bonds under any applicable risk-based capital or similar rules.

Interest of Dealers

Certain of the Dealers and their affiliates have engaged, and may in the future engage, in investment banking and/or commercial banking transactions with, and may perform services for, the Bank and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business.

The Bank may sell the covered bonds to one or more Dealers, which may include Barclays Capital Inc., Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. (for distributions in the U.S.) or Scotia Capital Inc. (for distributions in Canada). The terms of the Program were negotiated at arm's length with the Bank. Scotia Capital (USA) Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of Scotia Capital Inc., is a registered broker and dealer in securities with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission under the Exchange Act. Scotia Capital Inc. is a Canadian investment dealer (not registered in the U.S.). In addition to the proceeds from any offering of the covered bonds under the Program being applied, directly or indirectly for the benefit of Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. and Scotia Capital Inc. in their capacity as wholly-owned indirect subsidiaries of the Bank, they will also receive a portion of any fees and commissions payable in connection with any such offering of covered bonds in their capacity as Dealers if they act as such.

Each of Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. and Scotia Capital Inc. is an affiliate of the Bank and, as such, has a "conflict of interest" in this offering within the meaning of Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. ("**FINRA**") Rule 5121. In addition, the Bank will receive the gross proceeds from the initial public offering of the covered bonds, thus creating an additional conflict of interest within the meaning of Rule 5121. Consequently, the offering is being conducted in compliance with the provisions of Rule 5121. Neither Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. nor Scotia Capital Inc. is permitted to sell the covered bonds in this offering to an account over which it exercises discretionary authority without the prior specific written approval of the account holder.

Each of Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. and Scotia Capital Inc. and their affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. Each of Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. and Scotia Capital Inc. and their affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various financial advisory and investment banking services for the Bank, for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, each of Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. and Scotia Capital Inc. and their affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers, and such investment and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of the Bank. Scotia Capital (USA) Inc. and its affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

U.S. Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act withholding may apply to payments in respect of the covered bonds

Sections 1471 through 1474 of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended ("**FATCA**") impose a new reporting regime and, potentially, a 30% withholding tax with respect to (i) certain payments from sources within the United States, (ii) "foreign passthru payments" made to certain non-U.S. financial institutions that do not comply with this new reporting regime, and (iii) payments to certain investors that do not provide identification information with respect to interests issued by a participating non-U.S. financial institution. Whilst the covered bonds are held within the clearing systems, in all but the most remote circumstances, it is not expected that FATCA will affect the amount of any payment received by the clearing systems in respect of such covered bonds. However, FATCA may affect payments made to custodians or intermediaries in the subsequent payment chain leading to the ultimate investor if any such custodian or intermediary generally is unable to receive payments free of FATCA withholding. It also may affect payment to any ultimate investor that is a financial institution that is not entitled to receive payments free of withholding under FATCA, or an ultimate investor that fails to provide its broker (or other custodian or intermediary from which it receives payment) with any information, forms, other documentation or consents that may be necessary for the payments to be made free of FATCA withholding. Investors should choose the custodians or intermediaries with care (to ensure each is compliant with FATCA or other laws or agreements related to FATCA) and provide each custodian or intermediary with any information, forms, other documentation or consents that may be necessary for such custodian or intermediary to make a payment free of FATCA withholding. The Bank's obligations under the covered bonds are discharged once it has paid the clearing systems and the Bank has therefore no responsibility for any amount thereafter transmitted through the clearing systems and custodians or intermediaries. Prospective investors should refer to the section "*Taxation – Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act*".

Covered bonds that bear interest at rates based on LIBOR and/or EURIBOR may be adversely affected by a change in the Bank's inter-bank lending rate reporting practices or the method in which LIBOR and/or EURIBOR is determined

Regulators and law enforcement agencies from a number of governments have been conducting investigations relating to the calculation of the London inter-bank lending rate ("**LIBOR**") across a range of maturities and currencies, and certain financial institutions that are member banks surveyed by the British Bankers' Association (the "**BBA**") in setting daily LIBOR have entered into agreements with the U.S. Department of Justice, the U.S. Commodity Futures Trading Commission and/or the Financial Services Authority in order to resolve the investigations. In addition, in September 2012, the U.K. government published the results of its review of LIBOR, which is referred to as the "Wheatley Review." The Wheatley Review made a number of recommendations for changes with respect to LIBOR, including the introduction of statutory regulation of LIBOR, the transfer of responsibility for LIBOR from the BBA to an independent administrator, changes to the method of compilation of lending rates, new regulatory oversight and enforcement mechanisms for rate-setting and the corroboration of LIBOR, as far as possible, by transactional data. Based on the Wheatley Review, on March 25, 2013, final rules for the regulation and supervision of LIBOR by the Financial Conduct Authority (the "**FCA**") were published (the "**FCA Rules**"). In particular, the FCA Rules include requirements that (1) an independent LIBOR administrator monitor and survey LIBOR submissions to identify breaches of practice standards and/or potentially manipulative behavior, and (2) firms submitting data to LIBOR establish and maintain a clear conflicts of interest policy and appropriate systems and controls. The FCA Rules took effect on April 2, 2013. It is anticipated that a reform of EURIBOR will be implemented also, which may (but will not necessarily) be in a similar fashion. Accordingly, EURIBOR calculation and publication could be altered, suspended or discontinued.

It is not possible to predict the effect of changes in the methods pursuant to which the LIBOR and/or EURIBOR rates are determined, any other reforms to LIBOR and/or EURIBOR that will be enacted in the U.K. and elsewhere, and any actions taken by any new administrator of LIBOR and/or EURIBOR that may be appointed, each of which may adversely affect the trading market for LIBOR and/or EURIBOR-based securities, including any covered bonds that bear interest at rates based on LIBOR and/or EURIBOR. Any such changes or reforms in the method pursuant to which the LIBOR and/or EURIBOR rates are determined or actions taken by any new administrator of LIBOR and/or EURIBOR may result in a sudden or prolonged increase or decrease in the reported LIBOR and/or EURIBOR rates. If that were to occur and to the extent that the value of any covered bonds that bear interest at rates based on LIBOR and/or EURIBOR is affected by reported LIBOR and/or EURIBOR rates, the amount of interest payable under and the value of such covered bonds may be affected.

Further, uncertainty as to the extent and manner in which the Wheatley Review recommendations with respect to LIBOR will continue to be adopted and the timing of such changes may adversely affect the current trading market for LIBOR-based securities and the value of any covered bonds that bear interest at rates based on LIBOR.

United States civil liabilities may not be enforceable against the Bank or the Guarantor

The Bank is incorporated under the federal laws of Canada under the Bank Act and the Guarantor is an Ontario limited partnership. Substantially all of our directors and executive officers, and all or a substantial portion of our assets and the assets of such persons are located outside the United States. As a result, it may be difficult for you to effect service of process within the United States upon such persons, or to realize upon judgments rendered against us or such persons by the courts of the United States predicated upon, among other things, the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the United States. In addition, it may be difficult for you to enforce, in original actions brought in courts in jurisdictions located outside the United States, among other things, civil liabilities predicated upon such securities laws. Based on the foregoing, it may not be possible for U.S. investors to enforce against us any judgments obtained in U.S. courts in civil and commercial matters, including judgments under the U.S. federal securities laws.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement, the net proceeds from the sale of the covered bonds will be added to the Bank's general funds and will be used for general banking purposes.

CONSOLIDATED EARNINGS RATIOS

The following table provides the Bank's consolidated ratios of earnings to fixed charges, calculated in accordance with Canadian GAAP for each of the years in the two year period ended October 31, 2010 and in accordance with IFRS for the six month period ended April 30, 2014 and each of the years in the three year period ended October 31, 2013.

	Six Months Ended April 30,	Years Ended October 31				
	2014(1)	**2013(1)(2)**	**2012(1)(2)**	**2011(1)**	**2010(3)**	**2009(3)**
Consolidated Ratios of Earnings to Fixed Charges						
Excluding interest on deposits	8.14	7.42	7.43	5.73	4.70	3.00
Including interest on deposits	2.17	2.01	2.03	1.91	1.70	1.44
Consolidated Ratios of Earnings to Combined Fixed Charges and Preferred Dividends						
Excluding interest on deposits	6.80	6.03	6.02	4.76	3.99	2.72
Including interest on deposits	2.10	1.94	1.96	1.84	1.64	1.41

(1) Calculated in accordance with IFRS.

(2) Prior period amounts are retrospectively adjusted to reflect the adoption of new IFRS standards (IFRS 10 and IAS 19).

(3) Calculated in accordance with Canadian GAAP.

For purposes of computing these ratios:

- earnings represent income from continuing operations plus income taxes and fixed charges (excluding capitalized interest);
- fixed charges, excluding interest on deposits, represent interest (including capitalized interest), estimated interest within rent, and amortization of debt issuance costs; and
- fixed charges, including interest on deposits, represent all interest.

54

CONSOLIDATED CAPITALIZATION OF THE BANK

The following table sets forth the consolidated capitalization of the Bank as at April 30, 2014:

	As at April 30, 2014 (In millions of Canadian Dollars)
Subordinated debentures	4,864
Equity	
Common equity	
Common shares	14,999
Retained earnings	26,849
Accumulated other comprehensive income	943
Other reserves	195
Total common equity	42,986
Preferred shares	3,234
Total equity attributable to equity holders of the Bank	46,220
Non-controlling interests	
Non-controlling interests in subsidiaries	1,237
Total equity	47,457
Total capitalization	**52,321**

THE BANK OF NOVA SCOTIA

The Bank is a Canadian chartered bank under the Bank Act. The Bank Act is the charter of the Bank and governs its operations.

The Bank is a leading multinational financial services provider and Canada's most international bank. With more than 86,000 employees, the Bank and its affiliates serve some 21 million customers in more than 55 countries around the world. The Bank offers a broad range of products and services including personal, commercial, corporate and investment banking.

A list of the principal subsidiaries directly or indirectly owned or controlled by the Bank as at October 31, 2013 is incorporated by reference from the Bank's Annual Report on Form 40-F for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2013.

Certain Matters Relating to the Bank's Board of Directors

Under the Bank Act, the Bank's board of directors must have at least seven members and the Bank's board of directors may establish by by-law a minimum and maximum number of directors. Under the Bank's by-laws, the minimum number of directors is the minimum required by the Bank Act and the maximum number of directors is 35. The Bank's by-laws also provide that the number of directors to be elected at any annual meeting of shareholders of the Bank will be fixed by the board of directors before the meeting. The Bank currently has 14 directors. The Bank Act requires that no more than two-thirds of the directors may be affiliated with the Bank, and no more than 15% of the directors may be employees of the Bank or a subsidiary of the Bank, except that up to four employees may be directors if they constitute not more than 50% of the directors. Under the Bank Act, a majority of the directors of the Bank must be resident Canadians and, except in limited circumstances, directors may not transact business at a meeting of directors at which a majority of the directors present are not resident Canadians. Subject to the Bank Act, a quorum for the transaction of business at any meeting of the board of directors consists of 5 directors. The Bank Act also requires the directors of a bank to appoint from their members a chief executive officer who must ordinarily be resident in Canada.

Under the Bank Act, any director or the entire board of directors may be removed, with or without cause, with the approval of a majority of the votes cast at a special meeting of shareholders. A vacancy created by such removal may be filled at the meeting or by a quorum of the directors. Directors who were elected on or before April 1, 2011 (existing directors) must retire at the earlier of 10 years from April 1, 2011 or age 70, provided that if an existing director has not served a 10 year term at the time of achieving age 70, their term will be extended for additional years in order to complete a minimum 10 year term. For directors elected after April 1, 2011, retirement is the earlier of age 70 or a 15 year term, provided that if a director has not served a 10 year term at the time of achieving age 70, their term will be extended for additional years in order to complete a minimum 10 year term.

Conflicts of Interest

The Bank Act contains detailed provisions with regard to a director's power to vote on a material contract or material transaction in which the director is interested. These provisions include procedures for: disclosure of the conflict of interest and the timing for such disclosure; the presence of directors at board meetings where the contract or transaction giving rise to the conflict of interest is being considered, and voting with respect to the contract or transaction giving rise to the conflict of interest; and other provisions for dealing with such conflicts of interest. The Bank Act also contains detailed provisions regarding transactions with persons who are related parties of the Bank, including directors of the Bank. See "*—Borrowing Powers*."

Compensation

The by-laws of the Bank have provisions with regard to remuneration of directors. The board of directors may, from time to time, by resolution determine the remuneration that may be paid, but such remuneration may not exceed in each year an aggregate cap set out in the by-laws, and individually may be in such amounts as the board may determine by resolution. The directors may also be paid their reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred in attending meetings of the board, shareholders or committees of the board.

Directors are required to hold common shares and/or directors' deferred stock units ("**DDSU**") with a value of not less than $500,000. The redemption value of a DDSU is equal to the market value of a common share at the time of redemption. The value of DDSUs is tied to the future value of the common shares. However, DDSUs do not entitle the holder to voting or other shareholder rights.

Borrowing Powers

The directors of the Bank may, without authorization of the shareholders, authorize the Bank to borrow money. The Bank Act, however, prohibits the Bank from entering into transactions with persons who are deemed to be related parties of the Bank, subject to certain exceptions. Related party transactions may include loans made on the credit of the Bank.

SCOTIABANK COVERED BOND GUARANTOR LIMITED PARTNERSHIP

The Guarantor is an Ontario limited partnership whose only business is providing services to the Bank in respect of the Program by (i) entering into the Intercompany Loan Agreement and accepting Capital Contributions from the partners; (ii) using the proceeds from the Intercompany Loan and Capital Contributions (a) to purchase the Initial Portfolio consisting of Loans and their Related Security from the Seller in accordance with the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and Loans and their Related Security pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement; and/or (b) to invest in Substitute Assets in an amount not exceeding the prescribed limit in the CMHC Guide; and/or (c) subject to complying with the Asset Coverage Test and the CMHC Guide, from time to time, to make Capital Distributions to the Limited Partner; and/or (d) to make deposits of the proceeds in the Guarantor Accounts (including, without limitation, to fund the Reserve Fund and the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Required Amount, in each case up to an amount not exceeding the prescribed limit); (iii) arranging for the servicing of the Portfolio by the Servicer; (iv) entering into the Trust Deed, giving the Covered Bond Guarantee and entering into the Security Agreement; (v) entering into the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party; and (vi) performing its obligations under any of the Transaction Documents and in respect thereof and doing all things incidental or ancillary thereto.

The Guarantor has not, since its formation, engaged in, and will not, while there are covered bonds outstanding, engage in any material activities other than activities relating to the business of the Guarantor described above and/or incidental or ancillary thereto. The Guarantor and its general partners are not required by applicable Canadian law (including the *Limited Partnership Act* (Ontario)) to publish any financial statements, and will not be required by the SEC to publish any financial statements in its annual reports on Form 10-K. Instead the Guarantor will file an annual report in accordance with General Instruction J of Form 10-K and will include in the Form 10-K information required by the following provisions of Regulation AB: Item 1112(b), Item 1114(b)(2), Item 1115(b), Item 1117, Item 1119, Item 1122 and Item 1123. The Guarantor has no employees.

The current partners (the “**Partners**”) of the Guarantor are Scotiabank Covered Bond GP Inc., as the managing general partner (the “**Managing GP**”); 8429057 Canada Inc., as the liquidation general partner (the “**Liquidation GP**”); and the Bank, as the sole limited partner. The Bank holds substantially all of the capital in the Guarantor with the Managing GP and the Liquidation GP each holding a nominal interest in the Guarantor. Pursuant to the terms of the Limited Partnership Act (Ontario), the liability of a limited partner for the liabilities, debts and obligations of the Guarantor is limited to the amount contributed by it or agreed to be contributed by it to the Guarantor, unless, in addition to exercising rights and powers as a limited partner, such limited partner takes part in control of the business of the Guarantor and such limited partner will, subject to applicable law, otherwise have no liability in respect of the liabilities, debts and obligations of the partnership. Each of the general partners of the Guarantor will have unlimited liability for any obligation of the Guarantor unless the holder of such obligation agrees otherwise.

Each of the Partners has covenanted in the Guarantor Agreement that, except as provided in the Transaction Documents, it will not sell, transfer, convey, create or permit to arise any security interest on, create any beneficial interest in or otherwise dispose of its interest in the Guarantor without the prior written consent of the Guarantor and, while there are covered bonds outstanding, the Bond Trustee.

Ownership Structure of the Guarantor

Ownership Structure of the Managing GP

The Managing GP is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Bank. The directors and officers of the Managing GP are officers and employees of the Bank.

Ownership Structure of the Liquidation GP

91 percent of the issued and outstanding shares in the capital of the Liquidation GP are held by the Corporate Services Provider, as trustee of the Scotiabank Covered Bond LGP Trust (the "**LGP Trust**") and 9 percent of the issued and outstanding shares in the capital of the Liquidation GP are held by the Bank. A majority of the directors of the Liquidation GP are appointed by the Corporate Services Provider, as trustee of the LGP Trust, and are independent of the Bank. The Bank is entitled to have one nominee on the board of the Liquidation GP who is an officer or employee of the Bank.

The beneficiary of the LGP Trust is one or more charities registered under the ITA.

Directors of the Partners of the Guarantor

The following table sets out the directors of the Managing GP and the Liquidation GP (and their respective business addresses and occupations).

Directors of the Managing GP

Name	Business Address	Business Occupation
David Tersigni	c/o The Bank of Nova Scotia 40 King Street West, 64th Floor Toronto, Ontario M5H 1H1	Director, President and Secretary of Managing GP

The director of the Managing GP is an officer and/or employee of the Bank.

Directors of the Liquidation GP

Name	Business Address	Business Occupation
Stuart Swartz	Computershare Trust Company of Canada 100 University Avenue Toronto, Ontario M5J 2Y1	Chairman of the Board of Directors, President and Secretary of Liquidation GP
Charles Eric Gauthier	Computershare Trust Company of Canada 100 University Avenue Toronto, Ontario M5J 2Y1	Vice-Chairman of the Board of Directors, Vice-President and Assistant Secretary of Liquidation GP

Governance of the Guarantor

Pursuant to the terms of the Guarantor Agreement, the Managing GP will manage the business and affairs of the Guarantor, act on behalf of the Guarantor, make decisions regarding the business of the Guarantor and have the authority to bind the Guarantor in respect of any such decision. The Managing GP will be required to exercise its powers and discharge its duties honestly, in good faith and in the best interests of the Guarantor, and to exercise the care, diligence and skill of a reasonably prudent person in comparable circumstances. The authority and power vested in the Managing GP to manage the business and affairs of the Guarantor includes all authority necessary or incidental to carry out the objects, purposes and business of the Guarantor, including the ability to engage agents to assist the Managing GP to carry out its management obligations and administrative functions in respect of the Guarantor and its business.

Except in certain limited circumstances (described below under Withdrawal or Removal of the General Partners), the Liquidation GP will not generally take part in managing the affairs and business of the Guarantor. However, the Liquidation GP's consent will be required for a voluntary wind up or dissolution of the Guarantor.

Each of the Partners has agreed that it will not, for so long as there are covered bonds outstanding, terminate or purport to terminate the Guarantor or institute any winding-up, administration, insolvency or other similar proceedings against the Guarantor. Furthermore, the Partners have agreed, among other things, except as specifically otherwise provided in the Transaction Documents, not to demand or receive payment of any amounts payable by the Guarantor (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) or the Bond Trustee unless all amounts then due and payable by the Guarantor to all other creditors ranking higher in the relevant Priorities of Payment have been paid in full.

Potential Conflict of Interest

All of the directors of the Managing GP are officers or employees of the Bank. As at the date of this Prospectus, there are no potential conflicts of interest between the duties owed to the Guarantor by any of the directors of the Managing GP or by any of the directors of the Liquidation GP and their private interests and other duties.

Reimbursement of General Partners

The Guarantor will be obliged to reimburse the Managing GP and Liquidation GP for all out-of-pocket costs and expenses incurred on behalf of the Guarantor by the Managing GP or Liquidation GP in the performance of their duties under the Guarantor Agreement.

Liability of the Limited Partners of the Guarantor

The Guarantor is required to operate in a manner so as to ensure, to the greatest extent possible, the limited liability of the limited partner(s). Limited partner(s) may lose their limited liability in certain circumstances. If limited liability is lost by reason of the negligence of the Managing GP or Liquidation GP, as the case may be, in performing its duties and obligations under the Guarantor Agreement, in each case, as determined by a court of competent jurisdiction in a final non-appealable decision, the Managing GP or the Liquidation GP, as applicable, shall indemnify the limited partner(s) against all claims arising from assertions that their respective liabilities are not limited as intended by the Guarantor Agreement. However, since the Managing

GP and the Liquidation GP have no significant assets or financial resources, any indemnity from them may have nominal value.

Withdrawal or Removal of the General Partners

The Managing GP or Liquidation GP may resign as managing general partner or liquidation general partner, as the case may be, on not less than 180 days' prior written notice to the Partners and the Bond Trustee, provided that neither the Managing GP nor Liquidation GP may resign if the effect would be to dissolve the Guarantor. In the event that the Liquidation GP resigns as liquidation general partner, the Managing GP will use its best commercially reasonable efforts to, without delay, find a replacement liquidation general partner acceptable to the limited partner(s) of the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee and which satisfies the requirements of the CMHC Guide, to accept the role of liquidation general partner formerly held by the Liquidation GP and acquire a general partner interest in the Guarantor.

In the event the Managing GP resigns, an Issuer Event of Default occurs and is continuing, or a winding-up or insolvency of the Managing GP occurs, the Managing GP will forthwith, or in the case of resignation at the expiry of the notice period described above, cease to be the managing general partner of the Guarantor and the Liquidation GP will automatically assume the role and responsibilities (but not the interest in the Guarantor) of the Managing GP and continue the business of the Guarantor as Managing GP.

If at any time the Liquidation GP becomes the Managing GP pursuant to the foregoing, it may appoint a replacement Managing GP (other than the Bank or any of its affiliates) acceptable to the limited partner(s) of the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee and which satisfies the requirements of the CMHC Guide to act as Managing GP and acquire a general partner interest in the Guarantor. Following the appointment of the replacement Managing GP pursuant to the foregoing, the replacement Managing GP will have the powers, duties and responsibilities of the Managing GP of the Guarantor and the Liquidation GP will resume its role, as it was, prior to assuming the role and responsibility of the Managing GP.

DESCRIPTION OF THE COVERED BONDS

General

The Bank may issue, and the Guarantor may guarantee, as many distinct Series of the covered bonds under the Trust Deed as the Bank wishes. The provisions of the Trust Deed allow the Bank not only to issue covered bonds with terms different from those previously issued, but also to “re-open” a previous issue of a Series of covered bonds and issue additional covered bonds of that Series. The Bank may issue covered bonds in amounts that exceed the total amount specified on the cover of the prospectus supplement at any time without the consent of holders of covered bonds and without notifying them.

This section summarizes the material terms of the covered bonds that are common to all Series subject to any modifications contained in an applicable prospectus supplement. As you read this section, please remember that specific terms of your covered bonds as described in the applicable prospectus supplement will supplement and, if applicable, may modify or replace the general terms described in this section. If there are any differences between the information in the applicable prospectus supplement and this prospectus, the information in the applicable prospectus supplement will control. Because this section is a summary of the material terms and provisions of the covered bonds, it does not describe every aspect of the covered bonds. This description is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to all the provisions of the Trust Deed and the other Transaction Documents, including definitions of certain terms used in the Trust Deed and other Transaction Documents. In this description, the meaning of only some of the more important terms that are applicable to U.S. Registered Covered Bonds is described. Reference should be made to the Trust Deed and the other Transaction Documents for a more complete description of what is described in summary form in this prospectus.

The applicable prospectus supplement relating to each Series or Tranche of U.S. Registered Covered Bonds will be attached to the front of this prospectus.

Credit Structure

The covered bonds will constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the Bank Act. However the covered bonds will not be insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (Canada), and will constitute legal, valid and binding direct, unconditional, unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank and rank *pari passu* with all deposit liabilities of the Bank without any preference among themselves and at least *pari passu* with all other unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank, present and future, except as prescribed by law.

The Guarantor has no obligation to pay the Guaranteed Amounts under the Covered Bond Guarantee until the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default, service by the Bond Trustee on the Bank of an Issuer Acceleration Notice and on the Guarantor of a Notice to Pay or, if earlier, following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and service by the Bond Trustee of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Bank and the Guarantor. The Bank will not be relying on payments by the Guarantor with respect to advances under the Intercompany Loan Agreement or receipt of Revenue Receipts or Principal Receipts from the Portfolio in order to pay interest or repay principal under the covered bonds. The recourse of the covered bondholders to the

Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be limited to the Portfolio and will be subject to the applicable Priorities of Payments.

The Program includes certain features relating to the timely, and, as applicable, ultimate payments of principal and interest to covered bondholders:

- the Covered Bond Guarantee and Portfolio provide credit support to the covered bondholders;
- the Pre-Maturity Test tests the liquidity of the Guarantor's assets with respect to principal due on the Final Maturity Date of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds;
- the Asset Coverage Test determines whether the asset coverage of the Guarantor's assets with respect to the covered bonds is maintained at a certain level;
- the Amortization Test tests the asset coverage of the Guarantor's assets in respect of the covered bonds following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor;
- the Valuation Calculation monitors the Program's exposure to market risk;
- a Reserve Fund (if one or more Rating Agencies downgrades the unsecured, unsubordinated and unguaranteed debt obligations or issuer default rating of the Bank below the Reserve Fund Required Amount Ratings) will be established by the Guarantor (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) in the GDA Account to reserve Available Revenue Receipts and Available Principal Receipts up to a specified amount; and
- under the terms of the Guaranteed Deposit Account Contract, the GDA Provider has agreed to pay a variable rate of interest on all amounts held by the Guarantor in the GDA Account at a floor of 0.10 percent below 1-month CDOR that appears on the Reuters Screen as of 10:00 a.m. (Toronto time) on the date of determination, as reported by the GDA Provider (and if such screen is not available, any successor or similar service as may be selected by the GDA Provider) or such greater amount as the Guarantor and the GDA Provider may agree from time to time.

Covered Bond Guarantee

The Covered Bond Guarantee provided by the Guarantor under the Trust Deed guarantees payment of Guaranteed Amounts when they become Due for Payment in connection with all covered bonds issued under the Program following the service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor. The Covered Bond Guarantee will not guarantee any amount becoming payable on the covered bonds for any other reason, including any accelerated payment pursuant to Condition 9 (*Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement*) following service of a Notice to Pay on the Bank. Under this circumstance (and until a Guarantor Event of Default occurs and a Guarantor Acceleration Notice is served), the Guarantor's obligations will only be to pay the Guaranteed Amounts as they fall Due for Payment. However, should any payments made by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee be subject to any withholding or deduction on account of taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges of whatever nature imposed or levied by or on behalf of Canada or any province or territory thereof or by any authority therein or thereof having the power to tax, the Guarantor will not be obliged to pay any additional amount as a consequence. See "*Summary of the Principal Documents*."

Pre-Maturity Test

Certain Series of covered bonds may be scheduled to be redeemed in full on their respective Final Maturity Dates without any provision for scheduled redemption other than on the Final Maturity Date (the "**Hard Bullet Covered Bonds**"). The applicable prospectus supplement will identify whether any Series of covered bonds is a Series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds. The Pre-Maturity Test is intended to test the liquidity of the Guarantor's assets with respect to the Hard Bullet Covered Bonds when the Bank's ratings fall below a certain level. On each Toronto Business Day that falls within 12 months prior to the Final Maturity Date of any Series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds, (each, a "**Pre-Maturity Test Date**") prior to the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default or the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default, the Guarantor or the Cash Manager on its behalf will determine if the Pre-Maturity Test has been breached, and if so, it will immediately notify the Seller and the Bond Trustee. The Cash Manager and the Guarantor are required to undertake certain actions upon the failure or breach of the Pre-Maturity Test by the Bank, including the sale of Selected Loans. See "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Guarantor Agreement—Sales of Selected Loans following a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test*."

Asset Coverage Test

An Asset Coverage Test is conducted on the Portfolio on the last day of each Calculation Period (the "**Calculation Date**"). The Asset Coverage Test determines whether the assets and cashflows of the Guarantor satisfy the required overcollateralization which is intended to ensure that the Guarantor meets its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee following the occurrence of the Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event. If the Asset Coverage Test is not met on two consecutive Calculation Dates, an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice will be served to the Guarantor and if not revoked (in accordance with the terms of the Transaction Documents) on or before the Guarantor Payment Date immediately following the next Calculation Date after service of such Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice, will constitute an Issuer Event of Default and entitle the Bond Trustee to serve a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor.

The Bank will use all reasonable efforts to ensure that the Guarantor is in compliance with the Asset Coverage Test which should reduce the risk of there ever being a breach of the Asset Coverage Test although there is no assurance of this result and the sale of Loans and their Related Security by the Seller to the Guarantor, advances under the Intercompany Loan or additional Capital Contributions by the Limited Partner may be required to avoid or, before or after delivery of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice, remedy a breach of the Asset Coverage Test. There is no specific recourse available to the Guarantor in respect of any failure by the Bank to make a Capital Contribution in any circumstances, including following receipt of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice. See "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Guarantor Agreement—Asset Coverage Test*."

Amortization Test

The Amortization Test is conducted on the Portfolio on each Calculation Date following an Issuer Event of Default that is continuing. The Amortization Test has been structured to determine whether the assets of the Guarantor, including the Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio, have fallen below the threshold required to ensure that the assets of the Guarantor are sufficient to meet its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee following service of a Notice to Pay. A breach of the Amortization Test will constitute a Guarantor Event of Default and will entitle the Bond Trustee to serve a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor. See "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Guarantor Agreement—Amortization Test*."

Valuation Calculation

The Guarantor is required to perform the Valuation Calculation to monitor exposure to the volatility to interest rate and currency exchange rates by measuring the present value of the Portfolio relative to the market value of the obligations guaranteed under the Covered Bond Guarantee. However, there is no obligation on the part of the Bank or the Guarantor to take any action in respect of the Valuation Calculation to the extent it shows the market value of the Portfolio is less than the market value of the obligations guaranteed under the Covered Bond Guarantee. See "*Summary of the Principal Documents—Guarantor Agreement—Valuation Calculation*."

Reserve Fund

If at any time prior to the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default, the Bank's ratings fall below the Reserve Fund Required Amount Ratings, the Guarantor will be required to credit Available Revenue Receipts and Available Principal Receipts to the Reserve Fund up to an amount equal to the Reserve Fund Required Amount. The Reserve Fund Required Amount will be funded from Available Revenue Receipts and Available Principal Receipts, after the Guarantor has paid all of its obligations in respect of items ranking higher than the Reserve Ledger in the applicable Priorities of Payments on each Guarantor Payment Date and may in certain circumstances be funded through an advance under the Intercompany Loan or a Capital Contribution made in cash (a "**Cash Capital Contribution**"). Following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default, service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice and service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor, amounts standing to the credit of the Reserve Fund will be added to certain other income of the Guarantor in calculating Available Revenue Receipts.

Terms and Conditions

The covered bonds of each Series issued pursuant to this prospectus will be in fully registered form, without interest coupons.

A global covered bond will be deposited with a custodian for, and registered in the name of DTC, or its nominee. Persons holding beneficial interests in global covered bonds will be entitled or required, as the case may be, under the circumstances described below, to receive physical delivery of definitive covered bonds in registered form representing covered bonds issued under this prospectus (the "**Definitive Covered Bonds**").

Interests in a global covered bond will be exchangeable (free of charge), in whole but not in part, for Definitive Covered Bonds without interest coupons only upon the occurrence of an Exchange Event. For these purposes, "**Exchange Event**" means that either DTC has notified the Bank that it is unwilling, or unable, to continue to act as depository for the covered bonds and no alternative clearing system is available or DTC has ceased to constitute a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act. The Bank will promptly give notice to holders of covered bonds if an Exchange Event occurs by delivery of the notice to DTC for communication to the holders of the covered bonds. Notice will be deemed to have been given to the holders of the covered bonds on the day on which the notice is given to DTC. In the event of the occurrence of an Exchange Event, DTC (acting on the instructions of any holder of an interest in such global covered bond) may give notice to the Registrar requesting exchange and, in the event of the occurrence of an Exchange Event as described above, the Bank may also give notice to the Registrar requesting exchange. Any such exchange will occur not later than 10 days after the date of receipt of the first relevant notice by the Registrar.

No holder of covered bonds will be entitled to proceed directly against the Bank unless the Bond Trustee, having become bound so to proceed, fails to do so within a reasonable period of time and the failure is continuing, *provided that* the right of any holder of a covered bond to receive payment of principal and interest on or after the due date or to bring suit for enforcement of any such payment after the due date may not be impaired or affected without the holder's consent.

The terms and conditions applicable to covered bonds will be endorsed on such covered bonds and will consist of the terms and conditions attached as Part I of Schedule 1 to the Trust Deed and the provisions of the applicable prospectus supplement that supplement, amend and/or replace such terms and conditions. The "*Terms and Conditions of the Covered Bonds*" set forth below, are the terms and conditions that will be applicable to U.S. Registered Covered Bonds, which may be supplemented, amended or replaced by the terms in the applicable prospectus supplement applicable to the covered bonds. Certain provisions with respect to covered bonds in bearer form and related defined terms contained in the Terms and Conditions attached as Part I of Schedule I to the Trust Deed are not applicable to U.S. Registered Covered Bonds and have therefore been intentionally omitted in this prospectus.

The "*Terms and Conditions of the Covered Bonds*" set forth below are organized as follows:

	Condition	**Page**
1	Form, Denomination and Title	72
2.	Transfers of Registered Covered Bonds	73
3.	Status of the Covered Bonds and the Covered Bond Guarantee	75
4.	Interest	75
5.	Payments	93
6.	Redemption and Purchase	95
7.	Taxation	100
8.	Prescription	101
9.	Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement	102
10.	Replacement of Covered Bonds	107
11.	Principal Paying Agent, Paying Agents, Registrar, Transfer Agent and Exchange Agent	107
12.	[Reserved]	108
13.	Notices	108
14.	Meetings of Covered Bondholders, Modification, Waiver and Substitution	108
15.	Indemnification of the Bond Trustee. Contracting with the Bank and/or the Guarantor	111
16.	Further Issues	112
17.	Rating Agency Condition	112
18.	Governing Law	113

The following is a general overview of key provisions of the Terms and Conditions applicable to the covered bonds:

Condition 3 (*Status of the Covered Bonds and the Covered Bond Guarantee*) provides that the covered bonds will constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the Bank Act, but will not be insured under the *Canada Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (Canada). The covered bonds will be direct obligations of the Bank, ranking equally with the deposit liabilities of the Bank and at least equally with all unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank, except as prescribed by law.

Condition 3 (*Status of the Covered Bonds and the Covered Bond Guarantee*) also provides the terms of the Covered Bond Guarantee and the conditions precedent to the obligation of the Guarantor to make payment of Guaranteed Amounts. The obligations of the Guarantor, following the occurrence of a Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event, are direct and unconditional, secured by the pledge of certain assets of the Guarantor which includes the Portfolio pursuant to the terms of the Security Agreement. A "**Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event**" will occur on the earlier of (i) an Issuer Event of Default, together with service by the Bond Trustee of an Issuer Acceleration Notice on the Bank and a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor and (ii) a Guarantor Event of Default, together with service by the Bond Trustee of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Bank and the Guarantor.

Condition 4 (*Interest*) sets forth the terms of the interest rates that may apply to the covered bonds. The specific terms of interest payable on a covered bond that you purchase will be disclosed in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Condition 5 (*Payments*) provides that payments of principal, interest and any other amount in respect of the registered global covered bonds (other than the final installments of principal of a covered bond) will be made to the person shown on the Register as the registered holder of the registered global covered bonds. None of the Bank, any Paying Agent and the Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments or deliveries made on account of beneficial ownership interests in the registered global covered bonds or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests. Final installments of principal will be made against presentation and surrender of the global covered bond at the specified office of the Registrar or any of the Paying Agents.

Condition 6 (*Redemption and Purchase*) provides for redemption of the covered bonds on their maturity dates and for the early payment of covered bonds under certain conditions, including for taxation reasons, changes in law, illegality or as the result of the exercise of call option or put option features of covered bonds, if applicable, as specified in the related prospectus supplement.

Condition 7 (*Taxation*) provides that all payments by the Bank on the covered bonds will be paid free and clear of any taxes, duties, assessment, or charges of any kind imposed by Canada or any political subdivision of Canada or, if the covered bonds are issued by a branch of the Bank located outside Canada, by any taxing authority of the jurisdiction where the branch is located unless required by law. Except for certain conditions, if a tax or other levy is imposed, the Bank will pay additional amounts sufficient so that the holder will receive the same net amount that would have been received absent the tax or other duty, assessment or charge.

Condition 9 (*Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement*) sets forth the conditions that will constitute an Issuer Event of Default and a Guarantor Event of Default. Condition 9.3 (*Enforcement*) provides for the enforcement of the obligations of the Bank and the Guarantor. Under the Condition, the Bond Trustee is not required to take proceedings against the Bank or the Guarantor to seek enforcement of the provisions of the Trust Deed and the covered bonds unless it will be directed by an Extraordinary Resolution of the holders of the covered bonds of all Series or by holders of not less than 25 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of all Series then outstanding and it has been indemnified to its satisfaction.

Condition 14 (*Meetings of Covered Bondholders, Modification, Waiver and Substitution*) provides for convening meetings of holders of covered bonds to consider matters that affect one or more Series of covered bonds or all of the covered bonds under the Program, which may include among other things, a modification of the Terms and Conditions or the provisions of the Trust Deed. A resolution adopted at a meeting to effect such a modification will be binding on all holders of all covered bonds of any Series for which the meeting was convened. Condition 14 (*Meetings of Covered Bondholders, Modification, Waiver and Substitution*) also provides that the Bond Trustee, the Guarantor and the Bank may agree to certain modifications without the consent of holders of covered bonds of any Series, which may include among other things, any modification of the terms and conditions applying to covered bonds of one or more Series, which in the sole opinion of the Bond Trustee is not materially prejudicial to the interest of any of the covered bondholders of any Series or is of a formal, minor or technical nature or is to correct an error, or is to comply with mandatory provisions of law.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE COVERED BONDS

The following are the Terms and Conditions relevant to the covered bonds which will be incorporated by reference into each Global Covered Bond (as defined below) issued hereunder and each Definitive Covered Bond (as defined below) issued hereunder, in the latter case only if permitted by the relevant stock exchange or other relevant authority (if any) and agreed by the Bank and the relevant Dealer(s) at the time of issue but, if not so permitted and agreed, such Definitive Covered Bond will have endorsed thereon or attached thereto such Terms and Conditions. The applicable prospectus supplement in relation to any Tranche of covered bonds may specify other terms and conditions which will, to the extent so specified or to the extent inconsistent with the following Terms and Conditions, replace or modify the following Terms and Conditions for the purpose of such covered bonds. The applicable prospectus supplement (or the relevant provisions thereof) will be endorsed on, or attached to, each Global Covered Bond and Definitive Covered Bond. Reference should be made to "Form of the Covered Bonds" for a description of the content of the prospectus supplement which will specify which of such terms are to apply in relation to the relevant covered bonds.

This covered bond is one of a Series (as defined below) of covered bonds issued by the Bank constituted by a trust deed dated the Program Date made between the Bank, Scotiabank Covered Bond Guarantor Limited Partnership (the "**Guarantor**") and Computershare Trust Company of Canada, as Bond Trustee (and such trust deed as further modified and/or supplemented and/or restated from time to time, the "**Trust Deed**").

Save as provided for in Conditions 9 (*Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement*) and 14 (*Meetings of Covered Bondholders, Modification, Waiver and Substitution*), references herein to the covered bonds will be references to the covered bonds of this Series and will mean:

(a) any registered covered bond representing covered bonds (a "**Global Covered Bond**"); and
(b) any Definitive Covered Bonds (whether or not issued in exchange for a Global Covered Bond in registered form).

The covered bonds have the benefit of an agency agreement dated the Program Date, made between the Bank, the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee, The Bank of Nova Scotia, London Branch as principal paying agent (in such capacity, the "**Principal Paying Agent**," which expression will include any successor Principal Paying Agent) and The Bank of Nova Scotia - New York Agency as a paying agent (together with the Principal Paying Agent and any other paying agents, the "**Paying Agents**," which expression will include any additional or successor Paying Agents), The Bank of Nova Scotia, London Branch and The Bank of Nova Scotia - New York Agency as registrars (together, as the "**Registrar**," which expression will include any successor Registrar), The Bank of Nova Scotia, London Branch as calculation agent (the "**Calculation Agent**"), which expression shall include any successor to the Bank in its capacity as such and any substitute calculation agent appointed in accordance with the Agency Agreement either with respect to the Program or with respect to a particular Series), The Bank of Nova Scotia, London Branch and The Bank of Nova Scotia - New York Agency as transfer agents (together, as the "**Transfer Agent**," which expression will include any successor Transfer Agent), and The Bank of Nova Scotia - New York Agency as the exchange agent (the "**Exchange Agent**," which expression will include any successor Exchange Agent, and together with the

Paying Agents, Registrar, and Transfer Agent, the “**Agents**”) (such agency agreement as further amended and/or supplemented and/or restated from time to time, the “**Agency Agreement**”).

The prospectus supplement for the covered bonds supplements these Terms and Conditions (the “**Terms and Conditions**”) and may specify other terms and conditions which will, to the extent so specified or to the extent inconsistent with the Terms and Conditions, replace or modify the Terms and Conditions for the purposes of the covered bonds. References to the applicable prospectus supplement are to the prospectus supplement (or the relevant provisions thereof) endorsed on or attached to the covered bond.

The Bond Trustee acts for the benefit of the holders for the time being of the covered bonds (the “**covered bondholders**”), and for the holders of each other Series of covered bonds in accordance with the provisions of the Trust Deed.

As used herein, “**Tranche**” means covered bonds which are identical in all respects (including as to listing and admission to trading) and “**Series**” means a Tranche of covered bonds together with any further Tranche or Tranches of covered bonds which are (i) expressed to be consolidated and form a single Series, and (ii) identical in all respects (including as to listing and admission to trading) except for their respective Issue Dates, Interest Commencement Dates and/or Issue Prices.

The Guarantor has, in the Trust Deed, irrevocably and unconditionally guaranteed payment of Guaranteed Amounts in respect of the covered bonds as and when the same will become Due for Payment, but only after service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor following service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice on the Bank (after the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default) or service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor (after the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default) and subject to the applicable Priorities of Payments. The recourse of the covered bondholders to the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be limited to the Portfolio, certain contractual rights, and any Excess Proceeds and will be subject to the applicable Priorities of Payments.

The security for the obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party has been created in and pursuant to, and on the terms set out in, a security agreement dated the Program Date and made between the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee and certain other Secured Creditors (such security agreement as amended and/or supplemented and/or restated from time to time, the “**Security Agreement**”). The obligations of the Guarantor are secured against the Portfolio, certain contractual rights and any Excess Proceeds, and recourse against the Guarantor is limited to the Portfolio, certain contractual rights, and any Excess Proceeds and is subject to the applicable Priorities of Payments.

These Terms and Conditions include summaries of, and are subject to, the provisions of the Trust Deed, the Security Agreement and the Agency Agreement.

Copies of the Trust Deed, the Security Agreement, the Master Definitions and Construction Agreement (as defined below), the Agency Agreement and each of the other Transaction Documents (in redacted or other general form and subject to any exclusions pursuant to applicable law, including, without limitation, privacy law, and policies of the Bank relating to confidentiality and privacy matters) are available for inspection during normal business hours at the office for the time being of the Bond Trustee being at 100 University Avenue, 11th Floor, Toronto, Ontario M5J 2Y1, and at the specified office of each of the Paying Agents. Copies of the applicable prospectus supplement for all covered bonds of each Series (including in relation to unlisted covered bonds of any Series) are obtainable during normal business hours at the registered office of the Bank and at the specified office of each of the Paying Agents. The covered bondholders are deemed to have notice of, are bound by all the provisions of, and definitions contained in, the Trust Deed, the Security Agreement, the Master Definitions and Construction Agreement, the Agency Agreement, each of the other Transaction Documents and the applicable prospectus supplement which are applicable to them.

Except where the context otherwise requires, capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined in these Terms and Conditions (including the preceding paragraphs) will bear the meanings given to them in the applicable prospectus supplement and/or the master definitions and construction agreement made between the parties to the Transaction Documents on the Program Date (and as further amended and/or supplemented and/or restated from time to time, the "**Master Definitions and Construction Agreement**"), a copy of each of which may be obtained as described above.

1. Form, Denomination and Title

The covered bonds are in registered form as specified in the applicable prospectus supplement and, in the case of Definitive Covered Bonds, serially numbered, in the Specified Denomination(s). Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, covered bonds of one Specified Denomination may not be exchanged for covered bonds of another Specified Denomination.

The covered bonds in a Series may be Fixed Rate Covered Bonds, Floating Rate Covered Bonds, or a combination of any of the foregoing, depending upon the Interest Basis shown in the applicable prospectus supplement. Prior to issuing a Series of covered bonds (if such covered bonds are not Fixed Rate Covered Bonds or Floating Rate Covered Bonds), the Bank has obtained confirmation from each of the Rating Agencies that the covered bonds of all Series then outstanding will not be downgraded or withdrawn as a result of the issuance of this Series of covered bonds.

Other than as set out below, title to covered bonds in registered form ("**Registered Covered Bonds**") will pass upon registration of transfers in accordance with the provisions of the Agency Agreement. The Bank, the Guarantor, the Paying Agents and the Bond Trustee will (except as otherwise required by law) deem and treat the registered holder of any Registered Covered Bond as the absolute owner thereof (whether or not overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon or notice of any previous loss or theft thereof) for all purposes but, in the case of any Global Covered Bond, without prejudice to the provisions set out in the next succeeding paragraph.

For so long as any of the covered bonds are represented by a Global Covered Bond held on behalf of or, as the case may be, registered in the name of DTC or its nominee, each person (other than DTC) who is for the time being shown in the records of DTC as the holder of a particular nominal amount of such covered bonds (in which regard any certificate or other document issued by DTC as to the nominal amount of such covered bonds standing to the account of any person will be conclusive and binding for all purposes save in the case of manifest or proven error and any such certificate or other document may comprise any form of statement or print out of electronic records provided by the relevant clearing system in accordance with its

72

usual procedures and in which the holder of a particular nominal amount of the covered bonds is clearly identified with the amount of such holding) will be treated by the Bank, the Guarantor, the Paying Agents and the Bond Trustee as the holder of such nominal amount of such covered bonds for all purposes other than with respect to the payment of principal or interest or other amounts on such nominal amount of such covered bonds and the expressions "covered bondholder" and "holder" and related expressions should be construed accordingly.

Covered bonds which are represented by a Global Covered Bond will be transferable only in accordance with the rules and procedures for the time being of DTC or any other relevant clearing system, as the case may be.

References to DTC will, whenever the context so permits, be deemed to include a reference to any successor operator and/or successor clearing system and/or any additional or alternative clearing system specified in the applicable prospectus supplement or as may otherwise be approved by the Bank, the Principal Paying Agent and the Bond Trustee.

2. Transfers of Registered Covered Bonds

2.1. Transfers of interests in Registered Global Covered Bonds

Transfers of beneficial interests in registered global covered bonds will be effected by DTC and, in turn, by other participants and, if appropriate, indirect participants in DTC acting on behalf of beneficial transferors and transferees of such interests. The laws in some states within the United States require that certain persons take physical delivery of securities in definitive form. Consequently, the ability to transfer covered bonds represented by a Registered Covered Bond in global form (a "**Registered Global Covered Bond**") to such persons may depend upon the ability to exchange such covered bonds for covered bonds in definitive form. Similarly, because DTC can only act on behalf of direct participants in the DTC system who in turn act on behalf of indirect participants, the ability of a person having an interest in covered bonds represented by a Registered Global Covered Bond accepted by DTC to pledge such covered bonds to persons or entities that do not participate in the DTC system or otherwise to take action in respect of such covered bonds may depend upon the ability to exchange such covered bonds for covered bonds in definitive form. A beneficial interest in a Registered Global Covered Bond will, subject to compliance with all applicable legal and regulatory restrictions, be exchangeable for Registered Covered Bonds in definitive form ("**Registered Definitive Covered Bonds**") or for a beneficial interest in another Registered Global Covered Bond only in the Specified Denomination(s) set out in the applicable prospectus supplement and only in accordance with the rules and operating procedures for the time being of DTC and in accordance with the terms and conditions specified in the Agency Agreement.

2.2. Transfers of Registered Covered Bonds in definitive form

Subject as provided in Conditions 2.3 (*Registration of transfer upon partial redemption*) and 2.4 (*Costs of registration*), upon the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in the Agency Agreement, a Registered Definitive Covered Bond may be transferred in whole or in part in the Specified Denomination(s) set out in the applicable prospectus supplement. In order to effect any such transfer (a) the holder or holders must (i) surrender the Registered Definitive Covered Bond for registration of the transfer of the Registered Definitive Covered Bond (or the relevant part of the Registered Definitive Covered Bond) at the specified office of the Registrar or any Transfer Agent, with the form of transfer thereon duly executed by the holder or holders thereof or his or their attorney or attorneys duly authorized in writing, and (ii) complete and deposit such other certifications as may be required by the Registrar or, as the case may be, the relevant Transfer Agent, and (b) the Registrar or, as the case may be, the relevant Transfer Agent must, after due and careful enquiry, be satisfied with the documents of title and the identity of the person making the request.

Any such transfer will be subject to such reasonable regulations as the Bank, the Bond Trustee and the Registrar may from time to time prescribe (the initial such regulations being set out in the Agency Agreement).

Subject as provided above, the Registrar or, as the case may be, the relevant Transfer Agent will, within three business days (being for this purpose a day on which banks are open for business in the city where the specified office of the Registrar or, as the case may be, the relevant Transfer Agent is located) of the request (or such longer period as may be required to comply with any applicable fiscal or other laws or regulations), authenticate and deliver, or procure the authentication and delivery of, at its specified office to the transferee or (at the risk of the transferee) send by uninsured mail to such address as the transferee may request, a new Registered Definitive Covered Bond of a like aggregate nominal amount to the Registered Definitive Covered Bond (or the relevant part of the Registered Definitive Covered Bond) transferred.

In the case of the transfer of only part of a Registered Definitive Covered Bond, a new Registered Definitive Covered Bond in respect of the balance of the Registered Definitive Covered Bond not transferred will (in addition to the new Registered Definitive Covered Bond in respect of the nominal amount transferred) be so authenticated and delivered or (at the risk of the transferor) sent by uninsured mail to the address specified by the transferor.

2.3. Registration of transfer upon partial redemption
In the event of a partial redemption of covered bonds under Condition 6 (*Redemption and Purchase*), the Bank will not be required to register the transfer of any Registered Covered Bond, or part of a Registered Covered Bond, called for partial redemption.

2.4. Costs of registration
Covered bondholders will not be required to bear the costs and expenses of effecting any registration of transfer as provided above, except for any costs or expenses of delivery other than by regular uninsured mail and except that the Bank, the Registrar or the Transfer Agent may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any stamp duty, Taxes or any other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation to the registration.

2.5. Definitions
In these Terms and Conditions, the following expression will have the following meanings:

"**U.S. Registered Covered Bond**" means a covered bond issued under a registration statement under the Securities Act.

74

3. Status of the Covered Bonds and the Covered Bond Guarantee

3.1. Status of the Covered Bonds

The covered bonds will constitute deposit liabilities of the Bank for purposes of the Bank Act, however the covered bonds will not be insured under the *Canadian Deposit Insurance Corporation Act* (Canada), and will constitute legal, valid and binding direct, unconditional, unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank and rank *pari passu* with all deposit liabilities of the Bank without any preference among themselves at least *pari passu* with all other unsubordinated and unsecured obligations of the Bank, present and future (except as prescribed by law).

3.2. Status of the Covered Bond Guarantee

The payment of Guaranteed Amounts in respect of the covered bonds when the same will become Due for Payment has been unconditionally (save as set out below) and irrevocably guaranteed by the Guarantor in favor of the Bond Trustee for and on behalf of the covered bondholders pursuant the Covered Bond Guarantee. However, the Guarantor will have no obligation under the Covered Bond Guarantee to pay any Guaranteed Amounts when the same will become Due for Payment under the covered bonds or the Trust Deed until service of a Notice to Pay by the Bond Trustee on the Guarantor (which the Bond Trustee will be required to serve following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice by the Bond Trustee on the Bank) or, if earlier, the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice by the Bond Trustee on the Bank and the Guarantor. The obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee are subject to the applicable Priorities of Payments, and subject as aforesaid, are unsubordinated obligations of the Guarantor, which are secured and subject to limitations on recourse as provided in the Security Agreement.

As security for the Guarantor’s obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, the Guarantor has granted a security interest over all of its assets under the Security Agreement in favor of the Bond Trustee (for covered bondholders and on behalf of the other Secured Creditors).

4. Interest

4.1. Interest on Fixed Rate Covered Bonds

Each Fixed Rate Covered Bond bears interest on its Principal Amount Outstanding from (and including) the Interest Commencement Date at the rate(s) per annum equal to the Rate(s) of Interest. Interest will be payable, subject as provided in these Terms and Conditions, in arrears on the Interest Payment Date(s) in each year up to (and including) the Final Maturity Date.

If the covered bonds are in definitive form, except as provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, the amount of interest payable on each Interest Payment Date in respect of the Interest Period ending on (but excluding) such date will amount to the Fixed Coupon Amount. Payments of interest on any Interest Payment Date will, if so specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, amount to the Broken Amount so specified.

Except in the case of covered bonds in definitive form where a Fixed Coupon Amount or Broken Amount is specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, interest will be calculated in respect of any period by applying the Rate of Interest to (i) in the case of Fixed Rate Covered Bonds which are represented by a Global Covered Bond, the aggregate outstanding nominal amount of the Fixed Rate Covered Bonds represented by such Global Covered Bond, or (ii) in the case of Fixed Rate Covered Bonds in definitive form, the Calculation Amount; and in each case, multiplying such sum by the applicable Day Count Fraction, and rounding the resultant figure to the nearest sub unit of the relevant specified currency, half of any such sub unit being rounded upwards or otherwise in accordance with applicable market convention. Where the Specified Denomination of a Fixed Rate Covered Bond in definitive form comprises more than one Calculation Amount, the amount of interest payable in respect of such Fixed Rate Covered Bond will be the aggregate of the amounts (determined in the manner provided above) for each Calculation Amount comprising the Specified Denomination without any further rounding.

The applicable prospectus supplement may provide that if the payment of the Final Redemption Amount of a Series of Fixed Rate Covered Bonds on its Final Maturity Date is deferred until the applicable Extended Due for Payment Date in accordance with the Terms and Conditions, interest will accrue and be payable on the unpaid portion of the Final Redemption Amount up to the Extended Due for Payment Date at the Rate of Interest specified in the applicable prospectus supplement which may provide that such Series of Fixed Rate Covered Bonds will continue to bear interest at a Fixed Rate or at a Floating Rate despite the fact that interest accrued and was payable on such covered bonds prior to the Final Maturity Date at a Fixed Rate.

"**30/360**", "**360/360**" or "**Bond Basis**" means as defined in Day Count Fraction.

"**Actual/360**" means as defined in Day Count Fraction.

"**Day Count Fraction**" means, in respect of the calculation of an amount of interest for any Interest Period:

(i) if "Actual/360" is specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the actual number of days in the Interest Period divided by 360;

(ii) if "30/360", "360/360" or "Bond Basis" is specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the number of days in the Interest Period divided by 360, calculated on a formula basis as follows:

$$\text{Day Count Fraction} = \frac{[360 \times (Y_2 - Y_1)] + [30 \times (M_2 - M_1)] + D_2 - D_1}{360}$$

where:

"Y_1" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"Y_2" is the year, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

76

"M_1" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the first day of the Interest Period falls;

"M_2" is the calendar month, expressed as a number, in which the day immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period falls;

"D_1" is the first calendar day, expressed as a number, of the Interest Period, unless such number would be 31, in which case D_1 will be 30; and

"D_2" is the calendar day, expressed as a number, immediately following the last day included in the Interest Period, unless such number would be 31 and D_1 is greater than 29, in which case D_2 will be 30; or

(iii) such other Day Count Fraction as may be specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

"**Interest Payment Date**" means, in respect of Fixed Rate Covered Bonds, as provided in the second paragraph of Condition 4.7 and, in respect of Floating Rate Covered Bonds, as provided under the heading "U.S. Registered Covered Bonds that are Floating Rate Covered Bonds – Interest Payment Dates" in Condition 4.7.

"**Principal Amount Outstanding**" means, in respect of a covered bond, on any day, the principal amount of that covered bond on the relevant Issue Date thereof less principal amounts received by the relevant covered bondholder in respect thereof on or prior to that day.

"**sub-unit**" means, with respect to any currency other than euro, the lowest amount of such currency that is available as legal tender in the country of such currency and, with respect to euro, €0.01."

4.6. Interest on U.S. Registered Covered Bonds

Condition 4.6 will only apply to U.S. Registered Covered Bonds.

Each covered bond will bear interest from its date of issue at the rate per annum, in the case of a Fixed Rate Covered Bond, or pursuant to the interest rate formula, in the case of a Floating Rate Covered Bond, in each case as specified in the prospectus supplement, until the principal thereof is paid. Interest payments on covered bonds will be made in respect of Fixed Rate Covered Bonds and Floating Rate Covered Bonds in an amount equal to the interest accrued from and including the immediately preceding Interest Payment Date in respect of which interest has been paid or from and including the date of issue, if no interest has been paid, to but excluding the applicable Interest Payment Date or the Final Maturity Date, as the case may be (each an "**Interest Period**").

Interest on Fixed Rate Covered Bonds and Floating Rate Covered Bonds will be payable in arrears on each Interest Payment Date and on the Final Maturity Date. The first payment of interest on any covered bonds originally issued between a Regular Record Date (as defined below) and the related Interest Payment Date will be made on the Interest Payment Date immediately following the next succeeding record date to the registered holder on the next succeeding record date. The "**Regular Record Date**" will be the fifteenth calendar day, whether or not a Business Day, immediately preceding the related Interest Payment Date. For the purpose of determining the holder at the close of business on a Regular Record Date when business is not being conducted, the close of business will mean 5:00 P.M., New York City time, on that day.

4.7. Interest Rates Applicable to U.S. Registered Covered Bonds

Condition 4.7 will only apply to U.S. Registered Covered Bonds.

The applicable prospectus supplement will specify the Interest Payment Dates for a Fixed Rate Covered Bond as well as the Final Maturity Date. Interest on Fixed Rate Covered Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months or such other day count basis set forth in the prospectus supplement.

Fixed Rate Covered Bonds

If any Interest Payment Date, redemption date, repayment date or Final Maturity Date of a Fixed Rate Covered Bond falls on a day that is not a Business Day, the required payment of principal, premium, if any, and/or interest will be made on the next succeeding Business Day, and no additional interest will accrue in respect of the payment made on that next succeeding Business Day.

U.S. Registered Covered Bonds that are Floating Rate Covered Bonds

The following will only apply to Floating Rate Covered Bonds.

Interest Rate Basis. Floating Rate Covered Bonds will bear interest at rates based on one or more of the following interest rate bases:

- commercial paper rate;
- U.S. prime rate;
- LIBOR;
- EURIBOR;
- treasury rate;
- CMT rate;
- CD rate;
- CMS rate; and/or
- federal funds rate.

The applicable prospectus supplement will specify the interest rate basis that applies to a specific Series or Tranche of Floating Rate Covered Bonds.

Calculation of Interest. Calculations relating to Floating Rate Covered Bonds will be made by the Calculation Agent. The prospectus supplement for a particular Floating Rate Covered Bond will name the Calculation Agent for that covered bond as of its original issue date. A successor institution may be appointed to serve as Calculation Agent for such covered bonds from time to time after the original issue date of such covered bonds without the consent of covered bondholders or notification of the change.

For each Floating Rate Covered Bond, the Calculation Agent will determine, on the corresponding interest calculation date or on the interest determination date, as described below, the interest rate that takes effect on each interest reset date. In addition, the Calculation Agent will calculate the amount of interest that has accrued during each interest period that is, the period from and including the original issue date, or the last date to which interest has been paid or made available for payment, to but excluding the payment date. For each Interest Period, the Calculation Agent will calculate the amount of accrued interest by multiplying the face or other specified amount of the Floating Rate Covered Bond by an accrued interest factor for the Interest Period. This factor will equal the sum of the interest factors calculated for each day during the Interest Period. The interest factor for each day will be expressed as a decimal and will be calculated by dividing the interest rate, also expressed as a decimal, applicable to that day by 360 or by the actual number of days in the year, as specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Upon the request of the covered bondholder of any Floating Rate Covered Bond, the Calculation Agent will provide for that covered bond the interest rate then in effect and, if determined, the interest rate that will become effective on the next interest reset date. The Calculation Agent's determination of any interest rate, and its calculation of the amount of interest for any Interest Period, will be final and binding in the absence of manifest error.

All percentages resulting from any calculation relating to a covered bond will be rounded upward or downward, as appropriate, to the next higher or lower one hundred-thousandth of a percentage point, *e.g.*, 9.876541% (or 0.09876541) being rounded down to 9.87654% (or 0.0987654) and 9.876545% (or 0.09876545) being rounded up to 9.87655% (or 0.0987655). All amounts used in or resulting from any calculation relating to a Floating Rate Covered Bond will be rounded upward or downward, as appropriate, to the nearest cent, in the case of U.S. Dollars, or to the nearest corresponding hundredth of a unit, in the case of a currency other than U.S. Dollars, with one-half cent or one-half of a corresponding hundredth of a unit or more being rounded upward.

In determining the interest rate basis that applies to a Floating Rate Covered Bond during a particular Interest Period, the Calculation Agent may obtain rate quotes from various banks or dealers active in the relevant market, as discussed below. Those reference banks and dealers may include the Calculation Agent itself and its affiliates, as well as any agent participating in the distribution of the relevant floating rate covered bonds and its affiliates, and they may include affiliates of the Bank.

Initial Interest Rate. For any Floating Rate Covered Bond, the interest rate in effect from the original issue date to the first interest reset date will be the initial interest rate. The initial interest rate or the manner in which it is determined will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Spread or Spread Multiplier. In some cases, the interest rate basis for a Floating Rate Covered Bond may be adjusted:

- by adding or subtracting a specified number of basis points, called the spread, with one basis point being 0.01 percent; or
- by multiplying the interest rate basis by a specified percentage, called the spread multiplier.

For any Floating Rate Covered Bond, the applicable prospectus supplement will indicate whether a spread or spread multiplier will apply to the covered bond and, if so, the amount of the spread or spread multiplier.

Maximum and Minimum Rates. The actual interest rate, after being adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, may also be subject to either or both of the following limits:

- a maximum rate—*i.e.*, a specified upper limit that the actual interest rate in effect at any time may not exceed; and/or
- a minimum rate—*i.e.*, a specified lower limit that the actual interest rate in effect at any time may not fall below.

For any Floating Rate Covered Bond, the applicable prospectus supplement will indicate whether a maximum rate and/or minimum rate will apply to the covered bond and, if so, what those rates are.

Whether or not a maximum rate applies, the interest rate on a floating rate covered bond will in no event be higher than the maximum rate permitted by New York law, as it may be modified by U.S. law of general application and the law of Ontario and the laws of Canada applicable therein.

Interest Reset Dates. The rate of interest on a Floating Rate Covered Bond will be reset, by the Calculation Agent described below, daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semi-annually or annually. The date on which the interest rate resets and the reset rate becomes effective is called the interest reset date. Except as otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the interest reset date will be as follows:

- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset daily, each Business Day;
- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset weekly and are not treasury rate covered bonds, the Wednesday of each week;
- for treasury rate covered bonds that reset weekly, the Tuesday of each week;
- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset monthly, the third Wednesday of each month;
- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset quarterly, the third Wednesday of each of four months of each year as indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement;

- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset semi-annually, the third Wednesday of each of two months of each year as indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement; and
- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset annually, the third Wednesday of one month of each year as indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

For a Floating Rate Covered Bond, the interest rate in effect on any particular day will be the interest rate determined with respect to the latest interest reset date that occurs on or before that day. There are several exceptions, however, to the reset provisions described above.

If any interest reset date for a Floating Rate Covered Bond would otherwise be a day that is not a Business Day, the interest reset date will be postponed to the next day that is a Business Day. For a LIBOR or EURIBOR covered bond, however, if that Business Day is in the next succeeding calendar month, the interest reset date will be the immediately preceding Business Day.

Interest Determination Dates. The interest rate that takes effect on an interest reset date will be determined by the Calculation Agent by reference to a particular date called an interest determination date. Except as otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement:

- for commercial paper rate, federal funds rate and U.S. prime rate covered bonds, the interest determination date relating to a particular interest reset date will be the Business Day preceding the interest reset date;
- for LIBOR covered bonds, the interest determination date relating to a particular interest reset date will be the second London business day preceding the interest reset date, unless the index currency is pounds sterling, in which case the interest determination date will be the interest reset date. An interest determination date for a LIBOR covered bond is referred to as a LIBOR interest determination date;
- for EURIBOR covered bonds, the interest determination date relating to a particular interest reset date will be the second Euro Business Day preceding the interest reset date. An interest determination date for a EURIBOR covered bond is referred to as a EURIBOR interest determination date;
- for treasury rate covered bonds, the interest determination date relating to a particular interest reset date, which is referred to as a treasury interest determination date, will be the day of the week in which the interest reset date falls on which treasury bills—*i.e.*, direct obligations of the U.S. government—would normally be auctioned. Treasury bills are usually sold at auction on the Monday of each week, unless that day is not a Business Day, in which case the auction is usually held on the following Tuesday, except that the auction may be held on the preceding Friday. If as the result of a Monday not being a Business Day an auction is held on the preceding Friday, that Friday will be the treasury interest determination date relating to the interest reset date occurring in the next succeeding week; and

- for CD rate, CMT rate and CMS rate covered bonds, the interest determination date relating to a particular interest reset date will be the second Business Day preceding the interest reset date.

The interest determination date pertaining to a Floating Rate Covered Bond the interest rate of which is determined with reference to two or more interest rate bases will be the latest Business Day which is at least two Business Days before the related interest reset date for the applicable floating rate covered bond on which each interest rate basis is determinable.

Interest Calculation Dates. As described above, the interest rate that takes effect on a particular interest reset date will be determined by reference to the corresponding interest determination date. Except for LIBOR covered bonds and EURIBOR covered bonds, however, the determination of the rate will actually be made on a day no later than the corresponding interest calculation date. The interest calculation date will be the earlier of the following:

- the tenth calendar day after the interest determination date or, if that tenth calendar day is not a Business Day, the next succeeding Business Day; and
- the Business Day immediately preceding the Interest Payment Date or the maturity, whichever is the day on which the next payment of interest will be due.

The Calculation Agent need not wait until the relevant interest calculation date to determine the interest rate if the rate information it needs to make the determination is available from the relevant sources sooner.

Interest Payment Dates. The Interest Payment Dates for a Floating Rate Covered Bond will depend on when the interest rate is reset and, unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, will be as follows:

- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset daily, weekly or monthly, the third Wednesday of each month;
- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset quarterly, the third Wednesday of the four months of each year specified in the applicable prospectus supplement;
- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset semi-annually, the third Wednesday of the two months of each year specified in the applicable prospectus supplement; or
- for Floating Rate Covered Bonds that reset annually, the third Wednesday of the month specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Notwithstanding the above, if a covered bond is originally issued after the Regular Record Date and before the date that would otherwise be the first Interest Payment Date, the first Interest Payment Date will be the date that would otherwise be the second Interest Payment Date.

In addition, the following special provision will apply to a Floating Rate Covered Bond with regard to any Interest Payment Date other than one that falls on the maturity. If the Interest Payment Date would otherwise fall on a day that is not a Business Day, then the Interest Payment Date will be the next day that is a Business Day. However, if the floating rate covered bond is a

LIBOR covered bond or a EURIBOR covered bond and the next Business Day falls in the next calendar month, then the Interest Payment Date will be advanced to the next preceding day that is a Business Day. If the Final Maturity Date of a Floating Rate Covered Bond falls on a day that is not a Business Day, the required payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest will be made on the next succeeding Business Day, and no additional interest will accrue in respect of the payment made on that next succeeding Business Day.

Commercial Paper Rate Covered Bonds

A commercial paper rate covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the commercial paper rate and adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The commercial paper rate will be the money market yield of the rate, for the relevant interest determination date, for commercial paper having the index maturity indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, as published in H.15(519) under the heading "Commercial Paper—Nonfinancial." If the commercial paper rate cannot be determined as described above, the following procedures will apply.

- If the rate described above does not appear in H.15(519) by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from that source at that time, then the commercial paper rate will be the rate, for the relevant interest determination date, for commercial paper having the index maturity specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, as published in H.15 daily update or any other recognized electronic source used for displaying that rate, under the heading "Commercial Paper—Nonfinancial."
- If the rate described above does not appear in H.15(519), H.15 daily update or another recognized electronic source by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, the commercial paper rate will be the money market yield of the arithmetic mean of the following offered rates for U.S. Dollar commercial paper that has the relevant index maturity and is placed for an industrial issuer whose bond rating is "Aa", or the equivalent, from a nationally recognized rating agency: the rates offered as of 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest determination date, by three leading U.S. Dollar commercial paper dealers in New York City selected by the Calculation Agent.
- If fewer than three dealers selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, the commercial paper rate for the new interest period will be the commercial paper rate in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

82

U.S. Prime Rate Covered Bonds

A U.S. prime rate covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the U.S. prime rate and adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The U.S. prime rate will be the rate, for the relevant interest determination date, published in H.15(519) opposite the heading "Bank Prime Loan." If the U.S. prime rate cannot be determined as described above, the following procedures will apply.

- If the rate described above does not appear in H.15(519) by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from that source at that time, then the U.S. prime rate will be the rate, for the relevant interest determination date, as published in H.15 daily update or another recognized electronic source used for the purpose of displaying that rate, under the heading "Bank Prime Loan."
- If the rate described above does not appear in H.15(519), H.15 daily update or another recognized electronic source by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, then the U.S. prime rate will be the arithmetic mean of the following rates as they appear on the Reuters screen US PRIME 1 page: the rate of interest publicly announced by each bank appearing on that page as that bank's prime rate or base lending rate, as of 11:00 A.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest determination date.
- If fewer than four of these rates appear on the Reuters screen US PRIME 1 page, the U.S. prime rate will be the arithmetic mean of the prime rates or base lending rates, as of the close of business on the relevant interest determination date, of three major banks in New York City selected by the Calculation Agent. For this purpose, the Calculation Agent will use rates quoted on the basis of the actual number of days in the year divided by a 360-day year.
- If fewer than three banks selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, the U.S. prime rate for the new interest period will be the U.S. prime rate in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

LIBOR Covered Bonds

A LIBOR covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to LIBOR, which will be the London interbank offered rate for deposits in U.S. Dollars or any other index currency, as specified in the applicable prospectus supplement. In addition, when LIBOR is the interest rate basis the applicable LIBOR rate will be adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement. LIBOR will be determined in the following manner:

- LIBOR will be the offered rate appearing on the Reuters Page LIBOR01 as of 11:00 A.M., London time, on the relevant LIBOR interest determination date, for deposits of the relevant index currency having the relevant index maturity beginning on the relevant interest reset date. The applicable prospectus supplement will indicate the index currency, the index maturity and the reference page that apply to the LIBOR covered bond. If no reference page is mentioned in the prospectus supplement, Reuters Page LIBOR01 will apply to the LIBOR covered bond.

- If Reuters Page LIBOR01 applies and the rate described above does not appear on that page, then LIBOR will be determined on the basis of the rates, at approximately 11:00 A.M., London time, on the relevant LIBOR interest determination date, at which deposits of the following kind are offered to prime banks in the London interbank market by four major banks in that market selected by the Calculation Agent: deposits of the index currency having the relevant index maturity, beginning on the relevant interest reset date, and in a representative amount. The Calculation Agent will request the principal London office of each of these banks to provide a quotation of its rate. If at least two quotations are provided, LIBOR for the relevant LIBOR interest determination date will be the arithmetic mean of the quotations.
- If fewer than two quotations are provided as described above, LIBOR for the relevant LIBOR interest determination date will be the arithmetic mean of the rates for loans of the following kind to leading European banks quoted, at approximately 11:00 A.M., in the applicable principal financial center, on that LIBOR interest determination date, by three major banks in that financial center selected by the Calculation Agent: loans of the index currency having the relevant index maturity, beginning on the relevant interest reset date and in a representative amount.
- If fewer than three banks selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, LIBOR for the new interest period will be LIBOR in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

EURIBOR Covered Bonds

A EURIBOR covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the interest rate for deposits in euro, designated as “EURIBOR” and sponsored jointly by the European Banking Federation and ACI—the Financial Market Association, or any company established by the joint sponsors for purposes of compiling and publishing that rate. In addition, when EURIBOR is the interest rate basis the EURIBOR base rate will be adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, specified in the applicable prospectus supplement. EURIBOR will be determined in the following manner:

- EURIBOR will be the offered rate for deposits in euros having the index maturity specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, beginning on the second Euro Business Day after the relevant EURIBOR interest determination date, as that rate appears on Reuters page EURIBOR01 as of 11:00 A.M., Brussels time, on the relevant EURIBOR interest determination date.

- If the rate described above does not appear on Reuters page EURIBOR01, EURIBOR will be determined on the basis of the rates, at approximately 11:00 A.M., Brussels time, on the relevant EURIBOR interest determination date, at which deposits of the following kind are offered to prime banks in the euro-zone interbank market by the principal euro-zone office of each of four major banks in that market selected by the Calculation Agent: euro deposits having the relevant index maturity, beginning on the relevant interest reset date, and in a representative amount. The Calculation Agent will request the principal euro-zone office of each of these banks to provide a quotation of its rate. If at least two quotations are provided, EURIBOR for the relevant EURIBOR interest determination date will be the arithmetic mean of the quotations.
- If fewer than two quotations are provided as described above, EURIBOR for the relevant EURIBOR interest determination date will be the arithmetic mean of the rates for loans of the following kind to leading euro-zone banks quoted, at approximately 11:00 A.M., Brussels time on that EURIBOR interest determination date, by three major banks in the euro-zone selected by the Calculation Agent: loans of euros having the relevant index maturity, beginning on the relevant interest reset date, and in a representative amount.
- If fewer than three banks selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, EURIBOR for the new interest period will be EURIBOR in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

Treasury Rate Covered Bonds

A treasury rate covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the treasury rate and adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The treasury rate will be the rate for the auction, on the relevant treasury interest determination date, of treasury bills having the index maturity specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, as that rate appears on Reuters page USAUCTION 10/11. If the treasury rate cannot be determined in this manner, the following procedures will apply.

- If the rate described above does not appear on either page by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from that source at that time, the treasury rate will be the bond equivalent yield of the rate, for the relevant interest determination date, for the type of treasury bill described above, as published in H.15 daily update, or another recognized electronic source used for displaying that rate, under the heading "U.S. Government Securities/Treasury Bills/Auction High."
- If the rate described in the prior paragraph does not appear in H.15 daily update or another recognized electronic source by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, the treasury rate will

85

be the bond equivalent yield of the auction rate, for the relevant treasury interest determination date and for treasury bills of the kind described above, as announced by the U.S. Department of the Treasury.

- If the auction rate described in the prior paragraph is not so announced by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, or if no such auction is held for the relevant week, then the treasury rate will be the bond equivalent yield of the rate, for the relevant treasury interest determination date and for treasury bills having a remaining maturity closest to the specified index maturity, as published in H.15(519) under the heading "U.S. Government Securities/Treasury Bills/Secondary Market."
- If the rate described in the prior paragraph does not appear in H.15(519) by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, then the treasury rate will be the rate, for the relevant treasury interest determination date and for treasury bills having a remaining maturity closest to the specified index maturity, as published in H.15 daily update, or another recognized electronic source used for displaying that rate, under the heading "U.S. Government Securities/Treasury Bills/Secondary Market."
- If the rate described in the prior paragraph does not appear in H.15 daily update or another recognized electronic source by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, the treasury rate will be the bond equivalent yield of the arithmetic mean of the following secondary market bid rates for the issue of treasury bills with a remaining maturity closest to the specified index maturity: the rates bid as of approximately 3:30 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant treasury interest determination date, by three primary U.S. government securities dealers in New York City selected by the Calculation Agent.
- If fewer than three dealers selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described in the prior paragraph, the treasury rate in effect for the new interest period will be the treasury rate in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

CD Rate Covered Bonds

A CD rate covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the CD rate and adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The CD rate will be the rate, on the relevant interest determination date, for negotiable U.S. Dollar certificates of deposit having the index maturity specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, as published in H.15(519) under the heading "CDs (Secondary Market)." If the CD rate cannot be determined in this manner, the following procedures will apply.

86

- If the rate described above does not appear in H.15(519) by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from that source at that time, then the CD rate will be the rate, for the relevant interest determination date, described above as published in H.15 daily update, or another recognized electronic source used for displaying that rate, under the heading "CDs (Secondary Market)."
- If the rate described above does not appear in H.15(519), H.15 daily update or another recognized electronic source by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, the CD rate will be the arithmetic mean of the following secondary market offered rates for negotiable U.S. Dollar certificates of deposit of major U.S. money market banks with a remaining maturity closest to the specified index maturity, and in a representative amount: the rates offered as of 10:00 A.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest determination date, by three leading non-bank dealers in negotiable U.S. Dollar certificates of deposit in New York City, as selected by the Calculation Agent.
- If fewer than three dealers selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, the CD rate in effect for the new interest period will be the CD rate in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

CMT Rate Covered Bonds

A CMT rate covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the CMT rate and adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The CMT rate will be the following rate displayed on the designated CMT Reuters page under the heading ". . . Treasury Constant Maturities .. . . Federal Reserve Board Release H.15 Mondays Approximately 3:45 P.M.", under the column for the **designated CMT index maturity**:

- if the designated CMT Reuters page is Reuters page FRBCMT, the rate for the relevant interest determination date; or
- if the designated CMT Reuters page is Reuters page FEDCMT, the weekly or monthly average, as specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, for the week that ends immediately before the week in which the relevant interest determination date falls, or for the month that ends immediately before the month in which the relevant interest determination date falls, as applicable.

If the CMT rate cannot be determined in this manner, the following procedures will apply.

- If the applicable rate described above is not displayed on the relevant designated CMT Reuters page at 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from that source at that time, then the CMT rate will be the applicable treasury constant maturity rate described above—*i.e.*, for the designated CMT index maturity and for either the relevant interest determination date or the weekly or monthly average, as applicable—as published in H.15(519).

- If the applicable rate described above does not appear in H.15(519) by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, then the CMT rate will be the treasury constant maturity rate, or other U.S. treasury rate, for the designated CMT index maturity and with reference to the relevant interest determination date, that:
- is published by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, or the U.S. Department of the Treasury; or
- as is otherwise announced by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York for the week or month, as applicable, ended immediately preceding the week or month, as applicable, in which such CMT rate interest determination date falls; and
- in either case, is determined by the Calculation Agent to be comparable to the applicable rate formerly displayed on the designated CMT Reuters page and published in H.15(519).
  - If the rate described in the prior paragraph does not appear by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, then the CMT rate will be the yield to maturity of the arithmetic mean of the following secondary market bid rates for the most recently issued treasury covered bonds having an original maturity equal to the designated CMT index maturity and a remaining term to maturity of not less than the designated CMT index maturity minus one year, and in a representative amount: the bid rates, as of approximately 3:30 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest determination date, of three primary U.S. government securities dealers in New York City selected by the Calculation Agent. In selecting these bid rates, the Calculation Agent will request quotations from five of these primary dealers and will disregard the highest quotation—or, if there is equality, one of the highest—and the lowest quotation—or, if there is equality, one of the lowest. Treasury covered bonds are direct, non-callable, fixed rate obligations of the U.S. government.
- If the Calculation Agent is unable to obtain three quotations of the kind described in the prior paragraph, the CMT rate will be the yield to maturity of the arithmetic mean of the following secondary market bid rates for treasury covered bonds with an original maturity longer than the designated CMT index maturity, with a remaining term to maturity closest to the designated CMT index maturity and in a representative amount: the bid rates, as of approximately 3:30 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest determination date, of three primary U.S. government securities dealers in New York City selected by the Calculation

88

Agent. In selecting these bid rates, the Calculation Agent will request quotations from five of these primary dealers and will disregard the highest quotation (or, if there is equality, one of the highest) and the lowest quotation (or, if there is equality, one of the lowest). If two treasury covered bonds with an original maturity longer than the designated CMT index maturity have remaining terms to maturity that are equally close to the designated CMT index maturity, the Calculation Agent will obtain quotations for the treasury covered bond with the shorter remaining term to maturity.

- If fewer than five but more than two of these primary dealers are quoting as described in the prior paragraph, then the CMT rate for the relevant interest determination date will be based on the arithmetic mean of the bid rates so obtained, and neither the highest nor the lowest of those quotations will be disregarded.
- If two or fewer primary dealers selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, the CMT rate in effect for the new interest period will be the CMT rate in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

CMS Rate Covered Bonds

A CMS rate covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the CMS rate and adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The CMS rate will be the rate for U.S. Dollar swaps with a maturity for a specified number of years, expressed as a percentage in the applicable prospectus supplement, which appears on the Reuters page ISDAFIX1 as of 11:00 a.m., New York City time, on the interest rate determination date.

- If the CMS rate cannot be determined as described above, the following procedures will be used:
- If the applicable rate described above is not displayed on the relevant designated CMS Reuters page by 11:00 a.m., New York City time, on the interest rate determination date, then the CMS rate will be a percentage determined on the basis of the mid-market, semi-annual swap rate quotations provided by five leading swap dealers in the New York City interbank market at approximately 11:00 a.m., New York City time, on the interest rate determination date. For this purpose, the semi-annual swap rate means the mean of the bid and offered rates for the semi-annual fixed leg, calculated on a 30/360 day count basis, of a fixed-for-floating U.S. Dollar interest rate swap transaction with a term equal to the maturity designated in the applicable prospectus supplement commencing on that interest rate determination date with an acknowledged dealer of good credit in the swap market, where the floating leg, calculated on an Actual/360 day count basis, is equivalent to "LIBOR Reuters" with a maturity of three months. The Calculation Agent will select the five swap dealers after consultation with us and will request the principal New York City office of each of those dealers to

89

provide a quotation of its rate. If at least three quotations are provided, the CMS rate for that interest rate determination date will be the arithmetic mean of the quotations, eliminating the highest and lowest quotations or, in the event of equality, one of the highest and one of the lowest quotations.

- If fewer than three leading swap dealers selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, the CMS rate will remain the CMS rate in effect on that interest rate determination date or, if that interest rate determination date is the first reference rate determination date, the initial interest rate.

Federal Funds Rate Covered Bonds

A federal funds rate covered bond will bear interest at an interest rate equal to the federal funds rate and adjusted by the spread or spread multiplier, if any, indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The federal funds rate will be the rate for U.S. Dollar federal funds as of the relevant interest determination date, as published in H.15(519) under the heading "Federal Funds (Effective)", as that rate is displayed on Reuters page FEDFUNDS1. If the federal funds rate cannot be determined in this manner, the following procedures will apply.

- If the rate described above is not displayed on Reuters page FEDFUNDS1 by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from that source at that time, then the federal funds rate, as of the relevant interest determination date, will be the rate described above as published in H.15 daily update, or another recognized electronic source used for displaying that rate, under the heading "Federal Funds (Effective)."
- If the rate described above is not displayed on Reuters page FEDFUNDS1 and does not appear in H.15(519), H.15 daily update or another recognized electronic source by 3:00 P.M., New York City time, on the relevant interest calculation date, unless the calculation is made earlier and the rate is available from one of those sources at that time, the federal funds rate will be the arithmetic mean of the rates for the last transaction in overnight, U.S. Dollar federal funds arranged, before 9:00 A.M., New York City time, on the Business Day following the relevant interest determination date, by three leading brokers of U.S. Dollar federal funds transactions in New York City selected by the Calculation Agent.
- If fewer than three brokers selected by the Calculation Agent are quoting as described above, the federal funds rate in effect for the new interest period will be the federal funds rate in effect for the prior interest period. If the initial interest rate has been in effect for the prior interest period, however, it will remain in effect for the new interest period.

Special Rate Calculation Terms

For the purposes of this Condition 4.7:

90

The term “**bond equivalent yield**” means a yield expressed as a percentage and calculated in accordance with the following formula:

where,

“**D**” means the annual rate for treasury bills quoted on a bank discount basis and expressed as a decimal;

“**N**” means 365 or 366, as the case may be; and

“**M**” means the actual number of days in the applicable interest reset period.

The term “**Business Day**” means, for any covered bond, a day that meets all the following applicable requirements:

(a) for all covered bonds, is a Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday or Friday that is neither a legal holiday nor a day on which banking institutions are authorized or required by law to close in New York City or Toronto, and, in the case of a Floating Rate covered bond, London;

(b) if the covered bond has a specified currency other than U.S. Dollars or euros, is also a day on which banking institutions are not authorized or obligated by law, regulation or executive order to close in the applicable principal financial center; and

(c) if the covered bond is a EURIBOR covered bond or has a specified currency of euros, or is a LIBOR covered bond for which the index currency is euros, is also a Euro Business Day.

The term “**designated CMT index maturity**” means the index maturity for a CMT rate covered bond and will be the original period to maturity of a U.S. treasury security—either 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 10, 20 or 30 years—specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The term “**designated CMT Reuters page**” means the Reuters page that displays treasury constant maturities as reported in H.15(519). If no Reuters page is so specified, then the applicable page will be Reuters page FEDCMT. If Reuters page FEDCMT applies but the applicable prospectus supplement does not specify whether the weekly or monthly average applies, the weekly average will apply.

The term “**Euro Business Day**” means any day on which the Trans-European Automated Real-Time Gross Settlement Express Transfer (TARGET) System, or any successor system, is open for business.

The term “**euro-zone**” means, at any time, the region comprised of the member states of the European Economic and Monetary Union that, as of that time, have adopted a single currency in accordance with the Treaty on European Union of February 1992.

"**H.15(519)**" means the weekly statistical release entitled "Statistical Release H.15(519)", or any successor publication, published by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

"**H.15 daily update**" means the daily update of H.15(519) available through the worldwide website of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, at http://www.federalreserve.gov/releases/h15/update, or any successor site or publication.

The term "**index currency**" means, with respect to a LIBOR covered bond, the currency specified as such in the applicable prospectus supplement. The index currency may be U.S. Dollars or any other currency, and will be U.S. Dollars unless another currency is specified in the prospectus supplement.

The term "**index maturity**" means, with respect to a floating rate covered bond, the period to maturity of the instrument or obligation on which the interest rate formula is based, as specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

"**Interest Period**" has the meaning given to such term in Condition 4.6 (*Interest on U.S. Registered Covered Bonds*).

"**London business day**" means any day on which dealings in the relevant index currency are transacted in the London interbank market.

The term "**money market yield**" means a yield expressed as a percentage and calculated in accordance with the following formula:

where,

"**D**" means the annual rate for commercial paper quoted on a bank discount basis and expressed as a decimal; and

"**M**" means the actual number of days in the relevant interest reset period.

The term "**principal financial center**" means the capital city of the country to which an index currency relates (or the capital city of the country issuing the specified currency, as applicable), except that with respect to U.S. Dollars, Australian dollars, Canadian Dollars, South African rands and Swiss francs, the "principal financial center" means The City of New York, Sydney, Toronto, Johannesburg and Zurich, respectively, and with respect to euros the principal financial center means London.

The term "**representative amount**" means an amount that, in the Calculation Agent's judgment, is representative of a single transaction in the relevant market at the relevant time.

"**Reuters Page LIBOR01**" means the display designated as "LIBOR01" on Reuters 3000 Xtra (or any successor service) (or such other page as may replace Page LIBOR01 on Reuters 3000 Xtra or any successor service).

"**Reuters screen US PRIME 1 page**" means the display on the "US PRIME 1" page on the Reuters Monitor Money Rates Service, or any successor service, or any replacement page or pages on that service, for the purpose of displaying prime rates or base lending rates of major U.S. banks.

"**Reuters page**" means the display on Reuters 3000 Xtra, or any successor service or any replacement page or pages on that service.

If, when using the terms designated CMT Reuters page, H.15(519), H.15 daily update, Reuters screen US PRIME 1 page, Reuters Page LIBOR01 or Reuters page, a particular heading or headings is referenced on any of those pages, those references include any successor or replacement heading or headings as determined by the Calculation Agent.

5. Payments

5.1. Method of payment

Payments will be subject in all cases to (i) any fiscal or other laws and regulations applicable thereto in the place of payment but without prejudice to the provisions of Condition 7 (*Taxation*) and (ii) any withholding or deduction required pursuant to an agreement described in Section 1471(b) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "**Code**") or otherwise imposed pursuant to Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code, any regulations or agreements thereunder, official interpretations thereof, or (without prejudice to the provisions of Condition 7) any law implementing an intergovernmental approach thereto.

5.2. [Reserved]

5.3. [Reserved]

5.4. Payments in respect of Registered Covered Bonds

Payments of principal in respect of each Registered Covered Bond (whether or not in global form) will be made against presentation and surrender (or, in the case of part payment of any sum due, endorsement) of the Registered Covered Bond at the specified office of the Registrar or any of the Paying Agents. Such payments will be made in accordance with Condition 5.1 (*Method of Payment*) by transfer to the Designated Account (as defined below) of the holder (or the first named of joint holders) of the Registered Covered Bond appearing in the register of holders of the Registered Covered Bonds maintained by the Registrar (the "**Register**") at the close of business on the tenth business day ("**business day**" being for the purposes of this Condition 5.4 a day on which banks are open for business in the city where the specified office of the Registrar is located) before the relevant due date (the "**Record Date**"). Notwithstanding the previous sentence, if (i) a holder does not have a Designated Account, or (ii) the principal amount of the covered bonds held by a holder is less than U.S.$250,000 (or its approximate equivalent in any other specified currency), payment will instead be made by a check drawn on a Designated Bank (as defined below). For these purposes, "**Designated Account**" means the account (which, in the case of a payment in Yen to a non resident of Japan, will be a non resident account) maintained by a holder with a Designated Bank and identified as such in the Register and "**Designated Bank**" means a bank in the City of New York.

Payments of interest in respect of each Registered Covered Bond (whether or not in global form) will be made by a check in the specified currency drawn on a Designated Bank and mailed by uninsured mail on the business day immediately preceding the relevant due date to the holder (or the first named of joint holders) of the Registered Covered Bond appearing in the Register at the close of business on the Record Date at the holder's address shown in the Register on the Record Date and at the holder's risk. Upon application of the holder to the specified office of the Registrar not less than three business days before the due date for any payment of interest in respect of a Registered Covered Bond, the payment may be made by transfer on the due date in the manner provided in the preceding paragraph. Any such application for transfer will be deemed to relate to all future payments of interest (other than interest due on redemption) in respect of the Registered Covered Bonds which become payable to the holder who has made the initial application until such time as the Registrar is notified in writing to the contrary by such holder. Payment of the interest due in respect of each Registered Covered Bond on redemption will be made in the same manner as payment of the principal in respect of such Registered Covered Bond.

Holders of Registered Covered Bonds will not be entitled to any interest or other payment for any delay in receiving any amount due in respect of any Registered Covered Bond as a result of a check posted in accordance with this Condition arriving after the due date for payment or being lost in the post. No commissions or expenses will be charged to such holders by the Registrar or any of the Paying Agents in respect of any payments of principal or interest in respect of the Registered Covered Bonds.

None of the Bank, the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee or the Agents will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to, or payments made on account of, beneficial ownership interests in the Registered Covered Bonds or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

5.5. General provisions applicable to payments

The holder of a Global Covered Bond (or, as provided in the Trust Deed, the Bond Trustee) will be the only person entitled to receive payments in respect of covered bonds represented by such Global Covered Bond and the obligations of the Bank or, as the case may be, the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be discharged by payment to, or to the order of, the holder of such Global Covered Bond (or the Bond Trustee, as the case may be) in respect of each amount so paid. Each of the persons shown in the records of DTC as the beneficial holder of a particular nominal amount of covered bonds represented by such Global Covered Bond must look solely to DTC for his share of each payment so made by the Bank or the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee to, or to the order of, the holder of such Global Covered Bond (or the Bond Trustee, as the case may be). No person other than the holder of the relevant Global Covered Bond (or, as provided in the Trust Deed, the Bond Trustee) will have any claim against the Bank or the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee in respect of any payments due on that Global Covered Bond.

5.6. Payment Day

If the date for payment of any amount in respect of any covered bond is not a Payment Day (as defined below), the holder thereof will not be entitled to payment of the relevant amount due until the next following Payment Day and will not be entitled to any interest or other sum in respect of any such delay. In this Condition (unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement), "**Payment Day**" means any day which (subject to Condition 8 (*Prescription*)) is a day on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets in the City of New York settle payments and are open for general business (including dealing in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits).

5.7. Interpretation of principal and interest

Any reference in these Terms and Conditions to principal in respect of the covered bonds will be deemed to include, as applicable:

(a) any additional amounts which may be payable with respect to principal under Condition 7 (*Taxation*) or under any undertakings or covenants given in addition thereto, or in substitution therefor, pursuant to the Trust Deed;
(b) the Final Redemption Amount of the covered bonds;
(c) the Early Redemption Amount of the covered bonds, but excluding any amount of interest referred to therein;
(d) the Optional Redemption Amount(s) (if any) of the covered bonds;
(e) any premium and any other amounts (other than interest) which may be payable under or in respect of the covered bonds; and
(f) any Excess Proceeds attributable to principal which may be deposited by the Bond Trustee into the GDA Account in respect of the covered bonds, and following a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice deposited or paid in such other manner as the Bond Trustee may direct.

Any reference in these Terms and Conditions to interest in respect of the covered bonds will be deemed to include, as applicable, any additional amounts which may be payable with respect to interest under Condition 7 (*Taxation*) or under any undertakings given in addition thereto, or in substitution therefor, pursuant to the Trust Deed.

5.8. [Reserved]

5.9. [Reserved]

6. Redemption and Purchase

6.1. Final redemption

Unless previously redeemed or purchased and cancelled as specified below, each covered bond will be redeemed by the Bank at its Final Redemption Amount specified in, or determined in the manner specified in, the applicable prospectus supplement in the relevant specified currency on the Final Maturity Date.

Without prejudice to Condition 9 (*Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement*), if an Extended Due for Payment Date is specified in the applicable prospectus supplement for a Series of covered bonds and the Bank has failed to pay the Final Redemption Amount on the Final Maturity Date specified in the prospectus supplement (in each case after the expiry of the grace period set out in Condition 9.1(a) (*Issuer Events of Default*)) and following service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor by no later than the date falling one Business Day prior to the Extension Determination Date, the Guarantor has insufficient funds available under the Guarantee

Priority of Payments to pay the Guaranteed Amounts corresponding to the Final Redemption Amount in full in respect of the relevant Series of covered bonds on the date falling on the earlier of (a) the date which falls two Business Days after service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor or, if later, the Final Maturity Date (in each case after the expiry of the grace period set out in Condition 9.2(a) (*Guarantor Events of Default*)), and (b) the Extension Determination Date, under the Covered Bond Guarantee, then (subject as provided below) payment of the unpaid portion of the Final Redemption Amount by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be deferred until the Extended Due for Payment Date, *provided* that any amount representing the Final Redemption Amount due and remaining unpaid on the earlier of (a) and (b) above will be paid by the Guarantor to the extent it has sufficient funds available under the Guarantee Priority of Payments on any Interest Payment Date thereafter up to (and including) the relevant Extended Due for Payment Date.

The Bank will confirm to the Principal Paying Agent as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event at least four Business Days prior to the Final Maturity Date of a Series of covered bonds whether (a) payment will be made in full of the Final Redemption Amount in respect of a Series of covered bonds on that Final Maturity Date or (b) payment will not be made in full of the Final Redemption Amount in respect of a Series of covered bonds on that Final Maturity Date. Any failure by the Bank to notify the Principal Paying Agent will not affect the validity or effectiveness of the extension.

The Guarantor will notify the relevant covered bondholders (in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*)), the Rating Agencies, the Bond Trustee, the Principal Paying Agent and (in the case of Registered Covered Bonds) the Registrar as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event at least one Business Day prior to the date specified in (a) or (b) of the second preceding paragraph (as appropriate) of any inability of the Guarantor to pay in full the Guaranteed Amounts corresponding to the Final Redemption Amount in respect of a Series of covered bonds pursuant to the Covered Bond Guarantee. Any failure by the Guarantor to notify such parties will not affect the validity or effectiveness of the extension nor will any rights accrue to any of them by virtue thereof.

In the circumstances outlined above, the Guarantor will on the earlier of (a) the date falling two Business Days after service of a Notice to Pay or, if later, the Final Maturity Date (in each case after the expiry of the grace period set out in Condition 9.2(a)) (*Guarantor Events of Default*), and (b) the Extension Determination Date, under the Covered Bond Guarantee, apply the funds (if any) available (after paying or providing for payment of higher ranking or *pari passu* amounts in accordance with the Guarantee Priority of Payments) *pro rata* in part payment of an amount equal to the Final Redemption Amount of each covered bond of the relevant Series of covered bonds and will pay Guaranteed Amounts constituting the corresponding part of Scheduled Interest in respect of each such covered bond on such date. The obligation of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee to pay any amounts in respect of the balance of the Final Redemption Amount not so paid will be deferred as described above. Such failure to pay by the Guarantor will not constitute a Guarantor Event of Default.

Any discharge of the obligations of the Bank as a result of the payment of Excess Proceeds to the Bond Trustee will be disregarded for the purposes of determining the liabilities of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee in connection with this Condition 6.1 (*Final redemption*).

6.2. Redemption for taxation reasons

The covered bonds may be redeemed at the option of the Bank in whole, but not in part, at any time (if the relevant covered bond is not a Floating Rate Covered Bond) or on any Interest Payment Date (if the relevant covered bond is a Floating Rate Covered Bond), on giving not less than 30 nor more than 60 days' notice to the Bond Trustee and, in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*), the covered bondholders (which notice will be irrevocable), if the Bank satisfies the Bond Trustee immediately before the giving of such notice that on the occasion of the next date for payment of interest on the relevant covered bonds, that the Bank is or would be required to pay additional amounts as provided or referred to in Condition 7 (*Taxation*). Covered bonds redeemed pursuant to this Condition 6.2 will be redeemed at their Early Redemption Amount referred to in Condition 6.7 (*Early Redemption Amounts*) together (if appropriate) with interest accrued to (but excluding) the date of redemption.

6.3. Redemption at the option of the Bank ("Issuer Call")

If an Issuer Call is specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the Bank may, having given not less than 15 nor more than 30 days' notice or such other period of notice as may be specified in the applicable prospectus supplement to the Bond Trustee, the Principal Paying Agent, the Registrar (in the case of the redemption of Registered Covered Bonds) and, in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*), the covered bondholders (which notice will be irrevocable) redeem all or only some of the covered bonds then outstanding on any Optional Redemption Date(s) and at the Optional Redemption Amount(s) specified in, or determined in the manner specified in, the applicable prospectus supplement together, if applicable, with interest accrued to (but excluding) the relevant Optional Redemption Date(s). The Bank will be bound to redeem the covered bonds on the date specified in such notice. In the event of a redemption of only some of the covered bonds, such redemption must be of a nominal amount not less than the Minimum Redemption Amount and not more than the Maximum Redemption Amount (if any) as specified in the applicable prospectus supplement. In the case of a partial redemption of covered bonds, the covered bonds to be redeemed (the "**Redeemed Covered Bonds**") will be selected individually by lot, in the case of Redeemed Covered Bonds represented by Definitive Covered Bonds, and in accordance with the rules of DTC, in the case of Redeemed Covered Bonds represented by a Global Covered Bond, in each case, not more than 30 days prior to the date fixed for redemption (such date of selection being hereinafter called the "**Selection Date**"). In the case of Redeemed Covered Bonds represented by Definitive Covered Bonds, a list of the serial numbers of such Redeemed Covered Bonds will be published in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*) not less than 15 days (or such shorter period as may be specified in the applicable prospectus supplement) prior to the date fixed for redemption. The aggregate nominal amount of Redeemed Covered Bonds represented by Definitive Covered Bonds or represented by Global Covered Bonds will, in each case, bear the same proportion to the aggregate nominal amount of all Redeemed Covered Bonds as the aggregate nominal amount of Definitive Covered Bonds or Global Covered Bonds outstanding bears, in each case, to the aggregate nominal amount of the covered bonds outstanding on the Selection Date, *provided* that such nominal amounts will, if necessary, be rounded downwards to the nearest integral multiple of the Specified Denomination. No exchange of the relevant Global Covered Bond will be permitted during the period from (and including) the Selection Date to (and including) the date fixed for redemption pursuant to this Condition 6.3 and notice to that effect will be given by the Bank to the covered bondholders in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*) at least five days (or such shorter period as is specified in the applicable prospectus supplement) prior to the Selection Date.

6.4. Redemption at the option of the covered bondholders ("Investor Put")

If an Investor Put is specified in the prospectus supplement for a covered bond, then if and to the extent specified in the applicable prospectus supplement and provided that an Issuer Event of Default has not occurred and is continuing, upon the covered bondholder giving to the Bank, in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*), not less than 30 nor more than 60 days' notice (which notice will be irrevocable), the Bank will, upon the expiry of such notice *provided* that the Cash Manager has notified the Bond Trustee in writing that there will be sufficient funds available to pay any termination payment due to the Covered Bond Swap Provider, redeem subject to, and in accordance with, the terms specified in the applicable prospectus supplement in whole (but not in part) such covered bond on the Optional Redemption Date and at the relevant Optional Redemption Amount as specified in, or determined in the manner specified in, the applicable prospectus supplement, together, if applicable, with interest accrued to (but excluding) the relevant Optional Redemption Date.

If the covered bond is in definitive form, to exercise the right to require redemption of such covered bond, the covered bondholder must deliver such covered bond, on any Business Day falling within the above mentioned notice period at the specified office of any Paying Agent, accompanied by a duly signed and completed notice of exercise of the Investor Put in the form (for the time being currently) obtainable from any specified office of any Paying Agent and in which the holder must specify a bank account (or, if payment is by check, an address) to which payment is to be made under this Condition 6.4.

It may be that before an Investor Put can be exercised, certain conditions and/or circumstances will need to be satisfied. Where relevant, the provisions will be set out in the applicable prospectus supplement.

6.5. Redemption due to illegality or invalidity

The covered bonds of all Series may be redeemed at the option of the Bank in whole, but not in part, at any time, on giving not less than 30 nor more than 60 days' notice to the Bond Trustee, the Principal Paying Agent, the Registrar and, in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*), all covered bondholders (which notice will be irrevocable), if the Bank satisfies the Bond Trustee immediately before the giving of such notice that it has, or will,

(a) before the next Interest Payment Date of any covered bond of any Series, become unlawful for the Bank to make, fund or allow to remain outstanding any Guarantee Loan made by it to the Guarantor under the Intercompany Loan Agreement, as a result of any change in, or amendment to, the applicable laws or regulations or any change in the application or official interpretation of such laws or regulations, which change or amendment has become or will become effective before the next such Interest Payment Date.

(b) Covered bonds redeemed pursuant to Condition 6.5(a) will be redeemed at their Early Redemption Amount referred to in Condition 6.7 (*Early Redemption Amounts*) together (if appropriate) with interest accrued to (but excluding) the date of redemption.

6.6. General

Prior to the publication of any notice of redemption pursuant to Conditions 6.2 (*Redemption for taxation reasons*) or 6.5(a) (*Redemption due to illegality or invalidity*), the Bank will deliver to the Bond Trustee a certificate signed by two authorized signatories stating that the Bank is entitled or required to effect such redemption and setting forth a statement of facts showing that the conditions set out in Conditions 6.2 (*Redemption for taxation reasons*) or, as the case may be, 6.5(a) (*Redemption due to illegality or invalidity*) for such right or obligation (as applicable) of the Bank to arise have been satisfied and the Bond Trustee will be entitled to accept the certificate as sufficient evidence of the satisfaction of the conditions set out above, in which event it will be conclusive and binding on all covered bondholders.

6.7. Early Redemption Amounts

For the purpose of Conditions 6.2 (*Redemption for taxation reasons*), 6.5(a) (*Redemption due to illegality or invalidity*) and 9 (*Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement*), each covered bond will be redeemed (unless otherwise stated in the applicable prospectus supplement) at its Early Redemption Amount calculated at the amount specified in, or determined in the manner specified in, the applicable prospectus supplement or, if no such amount or manner is so specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, at its Principal Amount Outstanding, together with interest accrued to (but excluding) the date fixed for redemption (the "**Early Redemption Amount**").

6.8. Purchases

The Bank or any of its subsidiaries, or the Guarantor, may at any time purchase or otherwise acquire covered bonds at any price in the open market either by tender or private agreement or otherwise. If purchases are made by tender, tenders must be available to all covered bondholders alike. Such covered bonds may be held, reissued, resold or, at the option of the Bank or the relevant subsidiary, surrendered to any Paying Agent and/or the Registrar for cancellation (except that any covered bonds purchased or otherwise acquired by the Guarantor must immediately be surrendered to any Paying Agent and/or the Registrar for cancellation).

6.9. Cancellation

All covered bonds which are redeemed will forthwith be cancelled. All covered bonds so cancelled and any covered bonds purchased and surrendered for cancellation pursuant to Condition 6.8 (*Purchases*) and cancelled will be forwarded to the Principal Paying Agent and cannot be reissued or resold.

6.10. Late Payment

If any amount payable in respect of any covered bond is improperly withheld or refused upon its becoming due and payable or is paid after its due date, the amount due and payable in respect of such covered bond (the "**Late Payment**") will itself accrue interest (both before and after any judgment or other order of a court of competent jurisdiction) from (and including) the date on which such payment was improperly withheld or refused or, as the case may be, became due, to (but excluding) the Late Payment Date at the rate determined in accordance with Condition 4.1 (*Interest on Fixed Rate Covered Bonds*) and on the basis of the day count basis specified in the applicable prospectus supplement or, if none is specified, on a 30/360 basis.

For the purpose of this Condition 6.10, the "**Late Payment Date**" will mean the earlier of:

(i) the date which the Bond Trustee determines to be the date on which, upon further presentation of the relevant covered bond, payment of the full amount (including interest as aforesaid) in the relevant currency in respect of such covered bond is to be made; and

(ii) the seventh day after notice is given to the relevant covered bondholder (whether individually or in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*)) that the full amount (including interest as aforesaid) in the relevant currency in respect of such covered bond is available for payment,

provided that in the case of both (i) and (ii), upon further presentation thereof being duly made, such payment is made.

7. Taxation

All payments of principal and interest (if any) in respect of the covered bond by or on behalf of the Bank or the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee, as the case may be, will be made without withholding or deduction for, or on account of any present or future taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges of whatever nature unless such withholding or deduction of such taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges is required by law or regulation or administrative practice of any jurisdiction.

In the event that any payments made by the Bank are or become subject to a withholding or deduction for or on account of any present or future taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges of whatever nature imposed or levied by or on behalf of (i) the Government of Canada or any province, territory or political division thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, or (ii) in the case of covered bonds issued by a branch of the Bank located outside of Canada, the country in which such branch is located or any political subdivision thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, in respect of any payment of principal and interest on the covered bonds, the Bank will pay such additional amounts as will be necessary in order that the net amounts received by the covered bondholders after such withholding or deduction will equal the respective amounts of principal and interest, if any, which would otherwise have been receivable in respect of the covered bonds, as the case may be, in the absence of such withholding or deduction; except that no such additional amounts will be payable with respect to any covered bond presented for payment:

(a) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a covered bondholder who is liable to such taxes, duties, assessments or government charges in respect of such covered bond by reason of such covered bondholder having some connection with Canada or the jurisdiction imposing such tax otherwise than the mere holding of such covered bond;

(b) presented for payment more than 30 days after the Relevant Date except to the extent that the holder thereof would have been entitled to such additional amount on presenting the same for payment on or before such thirtieth day;

100

(c) where such withholding or deduction is imposed on a payment and is required to be made pursuant to European Council Directive 2003/48/EC or any other law implementing or complying with, or introduced in order to conform to, such Directive;

(d) presented for payment by or on behalf of a covered bondholder who would have been able to avoid such withholding or deduction by presenting the relevant covered bond to another Paying Agent in a Member State;

(e) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a covered bondholder in respect of whom such tax, duty, assessment or governmental charge is required to be withheld or deducted by reason of such covered bondholder or other person entitled to payments on the covered bond being a person not dealing at arm's length (within the meaning of the ITA) with the Bank; or

(f) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a covered bondholder who is liable for such taxes, duties, assessments or other charges by reason of such covered bondholder's failure to comply with any certification, identification, documentation or other reporting requirement concerning the nationality, residence, identity or connection with Canada of such covered bondholder, if (i) compliance is required by law as a precondition to, exemption from, or reduction in the rate of, the tax, assessment or other charge and (ii) the Bank has given such covered bondholder or, if such covered bondholder is not the beneficial owner of the covered bond in question, the beneficial owner of such covered bond at least 30 days' notice that such covered bondholder or beneficial owner will be required to provide such certification, identification, documentation or other requirement.

As used herein, the "**Relevant Date**" means the date on which payment in respect of the covered bond first becomes due and payable but, if the full amount of the funds payable on such date has not been received by the Principal Paying Agent or the Bond Trustee on or prior to such date, the Relevant Date will be the date on which such funds will have been so received and notice to that effect has been given to covered bondholders in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*).

If any payments made by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee are or become subject to any withholding or deduction on account of any taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges of whatever nature imposed or levied by or on behalf of Canada or any political subdivision thereof or by any authority therein or thereof having power to tax or, in the case of covered bonds issued by a branch of the Bank located outside of Canada, the country in which such branch is located or any political subdivision thereof or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, the Guarantor will not be obliged to pay any additional amount as a consequence.

8. Prescription

The covered bonds will become void unless presented for payment within 10 years (in the case of principal) and five years (in the case of interest) in each case from the Relevant Date (as defined in Condition 7 (*Taxation*)) therefor, subject in each case to the provisions of Condition 5 (*Payments*).

101

The Bank will be discharged from its obligation to pay principal on a Registered Covered Bond to the extent that the relevant Registered Covered Bond certificate has not been surrendered to the Registrar by, or a check which has been duly dispatched in the specified currency remains uncashed at, the end of the period of 10 years from the Relevant Date for such payment.

The Bank will be discharged from its obligation to pay interest on a Registered Covered Bond to the extent that a check which has been duly dispatched in the specified currency remains uncashed at the end of the period of five years from the Relevant Date in respect of such payment.

9. Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement

9.1. Issuer Events of Default

The Bond Trustee at its discretion may, and if so requested in writing by the holders of at least 25 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds (which for this purpose or the purpose of any Extraordinary Resolution referred to in this Condition 9.1 means the covered bonds of a Series together with the covered bonds of any other Series constituted by the Trust Deed) then outstanding as if they were a single Series (with the nominal amount of covered bonds not denominated in Canadian Dollars converted into Canadian Dollars at the relevant exchange rate specified in the applicable Covered Bond Swap Agreement) or if so directed by an Extraordinary Resolution of all the covered bondholders will (subject in each case to being indemnified and/or secured to its satisfaction), give notice (an "**Issuer Acceleration Notice**") in writing to the Bank that as against the Bank (but not, for the avoidance of doubt, against the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee) each covered bond of each Series is, and each such covered bond will thereupon immediately become, due and repayable at its Early Redemption Amount together with (to the extent not included in the Early Redemption Amount) accrued interest as provided in the Trust Deed if any of the following events (each, an "**Issuer Event of Default**") will occur and be continuing:

(a) if default is made by the Bank for a period of 10 Toronto Business Days or more in the payment of any principal or 30 days or more in the payment of any interest due in respect of the covered bonds or any of them; or

(b) if the Bank fails to perform or observe any of its other obligations not otherwise specified in subparagraph (a) above or subparagraph (f) below under the covered bonds of any Series or the Trust Deed or any other Transaction Documents to which the Bank is a party (other than any dealership agreement, subscription agreement or underwriting agreement), but excluding any obligation of the Bank to comply with the Asset Coverage Test or any Loan Representations and Warranties given by the Bank thereunder or pursuant thereto, and (except where the Bond Trustee considers such failure to be incapable of remedy when no such continuation or notice as is hereinafter referred to will be required) such failure continues for the period of 30 days (or such longer period as the Bond Trustee may permit) after written notice thereof has been given by the Bond Trustee to the Bank requiring the same to be remedied; or

(c) if an Insolvency Event has occurred with respect to the Bank; or

(d) if an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice has been served and not revoked (in accordance with the terms of the Transaction Documents) on or before the immediately succeeding Calculation Date following service of such Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice; or

(e) if the Pre-Maturity Test in respect of any Series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds is breached less than six months prior to the Final Maturity Date of such series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds and the Guarantor has not taken the necessary actions to cure the breach before the earlier to occur of: (i) 10 Toronto Business Days from the date that the Seller is notified of the breach of the Pre-Maturity Test and (ii) the Final Maturity Date of that Series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds; or

(f) if a Ratings Trigger prescribed by the Terms and Conditions or the Transaction Documents (and not otherwise specifically provided for in this Condition 9.1) is breached and the prescribed remedial action is not taken within the specified time period, unless, in respect of any Ratings Trigger other than the Account Bank Required Ratings, the Standby Account Bank Required Ratings, the Servicer Deposit Threshold Ratings or the Cash Management Deposit Ratings, such breach occurs at a time that the Guarantor is Independently Controlled and Governed,

provided that the condition, event or act described in subparagraphs (b) to (e) above will only constitute an Issuer Event of Default if the Bond Trustee has certified in writing to the Bank and the Guarantor that such condition, event or act is, in its opinion, materially prejudicial to the interests of the covered bondholders of any Series.

Upon the covered bonds becoming immediately due and payable against the Bank pursuant to this Condition 9.1, the Bond Trustee will forthwith serve on the Guarantor a notice to pay (the "**Notice to Pay**") pursuant to the Covered Bond Guarantee. If a Notice to Pay has been served, the Guarantor will be required to make payments of Guaranteed Amounts when the same will become Due for Payment in accordance with the terms of the Covered Bond Guarantee and the Trust Deed.

Following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice, the Bond Trustee may or will take such proceedings against the Bank in accordance with the first paragraph of Condition 9.3 (*Enforcement*).

The Trust Deed provides that all funds received by the Bond Trustee from the Bank or any liquidator or person with similar powers appointed in relation to the Bank following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice (the "**Excess Proceeds**"), will be deposited by the Bond Trustee on behalf of the covered bondholders, as soon as practicable, into the GDA Account, and following a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, deposited or paid in such other manner as the Bond Trustee may direct, and in either case, will be distributed in accordance with the applicable Priorities of Payments. The Guarantor has granted a first priority security interest in all Excess Proceeds and, if the Excess Proceeds are deposited into the GDA Account, will be used by the Guarantor in the same manner as all other funds from time to time standing to the credit of the GDA Account and distributed in accordance with the applicable Priorities of Payments.

By subscribing for or purchasing covered bonds, each covered bondholder will be deemed to have irrevocably directed the Bond Trustee to deposit the Excess Proceeds into the GDA Account in the manner described above, or following a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, deposit or pay the Excess Proceeds in such other manner as the Bond Trustee may direct, *provided* that in each case, distributions thereof will be made in accordance with the applicable Priorities of Payments.

Upon deposit of any Excess Proceeds into the GDA Account, the Guarantor will be deemed to have assumed all of the obligations of the Bank (other than the obligation to make any payments in respect of additional amounts which may become payable by the Bank pursuant to Condition 7 (*Taxation*)), and be solely liable as principal obligor, and not as a guarantor, in respect of the obligation to pay to the covered bondholders interest and principal in respect of covered bonds to which the Excess Proceeds relate (to the extent distributable to covered bondholders under the applicable Priorities of Payments), and the covered bondholders will have no rights against the Bank with respect to payment of such Excess Proceeds.

9.2. Guarantor Events of Default

The Bond Trustee at its discretion may, and if so requested in writing by the holders of at least 25 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds (which for this purpose and the purpose of any Extraordinary Resolution referred to in this Condition 9.2 means the covered bonds of a Series together with the covered bonds of any other Series constituted by the Trust Deed) then outstanding as if they were a single Series (with the nominal amount of covered bonds not denominated in Canadian Dollars converted into Canadian Dollars at the relevant exchange rate specified in the applicable Covered Bond Swap Agreement) or if so directed by an Extraordinary Resolution of all the covered bondholders will (subject in each case to being indemnified and/or secured to its satisfaction), give a Guarantor Acceleration Notice in writing to the Bank and the Guarantor, that (i) each covered bond of each Series is, and each covered bond of each Series will as against the Bank (if not already due and repayable against the Bank following service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice), thereupon immediately become, due and repayable at its Early Redemption Amount together with (to the extent not already included in the Early Redemption Amount) accrued interest, and (ii) all amounts payable by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will thereupon immediately become due and payable at the Guaranteed Amount corresponding to the Early Redemption Amount for each covered bond of each Series together with (to the extent not already included in the Early Redemption Amount) accrued interest, in each case as provided in the Trust Deed and thereafter the Security will become enforceable if any of the following events (each, a "**Guarantor Event of Default**") will occur and be continuing:

(a) if default is made by the Guarantor for a period of seven days or more in the payment of any Guaranteed Amounts which are Due for Payment in respect of the covered bonds of any Series except in the case of the payments of a Guaranteed Amount which is Due for Payment under Condition 6.1 (*Final redemption*) when the Guarantor will be required to make payments of Guaranteed Amounts which are Due for Payment on the dates specified therein; or

(b) if default is made by the Guarantor in the performance or observance of any obligation, condition or provision binding on it (other than any obligation for the payment of Guaranteed Amounts in respect of the covered bonds of any Series or

104

as specified in subparagraph (f) below) under the Trust Deed, the Security Agreement or any other Transaction Document to which the Guarantor is a party (other than the obligation of the Guarantor to (i) repay the Demand Loan within 60 days of demand therefor or an obligation to do so pursuant to the terms of the Intercompany Loan Agreement, and (ii) make a payment under a Swap Agreement if it has insufficient funds therefor), and (except where such default is or the effects of such default are, in the opinion of the Bond Trustee, not capable of remedy when no such continuation and notice as is hereinafter mentioned will be required), such default continues for 30 days (or such longer period as the Bond Trustee may permit) after written notice thereof has been given by the Bond Trustee to the Guarantor requiring the same to be remedied; or

(c) if an Insolvency Event has occurred with respect to the Guarantor; or

(d) if there is a failure to satisfy the Amortization Test (as set out in the Guarantor Agreement) on any Calculation Date following an Issuer Event of Default that is continuing; or

(e) if the Covered Bond Guarantee is not, or is claimed by the Guarantor not to be, in full force and effect; or

(f) if a Ratings Trigger prescribed by the Terms and Conditions or the Transaction Documents (and not otherwise specifically provided for in this Condition 9.2) is breached and the prescribed remedial action is not taken within the specified time period, unless, in respect of any Ratings Trigger other than the Account Bank Required Ratings, the Standby Account Bank Required Ratings, the Servicer Deposit Threshold Ratings or the Cash Management Deposit Ratings, such breach occurs at a time that the Guarantor is Independently Controlled and Governed,

provided that the condition, event or act described in subparagraphs (b) to (e) above will only constitute a Guarantor Event of Default if the Bond Trustee has certified in writing to the Bank and the Guarantor that such condition, event or act is, in its opinion, materially prejudicial to the interests of the covered bondholders of any Series.

Following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee may or will take such proceedings or steps in accordance with the first and third paragraphs, respectively, of Condition 9.3 (*Enforcement*).

Upon service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, the covered bondholders will have a claim against the Guarantor, under the Covered Bond Guarantee, for an amount equal to the Early Redemption Amount in respect of each covered bond together with (to the extent not included in the Early Redemption Amount) accrued but unpaid interest and any other amount due under such covered bonds (other than additional amounts payable under Condition 7 (*Taxation*)) as provided in the Trust Deed.

9.3. Enforcement

The Bond Trustee may at any time, at its discretion and without further notice, take such proceedings against the Bank or the Guarantor, as the case may be, and/or any other person as it may think fit to enforce the provisions of the Trust Deed, the covered bonds or any other Transaction Document, but it will not be bound to take any such enforcement proceedings in relation to the Trust Deed, the covered bonds or any other Transaction Document unless (i) it has been so directed by an Extraordinary Resolution of all the covered bondholders of all Series (with the covered bonds of all Series taken together as a single Series as aforesaid) or so requested in writing by the holders of not less than 25 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of all Series then outstanding (taken together and converted into Canadian Dollars at the relevant exchange rate specified in the applicable Covered Bond Swap Agreement as aforesaid or, if the Covered Bond Swap Agreement has terminated, the applicable spot rate), and (ii) it has been indemnified and/or secured to its satisfaction against all liabilities to which it may thereafter render itself liable or which it may incur by so doing.

In exercising any of its powers, trusts, authorities and discretions, the Bond Trustee will, subject to applicable law, only have regard to the interests of the covered bondholders of all Series and will not have regard to the interests of any other Secured Creditors.

The Bond Trustee may at any time, at its discretion and without further notice but subject to applicable law, take such proceedings against the Guarantor and/or any other person as it may think fit to enforce the provisions of the Security Agreement or any other Transaction Document in accordance with its terms and may, at any time after the Security has become enforceable, take such proceedings or steps as it may think fit to enforce the Security, but it will not be bound to take any such proceedings or steps unless (i) it has been so directed by an Extraordinary Resolution of all the covered bondholders of all Series (with the covered bonds of all Series taken together as a single Series as aforesaid) or a request in writing by the holders of not less than 25 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of all Series then outstanding (taken together and converted into Canadian Dollars at the relevant exchange rate specified in the applicable Covered Bond Swap Agreement as aforesaid or, if the Covered Bond Swap Agreement has terminated, the applicable spot rate), and (ii) it has been indemnified and/or secured to its satisfaction against all liabilities to which it may thereafter render itself liable or which it may incur by so doing. In exercising any of its powers, trusts, authorities and discretions under this paragraph, the Bond Trustee will only have regard to the interests of the covered bondholders of all Series and will not have regard to the interests of any other Secured Creditors.

No covered bondholder will be entitled to proceed directly against the Bank or the Guarantor or to take any action with respect to the Trust Deed, any other Transaction Document, the covered bonds, or the Security unless the Bond Trustee having become bound so to proceed, fails to do so within 30 days and such failure is continuing. Notwithstanding any other provision of these Conditions, for so long as there are U.S. Registered Covered Bonds outstanding, in accordance with Section 316(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the right of any holder to receive payment of principal and interest on the covered bonds on or after the due date for such principal or interest, or to institute suit for the enforcement of payment of that principal or interest, may not be impaired or affected without the consent of the holders of the covered bonds, provided that no such right of enforcement will exist (i) in respect of a postponement of an interest payment which has been consented to by the holders of the covered bonds in accordance with the Trust Deed or (ii) to the extent that the institution or prosecution of such suit or the entry of judgment therein would, under applicable law, result in the surrender, impairment, waiver or loss of the security granted pursuant to the Trust Deed or the relevant Security Agreements upon any property subject to such security.

10. Replacement of Covered Bonds

If any covered bond is lost, stolen, mutilated, defaced or destroyed, it may be replaced at the specified office of the Registrar (in the case of Registered Covered Bonds), or any other place approved by the Bond Trustee of which notice has been given to the covered bondholders in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*) upon payment by the claimant of such costs and expenses as may be incurred in connection therewith and on such terms as to evidence and indemnity as the Bank may reasonably require. Mutilated or defaced covered bonds must be surrendered before replacements will be issued.

11. Principal Paying Agent, Paying Agents, Registrar, Transfer Agent and Exchange Agent

The Bank is entitled, with the prior written approval of the Bond Trustee, to vary or terminate the appointment of any Agent and/or appoint additional or other Agents and/or approve any change in the specified office through which any Agent acts, *provided* that:

(a) there will at all times be a Principal Paying Agent and a Registrar;

(b) the Bank will, so long as any covered bond is outstanding, maintain a Paying Agent (which may be the Principal Paying Agent) having a specified office in a city in Europe approved by the Bond Trustee;

(c) so long as any covered bond is listed on any stock exchange or admitted to listing or trading by any other relevant authority, there will at all times be a Transfer Agent (in the case of Registered Covered Bonds) with a specified office in such place as may be required by the rules and regulations of the relevant stock exchange or, as the case may be, other relevant authority;

(d) so long as any of the registered global covered bonds payable in a currency other than U.S. Dollars are held through DTC or its nominee, there will at all times be an Exchange Agent; and

(e) the Bank will ensure that it maintains a Paying Agent in a Member State that will not be obliged to withhold or deduct tax pursuant to European Council Directive 2003/48/EC on the taxation of savings income or any other Directive implementing the conclusions of the ECOFIN Council Meeting of November 26 to 27, 2000 or any law implementing or complying with, or introduced in order to conform to any such Directive, provided that the Bank will not, under any circumstances, be obliged to maintain a Paying Agent with a specified office in such Member State unless at least one European Member State does not require a Paying Agent making payments through a specified office in that Member State to so withhold or deduct tax.

In addition, the Bank will forthwith appoint a Paying Agent having a specified office in the United States in the circumstances described in Condition 5.5 (*General provisions applicable to payments*). Notice of any such variation, termination, appointment or change will be given by the Bank to the covered bondholders as soon as reasonably practicable in accordance with Condition 13 (*Notices*).

In acting under the Agency Agreement, the Agents act solely as agents of the Bank and the Guarantor and, in certain circumstances specified therein, of the Bond Trustee and do not assume any obligation to, or relationship of agency or trust with, any covered bondholders. The Agency Agreement contains provisions permitting any entity into which any Agent is merged or converted or with which it is consolidated or to which it transfers all or substantially all of its assets to become the successor agent.

12. [Reserved]

13. Notices

All notices regarding the Registered Covered Bonds will be deemed to be validly given if sent by first class mail or (if posted to an address overseas) by airmail to the holders (or the first named of joint holders) at their respective addresses recorded in the Register and will be deemed to have been given on the fourth day after mailing.

The Bond Trustee will be at liberty to sanction some other method of giving notice to the covered bondholders if, in its opinion, such other method is reasonable having regard to market practice then prevailing and to the requirements of the stock exchange on which the relevant covered bonds are then admitted to trading and *provided* that notice of such other method is given to the covered bondholders in such manner as the Bond Trustee will require.

Notices to be given by any covered bondholder will be in writing and given by lodging the same, together (in the case of any covered bond in definitive form) with the relevant covered bond or covered bonds, with the Registrar (in the case of Registered Covered Bonds). While any of the covered bonds are represented by a Global Covered Bond, such notice may be given by any holder of a covered bond to the Principal Paying Agent or the Registrar through DTC in such manner as the Principal Paying Agent, the Registrar and DTC may approve for this purpose.

14. Meetings of Covered Bondholders, Modification, Waiver and Substitution

Covered bondholders and other Secured Creditors should note that the Bank, the Guarantor and the Principal Paying Agent may without their consent or the consent of the Bond Trustee agree to modify any provision of any prospectus supplement which is of a formal, minor or technical nature or is made to correct a proven or manifest error or to comply with any mandatory provisions of law.

The Trust Deed contains provisions for convening meetings of the covered bondholders of any Series to consider any matter affecting their interests, including the modification by Extraordinary Resolution of these Terms and Conditions or the provisions of the Trust Deed. Such a meeting may be convened by the Bank, the Guarantor or the Bond Trustee and will be convened by the Bank at the request in writing of covered bondholders holding not less than 10 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of such Series for the time being outstanding. The quorum at any such meeting in respect of any covered bonds of any Series for passing an Extraordinary Resolution is one or more persons holding or representing not less than a clear majority of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of such Series for the time being outstanding, or at any adjourned meeting one or more persons being or representing covered bondholders of such Series whatever the nominal amount of the covered bonds of such Series so held or represented, except that at any meeting the business of which includes the modification of any Series Reserved Matter, the quorum will be one or more persons holding or representing not less than two thirds of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of such Series for the time being outstanding, or at any adjourned such meeting one or more persons holding or representing not less than one third of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of such Series for the time being outstanding. An Extraordinary Resolution passed at any meeting of the covered bondholders of a Series will, subject as provided below, be binding on all the covered bondholders of such Series, whether or not they are present at the meeting. Pursuant to the Trust Deed, the Bond Trustee may convene a single meeting of the covered bondholders of more than one Series if in the opinion of the Bond Trustee there is no conflict between the holders of such covered bonds, in which event the provisions of this paragraph will apply thereto *mutatis mutandis*.

Notwithstanding the provisions of the immediately preceding paragraph, any Extraordinary Resolution to direct the Bond Trustee to accelerate the covered bonds pursuant to Condition 9 (*Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement*) or to direct the Bond Trustee to take any enforcement action pursuant to Condition 9 (*Events of Default, Acceleration and Enforcement*) (each a "**Program Resolution**") will only be capable of being passed at a single meeting of the holders of the covered bonds of all Series then outstanding. Any such meeting to consider a Program Resolution may be convened by the Bank, the Guarantor or the Bond Trustee or by covered bondholders, in the case of a direction to accelerate the covered bonds pursuant to Conditions 9.1 (*Issuer Events of Default*) and 9.2 (*Guarantor Events of Default*) or to take enforcement action pursuant to Condition 9.3 (*Enforcement*), holding at least 25 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of all Series then outstanding. The quorum at any such meeting for passing a Program Resolution is one or more persons holding or representing at least a clear majority of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds of all Series for the time being outstanding, or at any adjourned such meeting one or more persons holding or representing covered bonds whatever the nominal amount of the covered bonds of all Series then outstanding. A Program Resolution passed at any meeting of the covered bondholders of all Series will be binding on all covered bondholders of all Series, whether or not they are present at the meeting.

In connection with any meeting of the covered bondholders of more than one Series where such covered bonds are not denominated in Canadian Dollars, the nominal amount of the covered bonds of any Series not denominated in Canadian Dollars will be converted into Canadian Dollars at the relevant exchange rate specified in the applicable Covered Bond Swap Agreement.

The Bond Trustee, the Guarantor and the Bank may also agree, without the consent of the covered bondholders and without the consent of the other Secured Creditors (and for this purpose the Bond Trustee may disregard whether any such modification relates to a Series Reserved Matter), to:

(a) any modification of the terms and conditions applying to covered bonds of one or more Series (including these Terms and Conditions) or any Transaction Document *provided* that in the sole opinion of the Bond Trustee such modification is not materially prejudicial to the interests of any of the covered bondholders of any Series; or

(b) any modification of the terms and conditions applying to covered bonds of any one or more Series (including these Terms and Conditions) or any Transaction Document which is in the sole opinion of the Bond Trustee of a formal, minor or technical nature or is to correct a manifest error or an error which is, in the sole opinion of the Bond Trustee, proven, or is to comply with mandatory provisions of law.

Notwithstanding the above, the Bank, the Guarantor and the Principal Paying Agent may agree, without the consent of the Bond Trustee, the covered bondholders or any of the other Secured Creditors, to any modification of any of the provisions of any prospectus supplement which is of a formal, minor or technical nature or is made to correct a proven or manifest error or to comply with any mandatory provisions of law.

The Bond Trustee may also agree, without the consent of the covered bondholders of any Series, to the waiver or authorization of any breach or proposed breach of any of the provisions of the covered bonds of any Series, or determine, without any such consent as aforesaid, that any Issuer Event of Default or Guarantor Event of Default or Potential Issuer Event of Default or Potential Guarantor Event of Default will not be treated as such, *provided* that, in any such case, it is not, in the sole opinion of the Bond Trustee, materially prejudicial to the interests of any of the covered bondholders of any Series. The Bond Trustee may also agree, without the consent of the covered bondholders of any Series or any other Secured Creditor, to the waiver or authorization of any breach or proposed breach of any of the provisions of the Transaction Documents, *provided* that, in any such case, it is not, in the sole opinion of the Bond Trustee, materially prejudicial to the interests of any of the covered bondholders of any Series.

Any such modification, waiver, authorization or determination will be binding on all covered bondholders of all Series of covered bonds and the other Secured Creditors, any such modification will be notified by the Bank to the covered bondholders of all Series of covered bonds for the time being outstanding and the other Secured Creditors in accordance with the relevant Terms and Conditions as soon as practicable thereafter. Notwithstanding any other provision of these Conditions, for so long as there are U.S. Registered Covered Bonds outstanding, any such modification, waiver, authorization or determination will be made in accordance with and subject to Section 316 of the Trust Indenture Act. The right of any holder of U.S. Registered Covered Bonds to receive payment of principal and interest will not be impaired unless made in accordance with Section 316 of the Trust Indenture Act.

In connection with the exercise by it of any of its trusts, powers, authorities and discretions (including, without limitation, any modification, waiver, authorization or determination), the Bond Trustee will have regard to the general interests of the covered bondholders of each Series as a class (but will not have regard to any interests arising from circumstances particular to individual covered bondholders (whatever their number)) and, in particular, but without limitation, will not have regard to the consequences of any such exercise for individual covered bondholders (whatever their number) resulting from their being for any purpose domiciled or resident in, or otherwise connected with, or subject to the jurisdiction of, any particular territory or any political subdivision thereof and the Bond Trustee will not be entitled to require, nor will any covered bondholder be entitled to claim, from the Bank, the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee or any other person any indemnification or payment in respect of any Tax or stamp duty consequences of any such exercise upon individual covered bondholders, except to the extent already provided for in Condition 7 (*Taxation*) and/or in any undertaking or covenant given in addition to, or in substitution for, Condition 7 (*Taxation*) pursuant to the Trust Deed.

Provided that the Bond Trustee has received a certificate signed by two authorized signatories of the Bank and a certificate from the Guarantor stating that immediately after giving effect to the matters set out below in this paragraph, no Issuer Event of Default or Potential Issuer Event of Default (in respect of the Bank) or Guarantor Event of Default or Potential Guarantor Event of Default (in respect of the Guarantor), respectively, has occurred and is continuing and certain other conditions as are specified in the Trust Deed are satisfied, but without the consent of the covered bondholders of any Series, or of any other Secured Creditor, another subsidiary of the Bank or any direct or indirect holding company of the Bank may assume the obligations of the Bank as principal obligor under the Trust Deed and the other Transaction Documents in respect of all Series of covered bonds on the same basis. The Trust Deed provides that any such assumption will be notified to the holders of all Series of covered bonds (in accordance with the relevant Terms and Conditions of such covered bonds).

For the purposes hereof:

"**Potential Issuer Event of Default**" means any condition, event or act which, with the lapse of time and/or the issue, making or giving of any notice, certification, declaration, demand, determination and/or request and/or the taking of any similar action and/or the fulfillment of any similar condition, would constitute an Issuer Event of Default; and

"**Potential Guarantor Event of Default**" means any condition, event or act which, with the lapse of time and/or the issue, making or giving of any notice, certification, declaration, demand, determination and/or request and/or the taking of any similar action and/or the fulfillment of any similar condition, would constitute a Guarantor Event of Default.

15. Indemnification of the Bond Trustee. Contracting with the Bank and/or the Guarantor
If, in connection with the exercise of its powers, trusts, authorities or discretions, the Bond Trustee is of the opinion that the interests of the covered bondholders of any one or more Series would be materially prejudiced thereby, the Bond Trustee will not exercise such power, trust, authority or discretion without the approval of such covered bondholders by Extraordinary Resolution or by a direction in writing of such covered bondholders of at least 25 percent of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of covered bonds of the relevant Series then outstanding.

The Trust Deed and the Security Agreement contain provisions for the indemnification of the Bond Trustee and for its relief from responsibility, including provisions relieving it from taking any action unless indemnified and/or secured to its satisfaction.

The Trust Deed and the Security Agreement also contain provisions pursuant to which the Bond Trustee is entitled, *inter alia*: (i) to enter into business transactions with the Bank, the Guarantor and/or any of the Bank's subsidiaries and to act as trustee for the holders of any other securities issued or guaranteed by, or relating to, the Bank, the Guarantor and/or any of the Bank's subsidiaries; (ii) to exercise and enforce its rights, comply with its obligations and perform its duties under or in relation to any such transactions or, as the case may be, any such trusteeship without regard to the interests of, or consequences for, the covered bondholders or any other Secured Creditors; and (iii) to retain and not be liable to account for any profit made or any other amount or benefit received thereby or in connection therewith.

The Bond Trustee will not be responsible for any loss, expense or liability, which may be suffered as a result of any Loans or their Related Security, or any deeds or documents of title thereto, being uninsured or inadequately insured or being held by clearing organizations or their operators or by intermediaries such as banks, brokers or other similar persons on behalf of the Bond Trustee. The Bond Trustee will be responsible for: (i) supervising the performance by the Bank, the Guarantor or any other party to the Transaction Documents of their respective obligations under the Transaction Documents, and the Bond Trustee will be entitled to assume, until it has received written notice to the contrary, that all such persons are properly performing their duties; (ii) considering the basis on which approvals or consents are granted by the Bank, the Guarantor or any other party to the Transaction Documents under the Transaction Documents; (iii) monitoring the Portfolio, including, without limitation, whether the Portfolio is in compliance with the Asset Coverage Test or the Amortization Test; or (iv) monitoring whether Loans and their Related Security satisfy the Eligibility Criteria. The Bond Trustee will not be liable to any covered bondholder or other Secured Creditor for any failure to make or to cause to be made on its behalf the searches, investigations and enquiries which would normally be made by a prudent chargee in relation to the Security and has no responsibility in relation to the legality, validity, sufficiency and enforceability of the Security and the Transaction Documents.

16. Further Issues

The Bank will be at liberty from time to time (but subject to the Terms and Conditions) without the consent of the covered bondholders or any Secured Creditors to create and issue further covered bonds having terms and conditions the same as the covered bonds of any Series or the same in all respects and guaranteed by the Guarantor save for the amount and date of the first payment of interest thereon, Issue Date and/or Issue Price and so that the same will be consolidated and form a single Series with the outstanding covered bonds of such Series.

17. Rating Agency Condition

By subscribing for or purchasing the covered bond(s), each covered bondholder will be deemed to have acknowledged and agreed that a credit rating of a Series of covered bonds is an assessment of credit risk and does not address other matters that may be of relevance to covered bondholders, including, without limitation, in the case of satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition, whether the related action or event is either (i) permitted by the terms of the relevant Transaction Document, or (ii) in the best interests of, or not prejudicial to, some or all of the covered bondholders.

With regard to the requirement for satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition with respect to a particular Rating Agency, each of the Bank, the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee and the Secured Creditors (including the covered bondholders) is deemed to have acknowledged and agreed that the satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition does not impose or extend any actual or contingent liability on the Rating Agencies to the Bank, the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee, the Secured Creditors (including the covered bondholders) or any other person or create any legal relations between the Rating Agencies and the Bank, the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee, the Secured Creditors (including the covered bondholders) or any other person whether by way of contract or otherwise.

By subscribing for or purchasing the covered bond(s), each covered bondholder will be deemed to have acknowledged and agreed that:

(a) confirmation of the satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition, to the extent required, may or may not be given at the sole discretion of each Rating Agency;

(b) depending on the timing of delivery of the request and any information needed to be provided as part of any such request, it may be the case that a Rating Agency cannot provide confirmation of the satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition in the time available, or at all, and the Rating Agency will not be responsible for the consequences thereof;

(c) a confirmation of satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition, if given, will be given on the basis of the facts and circumstances prevailing at the relevant time, and in the context of cumulative changes to the transaction of which the covered bonds form a part; and

(d) a confirmation of satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition represents only a restatement of the opinions given, and will not be construed as advice for the benefit of any covered bondholder or any other party.

If satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition is a condition to any action or step under any Transaction Document or is otherwise required, or a written request for such a confirmation of satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition is delivered to that Rating Agency by any of the Bank, the Guarantor, and/or the Bond Trustee, as applicable (each, a "**Requesting Party**"), and either (i) one or more of the Rating Agencies indicates that it does not consider satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition necessary in the circumstances or (ii) no such confirmation or other response is received by one or more of the Rating Agencies within 30 days (or in the case of Moody's or Fitch, 10 Business Days) of the date of actual receipt of such request by such Rating Agency (each, a "**Non-Responsive Rating Agency**"), the Requesting Party will be entitled to disregard the requirement for satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition with respect to the Non-Responsive Rating Agency and proceed on the basis of the confirmations or other responses received by each other Rating Agency on the basis that satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition with respect to the Non-Responsive Rating Agency is not required in the particular circumstances of the request. The failure by a Rating Agency to respond to a written request for a confirmation of satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition will not be interpreted to mean that such Rating Agency has given any deemed confirmation or affirmation of rating or other response in respect of such action or step.

18. Governing Law

The Trust Deed, the Agency Agreement, the covered bonds, the Interest Rate Swap Agreement, the Covered Bond Swap Agreement, the Security Agreement, the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Servicing Agreement, the Guarantor Agreement, the Intercompany Loan Agreement, the Cash Management Agreement, the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement, the Bank Account Agreement, the Standby Bank Account Agreement, the Guaranteed Deposit Account Contract and the Standby Guaranteed Deposit Account Contract will be governed by and construed in accordance with, the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein, unless otherwise indicated. The Underwriting Agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of New York.

SUMMARY OF THE PRINCIPAL DOCUMENTS

The principal document governing the relationship of the Bank and a purchaser of covered bonds is the Trust Deed and the Terms and Conditions attached to each covered bond. See *"Terms and Conditions of the Covered Bonds*."

Prospectus Supplement

The prospectus supplement for a Series of covered bonds will set forth the specific terms of the covered bonds, including the currency for all payments, the applicable interest rate, interest payment dates, the maturity date, call or put option features applicable, and optional redemption features. The prospectus supplement may also provide modifications of or additions to the Terms and Conditions. Also, the prospectus supplement will include statistical disclosure of the Portfolio and historical information about the Portfolio, stratified by year of origination of the Loans.

Information about the providers of the Interest Rate Swap Agreement and the related Covered Bond Swap Agreement and, if not the Bank, the GDA Account will be included in the prospectus supplement.

A review by the Bank of randomly selected Loans in the Portfolio will be described in the prospectus supplement, together with the findings of that review.

Trust Deed

The Trust Deed, made between the Bank, the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee is the principal agreement governing the covered bonds. The Trust Deed contains provisions relating to, *inter alia*:

- the constitution of the covered bonds and the Terms and Conditions of the covered bonds (as more fully set out under "*Terms and Conditions of the Covered Bonds*" above);
- the covenants of the Bank and the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee;
- the terms of the Covered Bond Guarantee (as described below);
- the enforcement procedures relating to the covered bonds and the Covered Bond Guarantee; and
- the appointment, powers and responsibilities of the Bond Trustee and the circumstances in which the Bond Trustee may resign, or retire or be removed.

The Bond Trustee

Computershare Trust Company of Canada has been appointed the Bond Trustee under the Trust Deed. The Bank may maintain other banking relationships in the ordinary course of business with the Bond Trustee.

Computershare Trust Company of Canada is a trust company incorporated under the laws of Canada, whose registered office is at 100 University Avenue, 9th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5J 2Y1. Computershare Trust Company of Canada has acted as trustee on numerous covered bond programs since November 2007 and on asset-backed securities transactions involving pools of mortgage loans since 1990. While the structure of the transactions referred to in the preceding sentence may differ among such transactions, Computershare Trust Company of Canada is experienced in administering transactions of the kind contemplated by this prospectus.

Computershare Trust Company of Canada has provided the information in the prior paragraph. Other than the prior paragraph, Computershare Trust Company of Canada has not participated in the preparation of, and is not responsible for, any other information contained in this prospectus or the prospectus supplement.

The Bond Trustee will be required to perform only those duties specifically required of it under the Transaction Documents, as described below. Upon receipt of the various certificates, statements, reports or other instruments required to be furnished to it, the Bond Trustee will be required to examine them to determine whether they are in the form required the applicable Transaction Document; however, the Bond Trustee will not be responsible for the accuracy or content of any documents furnished to it.

The Bond Trustee will not be responsible for (a) the calculation of payments to holders of the covered bonds; (b) compliance with covenants under the Transaction Documents; (c) the substitution, purchase or removal of Portfolio assets; or (d) the maintenance of data regarding the Asset Coverage Test, Amortization Test, Pre-Maturity Test or the Valuation Calculation, among others.

As compensation for the performance of its obligations under the Trust Deed, the Bond Trustee will receive reasonable compensation as provided in the Trust Deed.

The Trust Deed contains provisions for the indemnification of the Bond Trustee and its officers, directors, employees and agents for any loss, claims, damages, suits, liability or expense incurred without gross negligence, willful misconduct, dishonesty, reckless disregard or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the Trust Deed.

The Bond Trustee may retire at any time on giving not less than three months' prior written notice to the Bank and the Guarantor. The Bond Trustee may be removed (i) by the covered bondholders in accordance with the terms of an Extraordinary Resolution, or (ii) by the Guarantor in the event that there is a breach by the Bond Trustee of certain representations and warranties or a failure by the Bond Trustee to perform certain covenants made by it under the Trust Deed. Other than in respect of a removal described in clause (ii) of the previous sentence, no retirement or removal of the Bond Trustee will be effective until a replacement bond trustee that meets the requirements provided for in the Trust Deed and in the CMHC Guide has been appointed. In the event that a replacement bond trustee has not been appointed within 60 days of notice of retirement from the Bond Trustee or the Extraordinary Resolution of the covered bondholders, as applicable, the Bond Trustee will be entitled to appoint a replacement bond trustee that meets the requirements provided for in the Trust Deed and in the CMHC Guide, which appointment must be approved by an Extraordinary Resolution of the covered bondholders prior to taking effect.

So long as there are U.S. Registered Covered Bonds outstanding, the Bond Trustee (or if there is more than one bond trustee at least one bond trustee) will be a trustee qualified to act under the Trust Indenture Act.

Trust Indenture Act

The Trust Deed includes certain provisions required by the Trust Indenture Act. These provisions include, but are not limited to:

- maintenance of a covered bondholder list by the Bond Trustee;
- provision of annual reports and other information by the Bank to the Bond Trustee;
- ability of covered bondholders to waive certain past defaults of the Bank;
- duty of the Bond Trustee (following an Issuer Event of Default) to use the same degree of care in exercising its responsibilities as would be exercised by a prudent person conducting their own affairs;
- duty of the Bond Trustee to notify all covered bondholders of any Issuer Event of Default of which it has actual knowledge; and
- the right of each covered bondholder to receive payments of principal and interest on a covered bond on or after the respective due dates expressed in the covered bond, or to bring suit for enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates.

Further, in compliance with Section 315(d) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trust Deed provides that nothing in the Trust Deed will, in any case in which the Bond Trustee has failed to show the degree of care and diligence required of it as Bond Trustee having regard to the provisions of the Trust Deed conferring on the Bond Trustee any powers, authorities or any discretion, exempt the Bond Trustee from or indemnify the Bond Trustee against any liability for breach of trust. The Trust Deed will be discharged with respect to the Covered Bond Guarantee and collateral securing such Covered Bond Guarantee upon the delivery to the Bond Trustee for cancellation of all the covered bonds or, with certain limitations, upon deposit with the Bond Trustee of funds sufficient for the payment in full of all covered bonds outstanding.

Trust Indenture Act Prevails

The Trust Deed contains a stipulation that, if any provision of the Trust Deed limits, qualifies or conflicts with another provision which is required to be included in the Trust Deed by, and is not subject to a contractual waiver under, the Trust Indenture Act, the required provision of the Trust Indenture Act will be deemed to be incorporated into the Trust Deed and prevail; provided that all provisions relating to the Trust Indenture Act will only apply to U.S. Registered Covered Bonds.

Covered Bond Guarantee

Under the terms of the Covered Bond Guarantee, if the Bank defaults in the payment on the due date of any moneys due and payable under or pursuant to the Trust Deed or the covered bonds, or if any other Issuer Event of Default occurs (other than by reason of non-payment), and, in either case, if the Bond Trustee has served an Issuer Acceleration Notice, the Guarantor has agreed (subject as described below) to pay or procure to be paid (following service of a Notice to Pay) unconditionally and irrevocably to or to the order of the Bond Trustee (for the benefit of the covered bondholders) an amount equal to that portion of the Guaranteed Amounts which will become Due for Payment but would otherwise be unpaid, as of any Original Due for Payment Date or, if applicable, the Extended Due for Payment Date, by the Bank. Payment by the Guarantor of the Guaranteed Amounts pursuant to the Covered Bond Guarantee will be made on the later of (a) the day which is two Toronto Business Days following service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor and (b) the day on which the Guaranteed Amounts are otherwise Due for Payment (the "**Guaranteed Amounts Due Date**"). In addition, the Guarantor will, to the extent it has funds available to it, make payments in respect of the unpaid portion of the Final Redemption Amount on any Original Due for Payment Date up until the Extended Due for Payment Date. The Bond Trustee will be required to serve a Notice to Pay following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice.

Under the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guaranteed Amounts will become due and payable on any earlier date on which, following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default, a Guarantor Acceleration Notice is served in accordance with Condition 9.2 (*Guarantor Events of Default*). Following service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, the covered bonds will (if an Issuer Acceleration Notice has not already been served) become immediately due and payable as against the Bank and the obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be accelerated.

All payments of Guaranteed Amounts by or on behalf of the Guarantor will be made without withholding or deduction for, or on account of, any present or future taxes, duties, assessments or other governmental charges of whatever nature, unless the withholding or deduction of such taxes, assessments or other governmental charges are required by law or regulation or administrative practice of Canada or any political subdivision thereof or any authority therein or thereof having the power to tax. If any such withholding or deduction is required, the Guarantor will pay the Guaranteed Amounts net of such withholding or deduction and will account to the appropriate tax authority for the amount required to be withheld or deducted. The Guarantor will not be obliged to pay any amount to the Bond Trustee or any holder of covered bonds in respect of the amount of such withholding or deduction. See further, "*Taxation—Canadian Taxation—Holders Not Resident in Canada—Payments by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee*."

Under the terms of the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guarantor has agreed that its obligations under the Covered Bond Guarantee will be as guarantor and will be absolute and unconditional (subject to Notice to Pay being given), irrespective of, and unaffected by, any invalidity, irregularity or unenforceability of, or defect in, any provisions of the Trust Deed or the covered bonds or the absence of any action to enforce the same or the waiver, modification or consent by the Bond Trustee or any of the covered bondholders in respect of any provisions of the same or the obtaining of any judgment or decree against the Bank or any action to enforce the same or any other circumstances which might otherwise constitute a legal or equitable discharge or defense of a guarantor.

As consideration for providing the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Guarantor will be entitled to receive guarantee fees from the Bank as agreed between the Bank and the Guarantor from time to time in accordance with the Trust Deed. Any failure on the part of the Bank to pay all or any part of the guarantee fees will not affect the obligations of the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee.

Subject to the grace period specified in Condition 9.2 (*Guarantor Events of Default*), failure by the Guarantor to pay the Guaranteed Amounts which are Due for Payment on the relevant Guaranteed Amounts Due Date will result in a Guarantor Event of Default.

The Trust Deed provides that any Excess Proceeds will be paid by the Bond Trustee on behalf of the covered bondholders of the relevant Series to the Guarantor for its own account, as soon as practicable, and will be held by the Guarantor in the GDA Account and the Excess Proceeds will thereafter form part of the Security and will be used by the Guarantor in the same manner as all other moneys from time to time standing to the credit of the GDA Account.

By subscribing for or purchasing covered bond(s), each covered bondholder will be deemed to have irrevocably directed the Bond Trustee to pay the Excess Proceeds to the Guarantor in the manner as described above.

Exchange Rate Indemnity

Pursuant to the terms of the Trust Deed, each of the Bank and, following the occurrence of a Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event, the Guarantor, will jointly and severally indemnify the Bond Trustee and the covered bondholders and keep them indemnified against:

(a) any liability incurred by any of them arising from the non payment by the Bank or the Guarantor of any amount due to the Bond Trustee or the covered bondholders hereunder by reason of any variation in the rates of exchange between those used for the purposes of calculating the amount due under a judgment or order in respect thereof and those prevailing at the date of actual payment by the Bank or the Guarantor; and

(b) any deficiency arising or resulting from any variation in rates of exchange between (i) the date as of which the local currency equivalent of the amounts due or contingently due under the Trust Deed is calculated for the purposes of any bankruptcy, insolvency or liquidation of the Bank or, as the case may be, the Guarantor; and (ii) the final date for ascertaining the amount of claims in such bankruptcy, insolvency or liquidation. The amount of such deficiency will be deemed not to be reduced by any variation in rates of exchange occurring between the said final date and the date of any distribution of assets in connection with any such bankruptcy, insolvency or liquidation.

Such indemnities will constitute obligations of the Bank and the Guarantor separate and independent from their other obligations under the other provisions under the Trust Deed and will apply irrespective of any indulgence granted by the Bond Trustee or the covered bondholders from time to time and will continue in full force and effect notwithstanding the judgment or filing of any proof or proofs in any bankruptcy, insolvency or liquidation of the Bank or, as the case may be, the Guarantor for a liquidated sum or sums in respect of amounts due under the Trust Deed. Any deficiency will be deemed to constitute a loss suffered by the covered bondholders and no proof or evidence of any actual loss will be required by the Bank or the Guarantor or its or their liquidator or liquidators.

The Trust Deed, including the provisions of the Covered Bond Guarantee, is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and federal laws of Canada applicable therein.

Intercompany Loan Agreement

The Intercompany Loan Agreement between the Bank, the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee as amended and/or restated and/or supplemented from time to time, is the governing agreement with respect to the Intercompany Loan.

Under the Intercompany Loan Agreement, the Bank represents and warrants to, and covenants with, the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee that as of the date of the Intercompany Loan Agreement and for so long as it remains a party to the Intercompany Loan Agreement: (i) it possesses the necessary experience, qualifications, facilities and other resources to perform its responsibilities in relation to its duties and obligations thereunder and under the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party; (ii) it is and will continue to be in good standing with OSFI; (iii) it is and will continue to be in regulatory good standing and in material compliance with and under all laws applicable to its duties and obligations thereunder and under the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party; and (iv) it is and will continue to be in material compliance with its internal policies and procedures (including risk management policies) relevant to its duties and obligations thereunder and under the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

Under the terms of the Intercompany Loan Agreement, prior to the issuance of the first Series of covered bonds, the Bank will make available to the Guarantor an interest-bearing Intercompany Loan comprised of a Guarantee Loan and a revolving Demand Loan, in an initial combined aggregate amount equal to the Total Credit Commitment, subject to increases and decreases as described below. The initial advance on the Intercompany Loan will be an amount sufficient to acquire the Initial Portfolio. The Intercompany Loan is denominated in Canadian Dollars. The interest rate on the Intercompany Loan will be a Canadian Dollar floating rate determined by the Bank from time to time, subject to a maximum of (i) prior to the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date, the yield on the Portfolio, and (ii) following the Interest Rate Swap Effective Date, the amount received by the Guarantor pursuant to the Interest Rate Swap Agreement, and, in each case, less a minimum spread and an amount for certain expenses of the Guarantor.

The Guarantee Loan will be in an amount equal to the balance of outstanding covered bonds at any relevant time plus that portion of the Portfolio required to collateralize the covered bonds to ensure that the Asset Coverage Test is met (see *"—Guarantor Agreement—Asset Coverage Test"*). The Demand Loan is a revolving credit facility, the outstanding balance of which will be equal to the difference between the balance of the Intercompany Loan and the balance of the Guarantee Loan at any relevant time. The balance of the Guarantee Loan and Demand Loan will fluctuate with the issuances and redemptions of covered bonds and the requirements of the Asset Coverage Test.

At any time prior to a Demand Loan Repayment Event, the Guarantor may re-borrow any amount repaid by the Guarantor under the Intercompany Loan for a permitted purpose provided, among other things: (i) such drawing does not result in the Intercompany Loan exceeding the Total Credit Commitment; and (ii) no Issuer Event of Default or Guarantor Event of Default has occurred and is continuing. Unless otherwise agreed to by the Bank and subject to satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition, no further advances will be made to the Guarantor under the Intercompany Loan following the occurrence of a Demand Loan Repayment Event.

To the extent the Portfolio increases or is required to be increased to meet the Asset Coverage Test, the Bank may increase the Total Credit Commitment to enable the Guarantor to acquire Loans and their Related Security from the Seller.

The Demand Loan or any portion thereof will be repayable no later than the first Toronto Business Day following 60 days after a demand therefor is served to the Guarantor unless (i) a Demand Loan Repayment Event has occurred and is continuing (see below in respect of the repayment of the Demand Loan in such circumstance) or (ii) the Asset Coverage Test will not be satisfied on the date of repayment after giving effect to such repayment. At any time the Guarantor makes a repayment on the Demand Loan, in whole or in part, the Cash Manager will calculate the Asset Coverage Test, as of the date of repayment, to confirm the then outstanding balance on the Demand Loan and that the Asset Coverage Test will be met on the date of repayment after giving effect to such repayment.

If (i) the Bank is required to assign the Interest Rate Swap Agreement to a third party (due to a failure by the Bank to meet the ratings levels specified in the Interest Rate Swap Agreement or as otherwise required by the Interest Rate Swap Agreement); (ii) a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor; (iii) the Intercompany Loan Agreement is terminated; or (iv) to the extent Fitch is a Rating Agency, if the Bank is assigned (x) a short-term issuer default rating by Fitch of less than F2, or (y) a long-term issuer default rating by Fitch of less than BBB+ (each of (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv), a "**Demand Loan Repayment Event**"), the Guarantor will, subject to the applicable Priorities of Payments, be required to repay any amount of the Demand Loan that exceeds the Demand Loan Contingent Amount on the first Guarantor Payment Date following 60 days after the occurrence of such Demand Loan Repayment Event. Following such Demand Loan Repayment Event, the Guarantor will be required to repay the full amount of the then outstanding Demand Loan on the date on which the Asset Percentage is calculated (whether or not such calculation is a scheduled calculation or a calculation made at the request of the Bank); provided that the Asset Coverage Test will be met on the date of repayment after giving effect to such repayment. For the purposes of the foregoing, the "**Demand Loan Contingent Amount**" will be equal to the lesser of:

(i) the aggregate amount of the Intercompany Loan then outstanding, minus the aggregate amount of the Guarantee Loan then outstanding (as determined by an Asset Coverage Test run on the relevant repayment date); and

(ii) 1 percent of the amount of the Guarantee Loan then outstanding (as determined by an Asset Coverage Test calculated on the relevant repayment date),

provided, for greater certainty, that in calculating the amount of the Guarantee Loan and the Demand Loan for purposes of determining the Demand Loan Contingent Amount, no credit will be given to the Guarantor in the Asset Coverage Test for any Excess Proceeds received by the Guarantor from the Bond Trustee.

The Guarantor may repay the principal on the Intercompany Loan in accordance with the Priorities of Payment and the terms of the Intercompany Loan Agreement, using (i) funds being held for the account of the Guarantor by its service providers and/or funds in the Guarantor

Accounts (other than any amount in the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger); and/or, (ii) proceeds from the sale of Substitute Assets; and/or (iii) proceeds from the sale, pursuant to the Guarantor Agreement, of Portfolio assets to the Seller or to another person subject to a right of pre-emption on the part of the Seller; and/or (iv) by selling, transferring and assigning to the Seller all of the Guarantor’s right, title and interest in and to Loans and their Related Security (a “**Payment in Kind**”). The Guarantor is restricted from paying the Demand Loan in the manner described in clause (iii) if the proceeds of such sale are less than the True Loan Balance of the Loans and their Related Security included in the Portfolio. Upon any Payment in Kind, the outstanding amount of the Demand Loan will be reduced by the Fair Market Value of such Loans determined as of the date of the Payment in Kind, less an amount equal to the collections received by or on behalf of the Guarantor after the date of the notice of the Payment in Kind and prior to the date of the Payment in Kind in respect of the Loans listed in the notice of the Payment in Kind. In addition, if the Payment in Kind occurs on or after a Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event and the Intercompany Loan Provider is the Limited Partner, the Limited Partner shall be deemed to have made a Capital Contribution to the Guarantor on the date of the Payment in Kind in an amount equal to the excess, if any, of the True Loan Balance of the Loans and their Related Security applied towards the Payment in Kind over the aggregate Fair Market Value of such Loans and their Related Security, and such Capital Contribution shall be deemed to have been applied by the Guarantor against the Demand Loan, such that the outstanding amount of the Demand Loan will be reduced by the greater of (i) the True Loan Balance of such Loans, and (ii) the Fair Market Value of such Loans. See “*Cashflows*.”

The Guarantor will be entitled to set off amounts paid by the Guarantor under the Covered Bond Guarantee first against any amounts (other than interest and principal) owing by the Guarantor to the Bank in respect of the Intercompany Loan Agreement, then against interest due under the Intercompany Loan, and then against the outstanding principal balance owing on the Intercompany Loan.

The Guarantor will use advances under the Intercompany Loan (i) to purchase Loans and their Related Security pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement; and/or (ii) to invest in Substitute Assets in an amount not exceeding the prescribed limit under the CMHC Guide; and/or (iii) subject to complying with the Asset Coverage Test, to make Capital Distributions to the Limited Partner; and/or (iv) to make deposits of the proceeds in the Guarantor Accounts (including, without limitation, to fund the Reserve Fund and the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger, in each case to an amount not exceeding the prescribed limit).

The Intercompany Loan Agreement is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein.

Mortgage Sale Agreement

The Seller

Loans and their Related Security will be sold to the Guarantor from time to time on a fully serviced basis pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement between the Bank (in its capacity as Seller), the Guarantor, the Custodian and the Bond Trustee.

Sale by the Seller of the Loans and Related Security

The Loans included in the Portfolio will be residential mortgages which are not insured by a Prohibited Insurer and which otherwise meet the Eligibility Criteria and with respect to which each of the Loan Representations and Warranties are correct as at the related Transfer Date. The types of Loans forming the Portfolio will vary over time *provided* that the Loan Representations and Warranties are met on the relevant Transfer Date. Accordingly, the Portfolio may, at any time, include Loans originated by different originators, Loans with different characteristics from Loans that were included in the Portfolio or being offered to borrowers on previous Transfer Dates.

The Guarantor may from time to time acquire Loans and their Related Security from the Seller as described below:

(a) the Guarantor will use the proceeds of an advance under the Intercompany Loan (which may be applied in whole or in part by the Guarantor) and/or Available Principal Receipts to acquire Loans and their Related Security from the Seller. As consideration for the sale of the Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor, the Seller will receive a cash payment or deemed cash payment equal to the fair market value of those Loans sold by it as at the relevant Transfer Date; and

(b) the Guarantor may receive Capital Contributions in Kind in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement. As consideration for the sale by way of Capital Contributions of the Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor, the Seller will receive an additional interest in the capital of the Guarantor equal to the fair market value of those Loans sold by it as at the relevant Transfer Date minus any cash considerations received by the Seller described in paragraph (a).

If Selected Loans are sold by or on behalf of the Guarantor as described below under "*—Guarantor Agreement—Sale of Selected Loans at any time an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding or a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor*," the obligations of the Seller insofar as they relate to those Selected Loans will cease to apply.

The Seller will also be required to repurchase Loans and their Related Security sold to the Guarantor in the circumstances described below under "*—Repurchase of Loans*."

See "*—Loan Representations and Warranties*" below for Loan Representations and Warranties relating Loans and their Related Security and "*—Servicing Agreement—Undertakings of the Servicer*" below regarding undertakings of the Servicer in respect of the Loans comprised in the Portfolio.

Pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Seller will provide to the Custodian, on each Transfer Date, the Eligible Loan Details with respect to the Loans and Related Security to be sold to the Guarantor by the Seller on such Transfer Date. The Seller will also be required to provide updated Eligible Loan Details with respect to the Loans included in the Portfolio to the Custodian on a quarterly basis and forthwith upon the occurrence of a Registered Title Event. The "**Eligible Loan Details**" are as follows with respect to each Loan:

(a) the Seller's loan number;

(b) the mortgagor(s) full name;
(c) the mortgaged property address (street number, city/town, province, postal code);
(d) the principal balance amount;
(e) the authorized loan amount (at origination or last renewal);
(f) the interest adjustment date (at origination or last renewal);
(g) the mortgage maturity date; and
(h) the mortgage lender on title (if other than the Seller).

The Custodian is required to provide access to such Eligible Loan Details to CMHC in order to allow CMHC to ensure compliance by the Guarantor and the Seller with the CMHC Guide and the Transaction Documents. The Seller shall pay to the Custodian such fees as may be agreed between the Seller and the Custodian from time to time. If the Seller breaches its obligation to pay such fees, the Custodian will be paid such fees by the Guarantor in accordance with the applicable Priorities of Payments.

Scotia Total Equity Plan and STEP Loans

The Bank expects that the Portfolio will from time to time include STEP Loans. Under the terms of the STEP Plan, a STEP borrower may obtain one or more separate STEP Accounts from the Seller within certain specified categories, being mortgage loans, lines of credit, credit cards, term loans and/or overdraft protection. The STEP Plan provides that the indebtedness extended by the Seller to a STEP borrower under each STEP Account will be secured by the same STEP Collateral Mortgage on the related Mortgaged Property, and contains cross-default provisions indicating that a default with respect to any one STEP Account will constitutes a default in respect of all of the STEP Accounts under the same STEP Plan with the related borrower.

Each STEP Account which constitutes a mortgage loan or (if approved by the Rating Agencies as a New Loan Type) a home equity line of credit and which otherwise satisfies the Eligibility Criteria and other requirements of the Transaction Documents may be sold as a Loan by the Seller to the Guarantor from time to time pursuant to the Mortgage Sale Agreement. No STEP Accounts other than mortgage loans (such other STEP Accounts being referred to herein as Other STEP Products) extended by the Seller to any STEP borrower pursuant to a STEP Plan will be eligible for sale to the Guarantor as a Loan pursuant to the Mortgage Sale Agreement, *provided* that if lines of credit are subsequently approved as a New Loan Type by the Rating Agencies, then such home equity lines of credit subject to the STEP Plan may be eligible to be sold as Loans to the Guarantor under the Mortgage Sale Agreement and will cease to be Other STEP Products.

Prior to a default by a STEP borrower under any STEP Account, the Transaction Documents will require the Servicer to follow a STEP borrower's instructions as to the allocation of payments between each of its STEP Accounts with such STEP borrower. Following a default by a STEP borrower under any STEP Account, the Transaction Documents will require the Servicer to allocate all funds received by it from such STEP borrower and all amounts realized from the enforcement of security held for all of such STEP borrower's STEP Accounts, after the payment of related costs, first to pay all indebtedness owing under any mortgage loan(s) made to such STEP borrower pursuant to the STEP Plan that are owned by the Guarantor, second to pay all indebtedness owing under any mortgage loan(s) made to such STEP borrower pursuant to the STEP Plan that are owned by the Seller, and third to pay indebtedness owing under any line of credit extended to such STEP borrower that is a STEP Account and which is maintained under the name "Scotialine" or a successor designation, before applying any remaining amounts to the indebtedness owing in respect of the Other STEP Products.

The Seller may from time to time sell interests in Other STEP Products to a third party purchaser, together with the benefit of a corresponding interest in the related STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security, provided that such purchaser will have no interest in the related STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security unless it enters into a Security Sharing Agreement, executes a Release of Security and agrees to be bound by the provisions of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and the Servicing Agreement relating to STEP Accounts and to assign all of its right, title, and interest in the STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security to the Guarantor, in each case in accordance with the provisions of the Mortgage Sale Agreement.

The Seller will act as the servicer of each STEP Account that is the subject of a Security Sharing Agreement and will allocate funds received under all of the related STEP Accounts with the same borrower, and otherwise realized from the enforcement of the security held for all such related STEP Accounts to the indebtedness owing under such STEP Accounts in accordance with the same priority arrangement as is set out in the Mortgage Sale Agreement, including the allocation of such funds to indebtedness owing under each STEP Loan owned by the Guarantor in priority to all STEP Loans owned by the Seller and all Other STEP Products with the same borrower.

Concurrently with the first sale by the Seller of a STEP Loan to a particular STEP borrower under the STEP Plan to the Guarantor (the "**First STEP Loan**"), the Seller will transfer and convey all of its right, title and interest in the Related Security (including its interest in the related STEP Collateral Mortgage (or, in the case of a STEP Loan located in the Province of Québec, an interest in the related STEP Collateral Mortgage to the extent of the First STEP Loan that is sold to the Guarantor). The Guarantor will hold the Related Security in respect of each STEP Loan sold to the Guarantor as follows: (i) an undivided interest in such Related Security for its own sole and absolute account and benefit, to the extent of all outstanding indebtedness owing under all STEP Loans owned by it in respect of the same STEP borrower from time to time, which undivided interest will have full priority over all other rights, claims and interests (other than costs of mortgage enforcement); and (ii) subject to the Guarantor's priority described in item (i) above, but only to the extent that any such Related Security also secures or otherwise relates to any Additional STEP Loans or Other STEP Products owned by the Seller and/or Other STEP Creditor, an undivided interest in such Related Security, as agent, nominee and bare trustee for the related Seller and any Other STEP Creditor from time to time, as their interests may appear, to the extent of all outstanding indebtedness owing under any Additional STEP Loans and Other STEP Products owned by the Seller or Other STEP Creditor from time to time, *provided that*, for STEP Loans in the Province of Québec, the Seller will transfer and convey and the Guarantor will solely hold an interest in the Related Security in respect of each STEP Loan sold to the extent of all outstanding indebtedness owing under all STEP Loans owned by the Guarantor in respect of the same STEP borrower from time to time, which interest will have full priority over all other rights, claims and interests (other than costs of mortgage enforcement). As well, for STEP Loans in the Province of Québec, the Seller and each of the Other STEP Creditors will be entitled to an undivided interest in the STEP Collateral Mortgage to the extent of any outstanding indebtedness owing under any related STEP Accounts. All Additional STEP Loans made by the Seller to a STEP borrower are required to be sold to the Guarantor within a time period specified in the Mortgage Sale Agreement. Any failure by the Seller to convey the Additional STEP Loans with respect to a particular STEP borrower to the Guarantor in accordance with the Mortgage Sale Agreement (including satisfying the Loan Representations and Warranties) will require the Seller to repurchase all related STEP Loans owned by the Guarantor which have been made to the same STEP borrower, together with the Guarantor's interest in all Related Security. Prior to the sale of such Additional STEP Loans to the Guarantor, the Seller's right to receive distributions on an Additional STEP Loans owned by it, following default, will at all times be junior, subject and subordinated to the Guarantor's right to receive distributions with respect to any Additional STEP Loans made to the same borrower and which are owned by the Guarantor, and the right of the Seller or any Other STEP Creditor to receive distributions on an Other STEP Product shall at all times be junior, subject and subordinated to (i) the Guarantor's right to receive distributions with respect to the STEP Loan owned by the Guarantor, and (ii) the Seller's right to receive distributions with respect to any STEP Loans made to the same borrower and which are owned by the Seller; provided, however, that at no time shall the Seller or any Other STEP Creditor have a right to be registered on title with respect to the related Mortgaged Property, notwithstanding their interest in the STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security.

The Transaction Documents will provide that the Guarantor or the Servicer on its behalf (prior to the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and the service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor), or the Bond Trustee (following the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and the service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor), will (i) have the sole right to take all enforcement actions and make all servicing decisions with respect to the Related Security (including under the related STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security) and (ii) allocate any funds received by it and otherwise realized from the enforcement of the security for all of the related STEP Accounts with the same STEP borrower in accordance with the priority arrangement described above, including the allocation of such funds to all indebtedness owing under each related STEP Loan owned by the Guarantor in priority to all Other STEP Products.

Eligibility Criteria

The sale of Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor will be subject to various conditions (the "**Eligibility Criteria**") being satisfied on the relevant Transfer Date. These are as follows:

(a) there has been neither an Issuer Event of Default and service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice nor a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice as at the relevant Transfer Date;

(b) the Guarantor, acting on the advice of the Cash Manager, is not aware, and could not reasonably be expected to be aware, that the proposed purchase by the Guarantor of the Loans and their Related Security on the relevant Transfer Date does not satisfy the Rating Agency Condition;

(c) no Loan that is proposed to be sold to the Guarantor on the relevant Transfer Date has an Outstanding Principal Balance of more than $3,000,000.00 or, in the

125

case of any STEP Loans, all such STEP Loans made to the same STEP borrower from time to time, whether or not sold to the Guarantor, shall not have an Outstanding Principal Balance of more than $3,000,000.00 in the aggregate;

(d) if the Loans that are proposed to be sold constitute a New Loan Type, the Rating Agency Condition has been satisfied in accordance with the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement with respect to the sale of such Loans to the Guarantor

(e) such Loan is not secured by a Mortgage that also secures one or more other loans or, in the case of a STEP Loan, also secures any Other STEP Product, which in either case has the benefit of insurance from any Prohibited Insurer;

(f) if the Loan is extended or advanced upon the security of a Mortgage that also secures (or is capable of securing) Retained Loans, the Loan and all Related Retained Loans have the benefit of cross-default provisions (whether contained in the terms and conditions of the Loan and Related Retained Loans, the Mortgage securing the Loan and Related Retained Loans or other documentation applicable to the Loan and Related Retained Loans, and enforceable against the Borrower) such that a default under the Loan or a Related Retained Loan will constitute a default under the Loan and all Related Retained Loans or, in the case of a Loan or Related Retained Loan not having the benefit of cross-default provisions but repayable on demand, the Guarantor or the Seller (and each mortgage lender as may be on title) have covenanted in writing to demand repayment of the Loan or such Related Retained Loan upon a default under the Loan or the Related Retained Loan, as the case may be;

(g) at the time of transfer to the Guarantor, no payments of principal or interest thereunder are in arrears;

(h) the first payment due in respect of such Loan has been paid by the relevant borrower;

(i) the related Mortgage constitutes a valid first mortgage lien or a valid first-ranking hypothecary lien over the related Mortgaged Property under which no claims have been made and subject to certain permitted security interests;

(j) at the time of transfer, the Guarantor will acquire the entire legal and beneficial ownership interest of the Seller in the applicable Loans and their Related Security, excluding registered title therein, free and clear of any encumbrances or ownership interests, other than (i) certain permitted security interests, and (ii) those which are reflected in a Security Sharing Agreement and the subject of a Release of Security delivered by the Seller, any mortgage lender on title, or any other party that has an interest in the Related Security to the Custodian in trust upon and subject to the provisions of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and in compliance with the CMHC Guide;

(k) as at the Transfer Date, the Loan is not subject to any dispute proceeding, set-off, counterclaim or defense whatsoever;

(l) to the extent the Loan is extended, advanced or renewed on or after July 1, 2014 (which for greater certainty will not include further advances under an existing non-amortizing Loan unless amended), an express waiver of set-off rights on the part of the borrower is included in the terms and conditions of the Loan and all Related Retained Loans, the Mortgage securing the Loan and all Related Retained Loans or other documentation applicable to the Loan and all Related Retained Loans, and enforceable against the borrower

(m) neither the Mortgage Terms for the Loan nor the terms of any other documentation applicable to the Loan and enforceable by the borrower expressly affords the borrower a right of set-off;

(n) prior to the making of each advance under such Loan, the Lending Criteria and all preconditions to the making of that Loan were satisfied; and

(o) such Loan is an "Eligible Loan" as defined in the CMHC Guide from time to time.

The CMHC Guide currently defines an "**Eligible Loan**" as a loan (i) which is made on the security of residential property that is located in Canada and consists of not more than four residential units, (ii) which, together with the amount outstanding of any mortgage or hypothecary loan having an equal or prior claim against the property, does not exceed 80% of the value of the related property at the time of the loan, and (iii) which must, at a minimum, meet the following requirements or qualifications:

(a) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan if, at the time of transfer to the Guarantor, one or more payments of principal or interest payable thereunder are in arrears;

(b) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan until one or more payments of principal or interest (or blended payment(s) of principal and interest) have been made in accordance with the terms of the Loan;

(c) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan for so long as the mortgage or other hypothecary instrument charging the mortgaged property securing such loan does not represent a first priority perfected security interest (subject to encumbrances or claims customarily permitted by a prudent lender);

(d) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan (i) unless, at the time of transfer to the Guarantor, the loan, the Mortgage securing the Loan and (in the case of a loan extended or advanced upon the security of a mortgage or hypothecary instrument also securing Retained Loans) all Retained Loans are beneficially owned (or owned) by the Seller (disregarding, for such purposes, nominee title holders) and (ii) for so long as the loan, all sums derived from the loan (whether on account of principal, interest or otherwise and whether received from the borrower or a guarantor thereof) and the Mortgage charging the Mortgaged Property securing the loan are not clear of any ownership interests, security interests, encumbrances or other claims other than (A) encumbrances or claims customarily permitted by a prudent lender or that will cease to apply to such loan, sums and Mortgage upon the purchase by or contribution to the Guarantor of the loan, (B) those of the Guarantor, (C) those in favor of covered bondholders (or the Bond Trustee on behalf of such holders) or in favor of other Secured Creditors (in each case to secure the payment of amounts owing to them by the Guarantor) and (D) those which may be reflected in a Security Sharing Agreement and are the subject of a Release of Security delivered by each lender to the Custodian in trust upon and subject to the provisions of the Security Sharing Agreement or are otherwise provided for (in compliance with the requirements of the CMHC Guide) under the Transaction Documents;

(e) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan if one or more other loans advanced under the same Mortgage have been insured by a Prohibited Insurer;

(f) a loan extended or advanced upon the security of a Mortgage also securing (or capable of securing) Retained Loans will not qualify as an Eligible Loan unless it and all Related Retained Loans have the benefit of cross-default provisions (whether contained in the terms and conditions of the loan and Related Retained Loans, the Mortgage securing the loan and Related Retained Loans or other documentation applicable to the loan and Related Retained Loans, and enforceable against the borrower) such that a default under the loan or a Related Retained Loan will constitute a default under the loan and all Related Retained Loans or, in the case of a loan or Related Retained Loan not having the benefit of cross-default provisions but repayable on demand, the Guarantor or the Seller (and each mortgage lender as may be on title) have covenanted in writing to demand repayment of the loan or such Related Retained Loan upon a default under the loan or the Related Retained Loan, as the case may be;

(g) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan if, at the time of transfer to the Guarantor, it is the subject of any dispute proceeding, set-off, counterclaim or defense whatsoever;

(h) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan if its terms and conditions or the provisions of the Mortgage securing the loan or other documentation applicable to the loan and enforceable by the borrower expressly afford the borrower a right of set-off;

(i) a loan extended, advanced or renewed on or after July 1, 2014 (which for greater certainty will not include further advances under an existing non-amortizing loan unless amended) will not qualify as an Eligible Loan unless an express waiver of set-off rights on the part of the borrower is included in the terms and conditions of the loan and all Related Retained Loans, the Mortgage securing the loan and all Related Retained Loans or other documentation applicable to the loan and all Related Retained Loans, and enforceable against the borrower; and

(j) a loan will not qualify as an Eligible Loan unless it was originated or otherwise complies with the Seller's approved underwriting policies (in effect or otherwise applicable at the time the loan was originated).

On the relevant Transfer Date, the Loan Representations and Warranties (described below in "—*Loan Representations and Warranties*") will be given by the Seller in respect of the Loans and their Related Security sold by the Seller to the Guarantor.

If the Seller accepts an application from, or makes an offer (which is accepted) to, a borrower for a Product Switch which constitutes an unconditional obligation on the part of such Seller to make such Product Switch, then such Seller will be obligated to repurchase the relevant Loan and the Related Security to which the Product Switch relates.

Security Sharing Agreements and Releases of Security

As noted above, any Other STEP Creditor that acquires an interest in the STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security relating to STEP Loan owned by the Guarantor, and any other registered title holder will be required to execute and deliver a Release of Security to the Custodian in trust, and to enter into a Security Sharing Agreement, which agreement must conform with the requirements of the CMHC Guide and the provisions of the Mortgage Sale Agreement. Any such Security Sharing Agreement will include terms governing the rights, duties and entitlements of such Other STEP Creditor with respect to the Other STEP Products acquired by such Other STEP Creditor and its interests in the related STEP Collateral Mortgages and other Related Security that are substantially similar to those set forth in the Mortgage Sale Agreement, including the requirement that the Servicer service the related Other STEP Products for so long as such Other STEP Products are subject to the Security Sharing Agreement.

A Release of Security, once exercised, releases any and all interest or right that the party delivering such Release of Security may have in the related STEP Collateral Mortgages and other Related Security. A Release of Security delivered by the Seller or any Other STEP Creditor will be held by the Custodian in trust and cannot be exercised with respect to any particular STEP Collateral Mortgage and the other Related Security unless a Security Sharing Agreement Breach has occurred with respect to the related Other STEP Product or STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security, and a party to the Security Sharing Agreement other than the party who has made such breach requests that the Custodian exercise such Release of Security. As a condition precedent to such delivery, the Custodian will be required to obtain a legal opinion from legal counsel that is independent from the parties to the Security Sharing Agreement confirming that a Security Sharing Agreement Breach has occurred and that the conditions to the exercise of such Release of Security have been met. Upon the exercise of a Release of Security, all interest or right of the breaching party in the related STEP Collateral Mortgages and other Related Security will be relinquished as of the date of such delivery and all dealings with Other STEP Products no longer secured by the STEP Collateral Mortgages will be separate from dealings with STEP Loans owned by the Guarantor.

A “**Security Sharing Agreement Breach**” includes any of the following events:

(a) a failure by the Seller or Other STEP Creditor to comply with the provisions of the Security Sharing Agreement with respect to the allocation of distributions under the related STEP Account, the servicing of the related STEP Account and certain other restrictions on the dealings by such party with the Other STEP Product, which failure has not been cured within 60 days (or after an Issuer Event of Default, 10 Toronto Business Days) after the breaching party has received notice of the breach;

(b) a disposition of an Other STEP Product to a purchaser that has not also acquired all related STEP Loans then owned by the Guarantor unless such purchaser has assumed the obligations of the Seller or Other STEP Creditor under the Security Sharing Agreement, or entered into a new Security Sharing Agreement which complies with the CMHC Guide, and delivered a Release of Security to the Custodian in trust and, where applicable, the requisite opinion of legal counsel has been obtained; and

(c) a challenge by the Seller or Other STEP Creditor of the validity, legality or enforceability of certain provisions of the applicable Security Sharing Agreement.

Transfer of Title to the Loans to the Guarantor

Loans sold, transferred and assigned by the Seller to the Guarantor pursuant to the Mortgage Sale Agreement will have legal title to the related Mortgages remain registered in the name of the Seller and notice of the sale, transfer and assignment will not be given to the borrowers or, in respect of the Related Security, any relevant guarantor of any borrower. Such notice and, where appropriate, the registration or recording in the appropriate land registry or land titles offices of the transfer by the relevant Seller to the Guarantor of legal title to the Mortgages will be deferred and will only take place in the circumstances described below.

On each Transfer Date, the Seller will agree to (i) hold registered title to the related Loans and their Related Security as agent, bare trustee and nominee in trust for and on behalf of the Guarantor (and also, in the case of any STEP Loan, for and on behalf of the Seller and any Other STEP Creditor having an interest therein as described in "*—Scotia Total Equity Plan and STEP Loans*") and (ii) deliver such agreements and take all actions with respect to the Loans and their Related Security as the Guarantor may direct in accordance with the Mortgage Sale Agreement and the Servicing Agreement. On the First Transfer Date, the Seller delivered registrable powers of attorney appointing the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee, as its true and lawful attorney and agent, with full power of substitution, to execute, sign, seal and deliver, in the name of the Seller all conveyances, assignments, transfers, documents and instruments necessary to record the sale, assignment and transfer to the Guarantor, or any other person as the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee may direct, of all Loans and their Related Security (including all documents comprising the Customer Files) in all applicable land registry or land titles offices, including directions to borrowers directing them to remit all payments under their related Loans to the Guarantor (or as the Guarantor may otherwise direct), and to register and record all such sales, assignments, transfers, documents and instruments in such land registry or land titles offices. The powers of attorney will not be exercisable by the Guarantor or the Bond Trustee (or such other person) until the occurrence of a Registered Title Event.

Upon the occurrence of a Registered Title Event, the Seller will do or will cause to be done on its behalf the following:

(a) give notice of the Guarantor's ownership interest in the relevant Loans and Related Security to each borrower thereunder, which notice will direct that payments be made directly to the Guarantor or its designee, and upon such instruction from the Guarantor, the Seller will give such notice at the expense of the Seller; provided, that if the Seller fails to so notify each such borrower, the Guarantor may so notify such borrowers at the expense of such Seller;

(b) direct the borrowers or any guarantor of such borrowers to pay all amounts payable under the relevant Loans included in the Portfolio directly to the Guarantor or a nominee on its behalf;

(c) cause Registrable Transfers for each of the Loans and their Related Security to be prepared, executed and delivered by the Seller to the Guarantor and registered in the appropriate land registry or land titles office; and

(d) (A) assemble all of the records then in its possession (including Customer Files, computer records and files) and which are necessary or desirable to collect the related Loans and make the same available to the Guarantor or its designee at a place selected by the Guarantor; (B) segregate all cash, checks and other instruments received by it from time to time constituting payments with respect to the relevant Loans in a manner acceptable to the Guarantor and, promptly upon receipt, remit all such cash, checks and instruments, duly endorsed or with duly executed instruments of transfer, to the Guarantor or its designee; and (C) name the Guarantor (or its designee) as loss payee on any applicable related insurance policies maintained by the Seller in respect of the Loans sold to the Guarantor in place of the Seller.

The duty of the Seller in paragraph (c) above will be fulfilled no later than the 60th day, and the duties in paragraphs (a), (b) and (d) will be fulfilled by the Guarantor no later than 20 Toronto Business Days, following the day on which the Registered Title Event occurs. The Seller will be liable for all costs and expenses associated with such duties. The Seller will co-operate fully to do all such further acts and things and execute any further documents that may be necessary or desirable by the Guarantor (or the Bond Trustee) to give full effect to such duties.

A "**Registered Title Event**" means the occurrence of the earliest of any of the following:

(a) a Servicer Event of Default that has not been remedied within 30 days or such shorter period permitted by the Servicing Agreement;

(b) an Issuer Event of Default (other than an actual or impending Insolvency Event with respect to the Bank) that has not been remedied within 30 days or such shorter period permitted by Condition 9.1 (*Issuer Events of Default*);

(c) an Insolvency Event with respect to the Seller (without regard for the parenthetical language in clause (a) of such definition);

(d) the acceptance by an applicable purchaser of any offer by the Guarantor to sell Loans and their Related Security (only in respect of the Loans being sold and their Related Security) to any such purchaser other than the Seller, unless otherwise agreed by such purchaser and the Guarantor, with the consent of the Bond Trustee, which consent will not be unreasonably withheld;

(e) the Seller and/or the Guarantor being required to Perfect legal title to the Mortgages by:

(i) law;

(ii) an order of a court of competent jurisdiction; or

(iii) any regulatory authority which has jurisdiction over the Seller or the Guarantor to effect such perfection; and

131

(f) the date on which the Bank ceases to be assigned a long-term, unsecured, unsubordinated unguaranteed debt obligation rating or issuer default rating by Moody's of at least A3 or by Fitch of at least BBB- or by DBRS of at least BBB (low) or R-1 (middle).

Notwithstanding the occurrence of any event or circumstance described in clauses (a) through (f) immediately above, none of the steps relating to a Registered Title Event are required to be taken if (A) the Rating Agency Condition has been satisfied with respect to the Seller not fulfilling such requirements, and (B) satisfactory assurances are provided to the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee by OSFI or such other supervisory authority having jurisdiction over the Seller permitting registered title to the Mortgages to remain with the Seller until such time as (i) the Loans and their Related Security are to be sold or otherwise disposed of by the Guarantor or the Bond Trustee in the performance of their respective obligations under the Transaction Documents, or (ii) the Guarantor or the Bond Trustee is required to take actions to enforce or otherwise deal with the Loans and their Related Security.

If the Seller fails to co-operate in the performance of any of the foregoing duties, the Guarantor will use the powers of attorney to transfer registered or recorded title to the Mortgages evidencing and securing the Loans sold by the Seller and their Related Security into its name or the name of a nominee on its behalf or, for STEP Loans in Quebec, to record an assignment of the STEP Collateral Mortgages to the extent of the Guarantor's interest therein.

The Seller will undertake in the Mortgage Sale Agreement to meet the cost associated with the transfer of registered title or recorded title to the Loans.

The Seller will be required to provide updated powers of attorney to the Custodian from time to time under the Mortgage Sale Agreement, together with related opinions of counsel, in order to ensure the continued effectiveness of such powers of attorney.

Seller Representations and Warranties

Under the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Seller makes the following representations and warranties (in addition to the Loan Representations and Warranties described below) in favor of the Guarantor on each Transfer Date:

(a) it is a Canadian chartered bank under the Bank Act and has, in all material respects, full power and authority to own its properties and conduct its business as presently owned or conducted, and to execute, deliver and perform its obligations under the Mortgage Sale Agreement;

(b) it is duly qualified to do business, is in good standing and has obtained all necessary licenses and approvals, in each jurisdiction in which failure to so qualify or to obtain such licenses and approvals would render any Mortgage unenforceable by it, the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee or a Purchaser, as applicable, or would have a material adverse effect on the Guarantor's rights thereunder;

(c) the execution and delivery of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and each of the documents, agreements or instruments to be executed and delivered thereunder by the Seller, and the performance by the Seller of its obligations thereunder,

132

have been duly authorized by the Seller by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Seller and are enforceable against the Seller in accordance with their terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or other similar laws, now or hereafter in effect, affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights in general and except as such enforceability may be limited by general principles of equity (whether considered in a suit at law or in equity);

(d) the execution and delivery by the Seller of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and each of the documents, agreements or instruments to be executed and delivered thereunder, the performance of the transactions contemplated thereunder, and the fulfillment of the terms thereof applicable to the Seller, will not (i) conflict with or violate the constating documents or by-laws of the Seller, any resolution of the board of directors (or any committee thereof) or, to the knowledge of the Seller, the shareholders of the Seller or any law applicable to the Seller or (ii) conflict with, or result in any breach of any of the terms and provisions of, or constitute (with or without notice or lapse of time or both) a default under, any indenture, contract, agreement, mortgage, deed of trust or other instrument to which the Seller is a party or by which it or its properties are bound, in any such case in a manner that would have a material adverse effect on the Guarantor's rights thereunder or would materially and adversely affect the validity or enforceability of the Mortgage Sale Agreement;

(e) there are no proceedings or investigations, to the best knowledge of the Seller, pending or threatened against the Seller before any governmental authority: (i) asserting the invalidity of the Mortgage Sale Agreement, (ii) seeking to prevent the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by the Mortgage Sale Agreement, (iii) seeking any determination or ruling that, in the reasonable judgment of the Seller, would materially and adversely affect the performance by the Seller of its obligations under the Mortgage Sale Agreement, or (iv) seeking any determination or ruling that would materially and adversely affect the validity or enforceability of the Mortgage Sale Agreement;

(f) all authorizations, consents, orders or approvals of or registrations or declarations with any governmental authority required to be obtained, effected or given by the Seller in connection with the execution and delivery by the Seller of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and the performance of the transactions contemplated by the Mortgage Sale Agreement have been duly obtained, effected or given and are in full force and effect, other than any such authorizations, consents, orders or approvals of or registrations or declarations the absence of which would not materially and adversely affect the validity or enforceability of the Mortgage Sale Agreement or any Mortgage;

(g) it is not a non-resident of Canada for purposes of the ITA;

(h) the Seller is a member of the Scotiabank Group, and

(i) none of the transactions contemplated under the Mortgage Sale Agreement require compliance with any applicable bulk sales legislation.

133

Loan Representations and Warranties

The Guarantor and the Bond Trustee will not undertake any investigations, searches or other actions on any Loan or its Related Security and will rely instead on the Loan Representations and Warranties given in the Mortgage Sale Agreement by the Seller in respect of the Loans sold by such Seller to the Guarantor. The parties to the Mortgage Sale Agreement may, with the prior written consent of the Bond Trustee, waive, amend or modify the Loan Representations and Warranties or include new Loan Representations and Warranties, in each case, including, without limitation, modifications or additions to accommodate the sale of New Loan Types to the Guarantor provided that any material amendments shall be subject to satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition. The Loan Representations and Warranties as of the date of this prospectus include the following and are given as of the following dates (i) the Transfer Date in respect of the Loans and Related Security to be sold to the Guarantor on such First Transfer Date, (ii) on the relevant Transfer Date in respect of the Loans and Related Security to be sold to the Guarantor on such Transfer Date, and (iii) on the Calculation Date following the making of any Product Switch in respect of the Loans to which the Product Switch relates:

- the Seller is the legal and beneficial owner of the Loans and their Related Security to be sold to the Guarantor;
- each Loan was originated by the Seller in the ordinary course of business (and kept on the Seller's books for a minimum of one month prior to the cut-off date);
- each loan satisfies the Eligibility Criteria and is an "Eligible Loan" as defined in the CMHC Guide from time to time;
- the Mortgage Terms for the Loan expressly permit its assignment without the consent of the borrower;
- no Loan has a remaining amortization period of more than 50 years as of the relevant cut-off date;
- the Lending Criteria are consistent with the criteria that would be used by reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market;
- all of the borrowers are individuals or have guarantees from individuals for the Loans (which guarantees and any security related to such guarantees are assignable and will be sold, transferred and assigned to the Guarantor as Related Security for the Loans in accordance with the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement);
- the Outstanding Principal Balance on each Loan is secured by a Mortgage over residential property;
- the Outstanding Principal Balance on each Loan constitutes a legal, valid, binding and enforceable debt due to the Seller from the relevant borrower and, if applicable, the guarantor and the terms of each Loan and its related Mortgage constitute valid and binding obligations of the relevant borrower and, if applicable, the guarantor enforceable in accordance with their terms except as enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally or by general principles of equity;

- other than (i) registrations in the appropriate land registry or land titles offices in respect of the sale, transfer and assignment of the relevant Loans from the Seller to the Guarantor effected by the Mortgage Sale Agreement, (ii) the provision to borrowers under the related Loans or the obligors under their Related Security of actual notice of the sale, transfer and assignment thereof to the Guarantor, and (iii) certain notices provided in the Civil Code of Quebec for Mortgaged Properties located in the Province of Quebec, all material filings, recordings, notifications, registrations or other actions under all applicable laws have been made or taken in each jurisdiction where necessary or appropriate (and where permitted by applicable law) to preserve, perfect and protect the Guarantor's legal and beneficial ownership interest in and rights to collect any and all of the related Loans being purchased on the relevant Transfer Date, including the right to service and enforce such Loans and their Related Security;
- there is no requirement in order for a sale, transfer and assignment of the Loans and their Related Security to be effective to obtain the consent of a borrower or any other person to such sale, transfer or assignment and such sale, transfer and assignment will not give rise to any claim by a borrower against the Guarantor, the Bond Trustee or any of their successors in title or assigns;
- all of the Mortgaged Properties are situated in Canada;
- not more than 12 months (or such longer period as would be acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market) prior to the granting of each Loan (or in the case of any STEP Loan, prior to the granting of the related First STEP Loan), the relevant Seller obtained information on the relevant Mortgaged Property from an independently-maintained valuation model that would be acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market, or received a Valuation Report on the relevant Mortgaged Property that would be, and the contents or confirmation, as applicable, of which would be acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market or obtained such other form of valuation of the relevant Mortgaged Property with respect to which the Rating Agency Condition has been satisfied;
- prior to the taking of Related Security in respect of each Loan, the relevant Seller either instructed lawyers to conduct a search of title to the relevant Mortgaged Property and to undertake such other searches, investigations, enquiries and actions on behalf of such Seller as would be acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market (and the Seller was satisfied with the results of same) or the relevant borrower was required as a condition to granting the relevant Loan to obtain a lender's title insurance policy in respect of the relevant Mortgaged Property from an insurer as would be acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market;
- each Loan contains a requirement that the relevant Mortgaged Property be covered by insurance covering all risks of physical loss or damage that would be acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market;
- all of the Mortgaged Properties are covered by an insurance policy maintained by the Seller covering all risks of physical loss or damage which applies when a borrower fails to maintain such an insurance policy on the relevant Mortgaged Property that would be

acceptable to reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Seller's market and, so long as such policy (or equivalent replacement policy) is maintained by the Seller, such policy (or replacement policy) will apply to the Mortgaged Properties following the sale of the related Loan to the Guarantor;

- except as otherwise approved by the Rating Agencies in connection with the approval of a New Loan Type, the principal amount of each Loan is fully advanced and there is no requirement for future advances thereunder;
- as a warranty only, there are no claims under applicable laws of any person having supplied work or materials to a Mortgaged Property that would have a material and adverse effect on the priority of the related Mortgage;
- the Seller has, since the making of each Loan, kept or procured the keeping of full and proper accounts, books and records showing clearly all transactions, payments, receipts, proceedings and notices relating to such Loans;
- there are no governmental authorizations, approvals, licenses or consents required for the Seller to enter into or to perform their obligations under the Mortgage Sale Agreement or to make the Mortgage Sale Agreement legal, valid, binding and enforceable against the Seller and admissible in evidence;
- if such Loan is not an Additional STEP Loan, as at the Transfer Date immediately prior to the transfer by the Seller to the Guarantor of such Loan and the Related Security for such Loan, such Loan and each other loan (including any Other STEP Product) secured by the same mortgage, if any, are owned by the Seller; and
- no documentation relating to such Loan or Related Security is missing or incomplete in any material respect that has a material adverse impact on the realizable value of the relevant Mortgaged Property.

If New Loan Types are proposed to be sold to the Guarantor, then the Loan Representations and Warranties and Eligibility Criteria in the Mortgage Sale Agreement may be modified as required, with the prior consent of the Bond Trustee and subject to satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition with respect to the sale of such New Loan Types, to accommodate these New Loan Types. The prior consent of the covered bondholders to the requisite amendments will not be required to be obtained.

Repurchase of Loans

In the event of a material breach of any of the Loan Representations and Warranties in respect of any Loan and/or its Related Security or if any of those Loan Representations and Warranties proves to be untrue in any material respect in the case of the Initial Portfolio, as at the First Transfer Date or, in the case of any Loans, as at the relevant Transfer Date or, in the case of any Product Switch in respect of any Loan, as at the Calculation Date following the making of such Product Switch, and *provided* that the Guarantor has given the Seller not less than 20 Toronto Business Days' notice of such breach or untruth in writing and such breach or untruth, is not remedied to the reasonable satisfaction of the Bond Trustee within the 20 Toronto Business Day period (or such longer period as the Bond Trustee may in its absolute discretion direct the Guarantor in writing) then the Seller will be required to repurchase the relevant Loan and its

Related Security (and any other Loan secured or intended to be secured by that Related Security or any part of it whether or not there has been any breach of a Loan Representation and Warranty in respect of such other Loan). Any breach of the Loan Representations and Warranties with respect to a Loan meeting the Eligibility Criteria will be deemed to be material and incapable of being cured.

In the event that either the Seller accepts a request from a borrower for a Product Switch in respect of any Loan in the Portfolio, then if such Product Switch results in any of the Loan Representations and Warranties not being satisfied in respect of any Loan on the next Calculation Date, or if subsequent to the sale of a First STEP Loan to the Guarantor the origination of any related Additional STEP Loan by the Seller results in any of the Loan Representations and Warranties not being satisfied in respect of any related STEP Loan owned by the Guarantor, or if any Product Switch would give rise to an increased tax liability to the Guarantor, and *provided* that the Guarantor has given the Seller not less than 20 Toronto Business Days' notice of such breach or untruth in writing and such breach or untruth, is not remedied to the reasonable satisfaction of the Bond Trustee within the 20 Toronto Business Day period (or such longer period as the Bond Trustee may in its absolute discretion direct the Guarantor in writing), or the Seller accepts a request from a borrower for a Loan advance in respect of any Loan in the Portfolio, then in either case the Guarantor shall serve upon such Seller a Loan Repurchase Notice requiring the Seller to repurchase the relevant Loan and its Related Security (and any other Loan secured or intended to be secured by that Related Security or any part of it whether or not there has been any breach of a Loan Representation and Warranty in respect of such other Loan). With regard to a Product Switch, the Seller will use reasonable commercial efforts to identify and repurchase any Loans that might give rise to increased tax liability before completion of such Product Switch, but if the Seller does not repurchase the relevant Loan and its Related Security before such Product Switch gives rise to an increased tax liability to the Guarantor, the Seller will hold the Guarantor harmless against any such increased liability and will indemnify the Guarantor for any costs, expenses, losses or other claims that may arise in connection therewith.

In addition, if the Seller fails to sell Additional STEP Loans to the Guarantor within the time period specified in the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Guarantor will be entitled to serve upon the Seller a Loan Repurchase Notice requiring such Seller to repurchase the related STEP Loans owned by the Guarantor and the Related Security for such STEP Loans at the Repurchase Amount for such STEP Loans owned by the Guarantor.

Upon receipt of a Loan Repurchase Notice duly signed on behalf of the Guarantor, the Seller will sign and return three copies and will thereby repurchase from the Guarantor, and the Guarantor will thereby re-assign or re-transfer to such Seller the relevant Loan and its Related Security, and upon execution of such Loan Repurchase Notice by the Bond Trustee, on its own behalf and on behalf of any Other STEP Creditors, such Loan and its Related Security will be re-assigned or re-transferred to the Seller free from the Security created by or pursuant to the Security Agreement and all related rights of the Bond Trustee, the Guarantor and any Other STEP Creditor in respect thereof, without the need for any further action. Completion of such repurchase will take place on the Calculation Date after receipt by the Seller of such Loan Repurchase Notice or such other date as the Guarantor may direct in the Loan Repurchase Notice (provided that the date so specified by the Guarantor will not be later than 90 days after receipt by the Seller of such notice) when such Seller will pay to the GDA Account (or as the Guarantor will direct) an amount equal to the aggregate Repurchase Amount of all such Loans.

Since the Guarantor is an affiliate of the Seller, and so long as the Seller or its affiliates indirectly control the Guarantor, there are conflicts of interest associated with the exercise and/or enforcement of the Guarantor's rights and remedies following any breach of the Loan Representation and Warranties by the Seller; and as a result of such conflicts, the Guarantor's ability to detect or timely detect such breaches may be limited. See *"Risk Factors—Reliance on certain transaction parties*."

General Ability of Seller to Repurchase Loans

Prior to the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice or a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, the Seller may from time to time offer to repurchase any Loan (including a Non-Performing Eligible Loan) and its Related Security from the Portfolio for a purchase price equal to the fair market value of such Loan. For such purposes, all STEP Loans made to the same STEP borrower which are owned by the Guarantor will be considered to be a single Loan. The Guarantor may accept such offer at its sole discretion. If an Issuer Event of Default has occurred and is continuing but no liquidator or person with similar powers has been appointed to the Seller, any such repurchase will be conditional upon the delivery by the Seller of a solvency certificate to the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee and the Asset Coverage Test, calculated on the next Calculation Date immediately prior to such repurchase, being met upon the completion of such repurchase. Amounts paid by such Seller pursuant to such option will be deposited into the GDA Account.

Defaulted Loans

The Cash Manager will identify any Loans that are Non-Performing Eligible Loans in the Portfolio and upon identification serve a notice of Non-Performing Eligible Loans on the Bank and the Servicer. Non-Performing Eligible Loans will be given no credit in the Asset Coverage Test or the Amortization Test, as applicable.

Since both the Seller and the Cash Manager will be the Bank (or an affiliate), there are conflicts of interest associated with the Cash Manager's performance of its role in identifying Loans that are Non-Performing Eligible Loans in the Portfolio. See *"Risk Factors—Reliance on certain transaction parties*."

Maturing Loans

Without prejudice to the Seller's general ability to repurchase, the Seller (or an affiliate of the Seller designated by the Seller) may, upon request and subject to the agreement of the Guarantor, at any time prior to the date which is 90 days prior to the date of maturity of a Loan, and from time to time, repurchase any Loan from the Portfolio on the maturity date of such Loan at the greater of (i) the fair market value of such Loan at such maturity date, and (ii) the Repurchase Amount of such Loan at such maturity date. For such purposes, all STEP Loans made to the same STEP borrower which are owned by the Guarantor will be considered to be a single Loan. If the Seller does not deliver to the Guarantor on or before the required date a written notice specifying the Loans in respect of which it will not exercise such right and the Seller does not inform the Guarantor in writing that it cannot repurchase any such Loan, the Seller will repurchase, subject to the agreement of the Guarantor, each such Loan in the Portfolio on the Calculation Date next following the applicable maturity date of such Loan at the greater of (i) the fair market value of such Loan at such maturity date, and (ii) the Repurchase Amount of such

Loan at such maturity date; *provided*, *however*, that the Seller will not repurchase and will not be required to repurchase any Loan which (i) is or becomes a Non-Performing Eligible Loan on its maturity date, or (ii) is repaid in full on its maturity date from funding provided to the borrower under such Loan by a person other than the Seller. On the Calculation Date next following the maturity date on which the Seller purchases such Loan, such Seller will pay to the GDA Account an amount equal to the greater of (i) the fair market value of such Loan at such maturity date, and (ii) the Repurchase Amount of such Loan at such maturity date.

Right of Pre-emption

Under the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Seller has a right of pre-emption in respect of any sale, in whole or in part, of Selected Loans, *provided*, *however*, that such right will not be available at any time during which such Seller is in default of any of its obligations under the Transaction Documents.

If, (i) following service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice (which has not been revoked), (ii) following service of a Notice to Pay, (iii) following a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test or (iv) prior to the service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice or a Notice to Pay, a Demand Loan Repayment Event has occurred or the Bank has demanded that the Demand Loan be repaid, the Guarantor may be required to sell Selected Loans, and in certain circumstances may elect to sell certain Selected Loans, in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement, and *provided* that the Seller is not in default of any of its obligations in the Mortgage Sale Agreement or under any other Transaction Document to which it is a party, the Guarantor will by serving on the Seller a Selected Loan Offer Notice, prior to the Guarantor making any offer to sell Selected Loans to other Purchasers, offer immediately to sell to the Seller those Selected Loans in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement for an offer price equal to the amount specified in the Guarantor Agreement. See "*—Guarantor Agreement—Method of sale of Portfolio assets*" below.

If the Seller accepts the Guarantor's offer to sell the relevant Selected Loans by signing the Selected Loan Offer Notice in a manner indicating acceptance and delivering it to the Guarantor with a copy to the Bond Trustee within 10 Toronto Business Days from and including the date of the Selected Loan Offer Notice and *provided* that (if an Issuer Event of Default has occurred and is continuing) the Seller has provided a solvency certificate in a form acceptable to the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee (each acting reasonably), the Guarantor will within three Toronto Business Days of receipt of such acceptance serve a notice accepting the offer set out in the Selected Loan Offer Notice (a "**Selected Loan Repurchase Notice**") on the Seller.

The Guarantor will offer for sale the Selected Loans in respect of which the Seller rejects or fails within the requisite time limit to accept the Guarantor's offer to sell to Purchasers in the manner and on the terms set out in the Guarantor Agreement. See "*—Guarantor Agreement—Sale of Selected Loans at any time an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding or a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor.*"

Upon receipt of the Selected Loan Repurchase Notice duly signed on behalf of the Guarantor, the Seller will promptly sign and return three copies of the Selected Loan Repurchase Notice and will repurchase from the Guarantor, and the Guarantor will re-assign or re-transfer to the Seller the Selected Loans (and any other Loan secured or intended to be secured by that Related Security or any part of it) referred to in the relevant Selected Loan Repurchase Notice and, subject to the Security Agreement, upon execution of the Selected Loan Repurchase Notice by the Bond Trustee, on its own behalf and on behalf of any Other STEP Creditors, such Selected

Loans will be re-assigned or re-transferred to the Seller free from the Security created by and pursuant to the Security Agreement and all related rights of the Bond Trustee, Guarantor and any Other STEP Creditor in respect thereof, without the need for any further action. Completion of such repurchase will take place on the Guarantor Payment Date next occurring after receipt by the Seller of such Selected Loan Repurchase Notice or such other date as the Guarantor may direct in the Selected Loan Repurchase Notice (*provided* that, where a Notice to Pay has been served, such date is not to be later than the earlier to occur of the date which is (a) 10 Toronto Business Days after receipt by the Guarantor of the returned Selected Loan Repurchase Notice, or (b) the Final Maturity Date of, as applicable, the Hard Bullet Covered Bonds or the Earliest Maturing covered bonds) and the Seller will pay to the GDA Account (or as the Guarantor will direct) an amount in cash equal to the offer price specified in the relevant Selected Loan Repurchase Notice.

Any time there is no Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice outstanding and no Notice to Pay or Guarantor Acceleration Notice has been served to the Guarantor, it will be a condition to the Guarantor's right to sell Loans and their Related Security that the Asset Coverage Test will be met on the next Calculation Date prior to such sale after giving effect to the sale and taking into account amounts that will be paid or provided for on the next Guarantor Payment Date in accordance with the Priorities of Payments.

New Sellers

In the future, New Sellers (which are members of the Scotiabank Group) may accede to the Program and sell Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor. Any such New Sellers will accede to, *inter alia*, the Mortgage Sale Agreement. The sale of Loans and their Related Security by New Sellers to the Guarantor will be subject to certain conditions, including the following:

- each New Seller accedes to the terms of the Guarantor Agreement as a Limited Partner (with such subsequent amendments as may be agreed by the parties thereto) so that it has, in relation to those Loans and their Related Security to be sold by the relevant New Seller, substantially the same rights and obligations as the Seller had in relation to those Loans and their Related Security previously sold into the Portfolio under the Guarantor Agreement;
- each New Seller accedes to such Transaction Documents and enters into such other documents as may be required by the Bond Trustee, the Guarantor and/or the Cash Manager (in each case acting reasonably) to give effect to the addition of a New Seller to the transactions contemplated under the Program;
- each New Seller accedes to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement (with such subsequent amendments as may be agreed by the parties thereto) or New Mortgage Sale Agreement, so that it has, in relation to those Loans and their Related Security to be sold by the relevant New Seller, substantially the same rights and obligations as the Seller had in relation to those Loans and their Related Security included in the Initial Portfolio under the Mortgage Sale Agreement;
- any Loans and their Related Security sold by a New Seller to the Guarantor will be subject to the Loan Representations and Warranties and repurchase obligations set out in the Mortgage Sale Agreement;

140

- either (A) the Servicer services the Loans and their Related Security sold by such New Seller to the Guarantor on the terms set out in the Servicing Agreement (with such subsequent amendments as may be agreed by the parties thereto) or (B) each New Seller enters into a servicing agreement with the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee which sets out the servicing obligations of such New Seller in relation to the Loans and their Related Security sold by such New Seller to the Guarantor and which is on terms substantially similar to the terms set out in the Servicing Agreement (provided that the fees payable to the Servicer or such New Seller acting as servicer of such Loans and their Related Security would be determined on or around the date of the accession of such New Seller to the Program);
- the Bond Trustee is satisfied that any accession of a New Seller to the Program will not prejudice the Asset Coverage Test; and
- the Bond Trustee is satisfied that any modifications to the Transaction Documents in order to accommodate the accession of a New Seller to the Program will not be materially prejudicial to the interests of any of the covered bondholders.

If the above conditions are met, the consent of covered bondholders will not be required in relation to the accession of a New Seller to the Program.

Termination of Custodian

The Guarantor may, at any time, but subject to the prior written consent of the Bond Trustee (if the Custodian is not the Bond Trustee), terminate the appointment of the Custodian upon providing the Custodian with at least 60 days' prior written notice, provided that, subject to the following sentence, such termination may not be effected unless and until a replacement approved by the Bond Trustee, acting reasonably, has been found by the Guarantor which agrees to perform the duties (or substantially similar duties) of the Custodian set out in the Mortgage Sale Agreement. In the event that there is a breach by the Custodian of certain representations and warranties or a failure by the Custodian to perform certain covenants made by it under the Mortgage Sale Agreement, the Guarantor will have the right to terminate the Custodian and appoint a replacement Custodian, without the need for a replacement having been appointed upon such termination.

The Mortgage Sale Agreement is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein.

Servicing Agreement

Servicing

Pursuant to the terms of the Servicing Agreement, the Servicer (who will initially be the Bank) will provide services, on behalf of the Guarantor in relation to the Loans and their Related Security comprised in the Portfolio.

The Servicer will administer the Loans and their Related Security comprised in the Portfolio in accordance with applicable law, the Servicing Agreement and the other Transaction Documents and with reasonable care and diligence, using that degree of skill and attention that they exercise in managing, servicing, administering, collecting on and performing similar functions relating to comparable loans that it services for itself.

With respect to STEP Loans, the Servicing Agreement will give the Servicer the sole and exclusive right to service all STEP Loans made to a particular STEP borrower that are secured by the same STEP Collateral Mortgage and other Related Security, whether or not owned by the Guarantor. The Transaction Documents will further require all STEP Loans and Other STEP Products to be serviced by the Servicer in a manner consistent with the respective rights, interests and priorities of the Guarantor, the Seller and any Other STEP Creditor as described in "*—Mortgage Sale Agreement—Scotia Total Equity Plan and STEP Loans*," but in all cases giving due consideration to the priority of the STEP Loans owned by the Guarantor. The Bank will initially service all STEP Loans and Other STEP Products.

The Servicer will, subject to the terms and conditions of the Servicing Agreement, the terms of the Loans and their Related Security (including, if applicable, the STEP Plan), the Mortgage Sale Agreement and the Security Agreement, have the full power, authority and right to do or cause to be done any and all things, not inconsistent with the sale, transfer and assignment of the Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor, which it reasonably considers necessary, convenient or incidental to the servicing of the Loans and their Related Security or the exercise of such rights, powers and discretions.

Right of delegation by the Servicer

The Servicer may, under certain terms and conditions, sub-contract or delegate the performance of all or any of its powers and obligations under the Servicing Agreement. Notwithstanding any sub-contracting or delegation of the performance of its obligations under the Servicing Agreement, the Servicer will not be released or discharged from any liability and will remain responsible for the performance of all of its obligations under the Servicing Agreement, and the performance or non-performance or the manner of performance by any sub-contractor or delegate of any of the services will not affect the Servicer's obligations under the Servicing Agreement and any breach in the performance of the services by such sub-contractor or delegate will, subject to the Servicer being entitled for a period of 20 Toronto Business Days from receipt of any notice of the breach to remedy such breach by any sub-contractor or delegate, be treated as a breach of the Servicing Agreement by the Servicer.

Undertakings of the Servicer

Pursuant to the terms of the Servicing Agreement, the Servicer will in relation to those Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio that it is servicing, *inter alia*:

- keep and maintain records and books of account in respect of the Portfolio for the purposes of identifying amounts paid by the related borrower, any amount due from such borrower and the Outstanding Principal Balance of the Loans and such other records as would be kept by reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Servicer's market;
- provide the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee with access to the Customer Files and other records relating to the administration of the Loans and their Related Security in its possession;

- assist the Cash Manager in the preparation of a the Investor Report;
- give timely notice to the borrower of each Loan of any default in payment or other default thereunder, or under any related agreements;
- investigate all delinquencies and defaults under the Loans;
- hold as trust property for and on behalf of the Guarantor, free of any adverse claim, all collections received in respect of the Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio and Customer Files with respect to the Loans;
- take such enforcement actions and proceedings in respect of the Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio as it would be reasonable to expect reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Servicer's market to take in administering their loans and their related security; and
- take all other action and do all other things which would be reasonable to expect reasonable and prudent institutional mortgage lenders in the Servicer's market to do in administering their loans and their related security.

Remuneration

The Seller will perform the duties and obligations of the Servicer pursuant to the terms of the Servicing Agreement at no additional cost to the Guarantor, in consideration for the purchase price received by it for the Loans and their Related Security sold by it to the Guarantor pursuant to the Mortgage Sale Agreement. The Servicer will not be entitled to any additional compensation for the performance of its obligations under the Servicing Agreement or any reimbursement for the costs and expenses incurred by it in connection therewith, it being acknowledged that the Loans, the Related Security and the other assets comprised in the Portfolio have been sold pursuant to the Mortgage Sale Agreement on a fully-serviced basis. In the event the Servicer is replaced in accordance with the terms of the Servicing Agreement by a person other than an affiliate of the Bank, unless otherwise agreed by the parties to the Servicing Agreement, the Guarantor will on each Guarantor Payment Date reimburse such person, in accordance with the applicable Priority of Payments, for all costs, expenses, disbursements, charges and fees (together with any applicable Taxes due thereon) properly incurred by such person in the performance of its services as successor Servicer.

Representations and Warranties of the Servicer

Under the Servicing Agreement, the Servicer represents and warrants to the Guarantor, the Seller, the Cash Manager, and the Bond Trustee that (i) it possesses the necessary experience, qualifications, facilities and other resources to perform its responsibilities in relation to its duties and obligations thereunder; (ii) it is and will continue to be in good standing with OSFI; (iii) it is and will continue to be in regulatory good standing and in material compliance with and under all laws applicable to its duties and obligations thereunder and under the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party; (iv) the unsecured, unsubordinated and unguaranteed debt obligations (or in the case of Fitch, the issuer default ratings) of the Servicer are rated by each of the Rating Agencies at ratings that are at or above the threshold ratings of (x) Baa2 (in respect of Moody's), (y) F2 (in respect of Fitch), and (z) BBB (low) (in respect DBRS) as applicable (the **"Servicer Replacement Ratings"**); and (v) it is and will continue to be in material compliance with its internal policies and procedures (including risk management policies) relevant to its duties and obligations thereunder.

Removal or resignation of the Servicer

The Guarantor and the Bond Trustee may, upon written notice to the Servicer, terminate the Servicer's rights and obligations (unless otherwise specified below) if any of the following events (each a "**Servicer Termination Event**" and, each of the first three events and the last event set out below, a "**Servicer Event of Default**") occurs:

- one or more Rating Agencies downgrade the Servicer's unsecured, unguaranteed and unsubordinated debt obligations, or its issuer default ratings, below the Servicer Replacement Ratings;
- the Servicer defaults in the payment of any amount due to the Guarantor under the Servicing Agreement and fails to remedy that default for a period of three Toronto Business Days after the earlier of the Servicer becoming aware of the default and receipt by the Servicer of written notice from the Bond Trustee or the Guarantor requiring the same be remedied;
- default is made by the Servicer (or any delegate thereof) in the performance of its obligations under the Servicing Agreement at any time that one or more Rating Agencies has downgraded the Servicer's unsecured, unguaranteed and unsubordinated debt obligations, or its issuer default ratings, below the Servicer Deposit Threshold Ratings, and such default continues unremedied for a period of one (1) Toronto Business Day after the earlier of the Servicer becoming aware of such default and receipt by the Servicer of written notice from the Bond Trustee or the Guarantor requiring the same to be remedied;
- the Guarantor resolves, after due consideration and acting reasonably, that the appointment of the Servicer should be terminated provided that a substitute servicer has entered into a servicing agreement with the parties hereto (excluding the Servicer) on terms and conditions substantially similar to the terms and conditions contained herein, and with respect to which the Rating Agency Condition has been satisfied;
- an Insolvency Event occurs in relation to the Servicer;
- there is a breach by the Servicer of certain representations and warranties or a failure by the Servicer to perform certain covenants made by it under the Servicing Agreement;
- If the Servicer is the Bank or an affiliate of the Bank, an Issuer Event of Default (i) occurs and is continuing, or (ii) previously occurred and is continuing, at any time that the Guarantor is not Independently Controlled and Governed; or
- the Servicer fails to comply with any of its other covenants and obligations under the Servicing Agreement which failure in the reasonable opinion of the Bond Trustee is materially prejudicial to the interests of the holders of the covered bonds and does not remedy such failure within the earlier of 30 Toronto Business Days after becoming aware of the failure and receipt by the Servicer of written notice from the Bond Trustee or the Guarantor requiring the same to be remedied.

144

In the case of the occurrence of the first Servicer Termination Event described above, at any time that the Guarantor is not Independently Controlled and Governed, the Guarantor will by notice in writing to the Servicer terminate its appointment as Servicer with effect from a date (not earlier than the date of the notice) specified in the notice.

Any resolution to terminate the Servicer's appointment under the Servicing Agreement will be notified to the Rating Agencies. Any such termination will become effective upon the appointment of a successor Servicer in place of the Servicer.

Subject to the fulfillment of a number of conditions, the Servicer may resign and terminate its appointment as the Servicer upon the expiry of not less than 12 months' written notice to the Bond Trustee, the Guarantor and each Rating Agency, *provided* that:

(a) if the Servicer who wishes to terminate its appointment is the Bank, the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee consent in writing to such termination;

(b) one or more new servicer(s) or successor servicer(s) will be appointed, with such appointment to be effective no later than the date of such resignation, and the Servicer who wishes to terminate its appointment notifies the Rating Agencies in writing of the identity of such new servicer(s) or successor servicer(s);

(c) each new servicer(s) or successor servicer(s) is qualified to act as such under applicable laws;

(d) each new servicer(s) or successor servicer(s) enters into an agreement substantially on the same terms as the relevant provisions of the Servicing Agreement with the Guarantor and the Bond Trustee (which agreement may, for the avoidance of doubt, provide for the payment of such fees, costs and expenses of the new servicer(s) as the Guarantor and Bond Trustee may deem appropriate in accordance with the relevant provisions of the Servicing Agreement) and the Servicer will not be released from its obligations under the relevant provisions of the Servicing Agreement until such new servicer(s) or successor servicer(s) has entered into such new agreement;

(e) each new servicer(s) or successor servicer(s) agrees to service the STEP Loans and any related Other STEP Products in the manner contemplated in the relevant provisions of the Servicing Agreement; and

(f) the Rating Agency Condition has been satisfied with respect to such resignation and appointment of the new servicer(s) or successor servicer(s), unless the resignation is otherwise agreed to by an Extraordinary Resolution of the covered bondholders.

If the appointment of the Servicer is terminated, the Servicer must promptly deliver the Customer Files relating to the Loans comprised in the Portfolio in its possession to, or at the direction of, the Guarantor. The Servicing Agreement will terminate at such time as the Guarantor has no further interest in any of the Loans or their Related Security serviced under the Servicing Agreement that have been comprised in the Portfolio.

The Bond Trustee is not obliged to act as Servicer in any circumstances.

The Servicing Agreement is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein.

Cover Pool Monitor Agreement

Under the terms of the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement entered into on the Program Date between the Cover Pool Monitor, the Guarantor, the Bank, the Cash Manager and the Bond Trustee, the Cover Pool Monitor has agreed, subject to due receipt of the information to be provided by the Cash Manager to the Cover Pool Monitor, to carry out arithmetic testing of, and report on the arithmetic accuracy of the calculations performed by the Cash Manager once each year and more frequently in certain circumstances as required by the terms of the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement with a view to confirming that the Asset Coverage Test or the Amortization Test, as applicable, is met on each applicable Calculation Date, and (ii) confirming the accuracy of the Valuation Calculation.

If the arithmetic testing conducted by the Cover Pool Monitor reveals any errors in the calculations performed by the Cash Manager, the Cover Pool Monitor will be required to conduct such arithmetic tests and report on such arithmetic accuracy for (a) the last Calculation Period of each calendar quarter of the preceding year, (b) each Calculation Period of the current year until such arithmetic testing demonstrates no arithmetical inaccuracy for three consecutive Calculation Periods, and (c) thereafter, the last Calculation Period of each remaining calendar quarter of the current year.

In addition to the arithmetic testing described above, the Cover Pool Monitor will also perform certain specified procedures in relation to the Portfolio and verify compliance by the Bank, the Guarantor and the Program with certain aspects of the Legislative Framework and the CMHC Guide.

The Cover Pool Monitor is entitled, in the absence of manifest error, to assume that all information provided to it by the Cash Manager for the purpose of performing its duties under the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement is true and correct and not misleading and is not required to report as such or otherwise take steps to verify the accuracy of any such information. Each report of the Cover Pool Monitor delivered in accordance with the terms of the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement will be delivered to the Cash Manager, the Guarantor, the Bank, the Bond Trustee and CMHC.

The Guarantor will pay to the Cover Pool Monitor a fee per report (exclusive of applicable taxes), equal to the amount set out in the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement from time to time, for the reports to be performed by the Cover Pool Monitor.

The Guarantor may, at any time, but subject to the prior written consent of the Bond Trustee, terminate the appointment of the Cover Pool Monitor by giving at least 60 days' prior written notice to the Cover Pool Monitor (unless the Cover Pool Monitor defaults in the performance or observance of certain of its covenants or breaches certain of its representations and warranties made, respectively, under the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement, in which case such consent will not be required), provided that such termination may not be effected unless and until a replacement Cover Pool Monitor has been appointed by the Guarantor (such replacement to be approved by the Bond Trustee (such approval to be given if the replacement is an accountancy firm of national standing in Canada)) which agrees to perform the duties of the Cover Pool Monitor set out in the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement (or substantially similar duties).

The Cover Pool Monitor may, at any time, resign by giving at least 60 days' prior written notice to the Guarantor (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) and the Bond Trustee. The Cover Pool Monitor may resign immediately by giving written notice if any action taken by a recipient of a report delivered by the Cover Pool Monitor causes a professional conflict of interest for the Cover Pool Monitor under the rules of the professional and/or regulatory bodies regulating the activities of the Cover Pool Monitor. The Cover Pool Monitor will inform the recipients of its report as soon as reasonably practicable of any action of which the Cover Pool Monitor is aware that may cause a professional conflict of interest for the Cover Pool Monitor which could result in its resignation.

If the Guarantor has not, using all commercially reasonable endeavors, appointed a replacement Cover Pool Monitor (such replacement to be approved by the Bond Trustee) within 60 days of the giving of notice of resignation or termination or by the date which is 30 days prior to the date when tests are to be carried out in accordance with the terms of the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement, then the Guarantor will use all commercially reasonable endeavors to appoint an accountancy firm of national standing in Canada which meets the requirements of a cover pool monitor in the CMHC Guide to carry out the duties of the Cover Pool Monitor set out in the Cover Pool Monitor Agreement on a one-off basis, provided that such appointment is approved by the Bond Trustee, acting reasonably.

The Bond Trustee will not be obliged to act as Cover Pool Monitor in any circumstances.

The Cover Pool Monitor Agreement is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein.

Guarantor Agreement

The general and limited partners of the Guarantor operate the business of the Guarantor in accordance with the terms of the Guarantor Agreement between the Managing GP, as managing general partner, the Liquidation GP, as liquidation general partner, the Bank, as Limited Partner and the Bond Trustee, together with such other persons as may become partners of the Guarantor. Any Partner must be a resident of Canada for purposes of the ITA.

General Partner and Limited Partners of the Guarantor

The Managing GP is the initial managing general partner and the Liquidation GP is the initial liquidation general partner and the Bank is currently the sole limited partner of the Guarantor. The Partners have the duties and obligations, rights, powers and privileges specified in the *Limited Partnership Act* (Ontario) and pursuant to the terms of the Guarantor Agreement.

No new limited partner may be otherwise appointed, and no new general partner may be added or general partner replaced without, among other requirements, (i) the consent of the Partners and, while there are covered bonds outstanding, the Bond Trustee, and (ii) satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition.

Under the Guarantor Agreement, the Limited Partner represents and warrants to the other Partners that (i) it is a validly created chartered bank under the laws of Canada and is validly subsisting under such laws; (ii) it has taken all necessary action to authorize the execution, delivery and performance of the Guarantor Agreement; (iii) it has the capacity and corporate authority to enter into and perform its obligations under the Guarantor Agreement and such obligations do not conflict with nor do they result in a breach of any of its constating documents or by-laws or any material agreement by which it is bound or any applicable law the breach of which would have a material effect; (iv) no authorization, consent or approval of, or filing with or notice to, any person is required in connection with the execution, delivery or performance of the Guarantor Agreement by the Limited Partner, other than whose which have been obtained; (v) it is not a non-resident of Canada for purposes of the ITA and will retain such status during the term of the partnership governed by the Guarantor Agreement; (vi) it will not transfer any interest it holds in the Guarantor to a non-resident of Canada for purposes of the ITA; (vii) it will at all times comply with the CMHC Guide; and (viii) it will at all times comply with, and perform its obligations under, the provisions of the Guarantor Agreement and each other Transaction Document to which it is a party in any capacity.

Capital Contributions

The Managing GP and the Liquidation GP hold 99 percent and 1 percent respectively of the 0.05 percent general partner interest. The Limited Partner holds the substantial economic interest in the Guarantor (approximately 99.95 percent). The Limited Partner may from time to time make additional Capital Contributions. Such Capital Contributions may be Cash Capital Contributions or Capital Contributions in Kind. In the case of the latter, the Limited Partner will have an additional interest in the capital of the Guarantor equal to the fair market value of those Loans contributed by it as at the Transfer Date recorded in the Capital Account Ledger.

New Limited Partners

In the future, any person that wishes to become a new Limited Partner will, subject to the following paragraph, require the consent of the Limited Partner and, while there are covered bonds outstanding, the Bond Trustee, and be required to accede to the Mortgage Sale Agreement and any other Transaction Documents to which the Limited Partner is a party and deliver such other agreements and provide such other assurances as may be required by the Guarantor and/or the Bond Trustee (acting reasonably). Subject to compliance with the foregoing, the consent of the covered bondholders will not be required to the accession of a new Limited Partner to the Guarantor. The admission of a new Limited Partner will also be subject to satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition.

Subject to the satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition, the Limited Partner may assign all or some portion of its interest in the Guarantor to any subsidiary by giving written notice of such assignment to the CMHC, each of the Managing GP and the Liquidation GP, and the Bond Trustee, and the assignee of such interest acceding to the Guarantor Agreement. Any such assignment shall not require the consent of the general partners, Bond Trustee, the holders of the covered bonds or, if applicable, any other Limited Partner.

Capital Distributions

Provided the Asset Coverage Test will be met after giving effect to any Capital Distribution, the Managing GP, may from time to time, in its discretion, make Capital Distributions to the Partners in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement, and provided that such Capital Distributions are permitted under the applicable Priorities of Payments and the Security Agreement. Pursuant to the terms of the Guarantor Agreement distributions to the Liquidation GP will be limited to an amount which may be less than the Liquidation GP's *pro rata* interest in the Guarantor.

Asset Coverage Test

Under the terms of the Guarantor Agreement, the Guarantor is required to ensure that, as of each Calculation Date, the ACT Asset Value (as defined below) is in an amount at least equal to the ACT Liability Value (as defined below) as calculated as of the relevant Calculation Date.

If as of any Calculation Date the ACT Asset Value (as defined below) is less than the ACT Liability Value (as defined below) as of the relevant Calculation Date, then the Managing GP (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) will notify the Guarantor, CMHC, the Partners and the Bond Trustee thereof. In such circumstances, the Partners (other than the Liquidation GP) shall use all reasonable efforts to ensure that the Guarantor satisfies the Asset Coverage Test prior to the next Calculation Date. If the ACT Asset Value is less than the ACT Liability Value as of the next following Calculation Date, the Asset Coverage Test will be breached and the Managing GP (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) will serve an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice on the Guarantor, the Partners and the Bond Trustee in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement. Under the Guarantor Agreement, the Managing GP (or the Cash Manager on its behalf), the Bond Trustee will revoke an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice if, as of any Calculation Date falling on or prior to the Guarantor Payment Date immediately following the Calculation Date after the service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice, the Asset Coverage Test is subsequently satisfied and neither a Notice to Pay nor a Guarantor Acceleration Notice has been served. In such circumstances where the Asset Coverage Test is not satisfied, the Limited Partner shall use all reasonable efforts to, in its sole discretion, (i) make advances under the Intercompany Loan, (ii) sell Loans and their Related Security to the Guarantor, or (iii) make a Capital Contribution in cash or in kind, in any case on or before the next Calculation Date in amounts sufficient to ensure that the Guarantor is in compliance with the Asset Coverage Test prior to the next following Calculation Date.

Following service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice (which has not been revoked):

(i) the Guarantor may be required to sell Selected Loans (as described further under *"Sale of Selected Loans at any time an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is Outstanding or a Notice to Pay has been Served to the Guarantor"* below); and

(ii) prior to the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice or, if earlier, the occurrence of a Guarantor Event of Default and service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice, the Pre-Acceleration Revenue Priority of Payments and the Pre-Acceleration Principal Priorities of Payments will be modified as more particularly described in "*Cashflows—Allocation and distribution of Available Revenue Receipts and Available Principal Receipts when an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding but no Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event has occurred*" below.

If an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice has been served and not revoked on or before the Guarantor Payment Date immediately following the Calculation Date after service of such Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice, then an Issuer Event of Default will occur and the Bond Trustee will be entitled (and, in certain circumstances may be required) to serve an Issuer Acceleration Notice. Following service of an Issuer Acceleration Notice, the Bond Trustee will be required to serve a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor.

For the purposes hereof:

"**Asset Coverage Test**" = **ACT Asset Value – ACT Liability Value**

"**ACT Asset Value**" = A + B + C + D + E – F

where:

A = the lower of (1) and (2):

(1) the sum of the LTV Adjusted Loan Balance of each Loan in the Portfolio, net of Adjustments; and

(2) the sum of the Asset Percentage Adjusted Loan Balance of each Loan in the Portfolio, net of Adjustments

B = Principal Receipts up to the related Calculation Date not otherwise applied on such Calculation Date

C = the aggregate cash capital contributions made by Partners or proceeds advanced under the Intercompany Loan Agreement or proceeds from any sale of Eligible Loans or other cash exclusive of Revenue Receipts up to the related Calculation Date

D = the outstanding principal amount of any Substitute Assets

E = the amount credited to the Reserve Fund balance and/or amount credited to the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger, as applicable

F = the product of:

(1) the weighted average remaining maturity of all outstanding covered bonds (in years and, where less than a year, deemed to be a year);

(2) the Principal Amount Outstanding of all covered bonds; and

(3) the Negative Carry Factor

"**LTV Adjusted Loan Balance**" = the lower of (1) and (2):

(1) the True Loan Balance of the relevant Loan; and

(2) if such Loan is a Performing Eligible Loan, 80% of the Market Value of the related Mortgaged Property or, if such loan is a Non-Performing Eligible Loan, zero

"**Asset Percentage Adjusted Loan Balance**" = the Asset Percentage x the lower of (1) and (2):

(1) the True Loan Balance of the relevant Loan; and

(2) if such Loan is a Performing Eligible Loan, the Market Value of the related Mortgaged Property or, if such loan is a Non-Performing Eligible Loan, zero

"**Performing Eligible Loans**" = Eligible Loans that are less than three months in arrears

"**Adjustments**" = the sum of:

(1) the LTV Adjusted Loan Balance or Asset Percentage Adjusted Loan Balance (as the case may be) of any Performing Eligible Loan in breach of the Loan Representations and Warranties or otherwise subject to the Seller's repurchase obligation (but yet to be repurchased) under the Mortgage Sale Agreement; and

(2) financial losses (yet to be recompensed) resulting from any breach by the Seller of any other material warranty in the Mortgage Sale Agreement or from any breach by the Servicer of a material term of the Servicing Agreement

"**True Loan Balance**" = *sum of*:

(1) the outstanding loan balance of the relevant Loan; and

(2) all arrears of interest and accrued interest in respect of the relevant Loan

"**Asset Percentage**" = As determined below

"**Negative Carry Factor**" =

(1) if the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds relative to the interest rate receivable on the Portfolio is less than or equal to 0.1% per annum, then 0.5%; and

(2) if the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds relative to the interest rate receivable on the Portfolio is greater than 0.1% per annum, then the sum of (x) 0.5% and (y) the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds less 0.1 %,

unless the interest rate risk represented by the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds relative to the interest rate receivable on the Portfolio is addressed or mitigated by the Interest Rate Swap Agreement, whereupon the Negative Carry Factor will be nil

"**ACT Liability Value**" **=** the nominal amount of covered bond liabilities in Canadian Dollars (with currency transaction undertaken using or at foreign exchange rates reflected in the related Covered Bond Swap Agreement)

The "**Asset Percentage**" will be determined as follows:

On or prior to the Guarantor Payment Date immediately following the Calculation Date falling in February, May, August and November of each year, and on such other date as the Limited Partner may request following the date on which the Limited Partner is required to assign the Interest Rate Swap Agreement to a third party (each such date a "**Cash Flow Model Calculation Date**"), the Managing GP (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) will determine the percentage figure selected by it as the Asset Percentage based on such methodologies as the Rating Agencies may prescribe from time to time (to ensure sufficient credit enhancement for the Covered Bond Guarantee will be maintained) for the Portfolio based on the value of the Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio as at the Calculation Date immediately preceding the Cash Flow Model Calculation Date as a whole or on the basis of a sample of Randomly Selected Loans (as described below) in the Portfolio, such calculations to be made on the same basis throughout unless the Rating Agency Condition has been satisfied in respect thereof.

The Asset Percentage will from time to time be adjusted in accordance with the various methodologies of the Rating Agencies to ensure that sufficient credit enhancement for the Covered Bond Guarantee will be maintained.

The Managing GP (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) will, or will use all reasonable efforts to cause one or more Rating Agencies to, determine the Asset Percentage at least two days prior to the Guarantor Payment Date following the Cash Flow Model Calculation Date and the Asset Percentage so determined will be the lowest percentage so determined by any of the Rating Agencies in the manner set forth above and will apply to any calculations in respect of the Calculation Period ending on such Cash Flow Model Calculation Date and each Calculation Period thereafter to but excluding the last day of the following Calculation Period ending on a Cash Flow Model Calculation Date. To the extent a Rating Agency does not respond to a request for a newly-determined Asset Percentage, the Asset Percentage last determined by such Rating Agency will continue to be the applicable percentage with respect to such Rating Agency.

The Asset Percentage will at all times be less than or equal to 95%, as determined in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement, provided that the Asset Percentage will not be less than 80% unless otherwise agreed by the Bank (and following an Issuer Event of Default, the Guarantor for the purposes of making certain determinations in respect of the Intercompany Loan). Any increase in the maximum Asset Percentage will be deemed to be a material amendment to the Trust Deed and will require satisfaction of the Rating Agency Condition.

"**Randomly Selected Loans**" means Loans and, if applicable, their Related Security, in the Portfolio, selected in accordance with the terms of the Guarantor Agreement on a basis that (i) such Loans would not, or would not reasonably be expected to, adversely affect the interests of the covered bondholders, and (ii) such Loans are not designed to favor the selection of any identifiable class or type or quality of Loans and their Related Security over all Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio, provided that for such purpose, all STEP Loans made to the same STEP borrower that are owned by the Guarantor will be considered as a single Loan.

Amortization Test

The Guarantor must ensure that as of each Calculation Date following an Issuer Event of Default that is continuing, the Amortization Asset Value will be in an amount at least equal to the Amortization Liability Value as calculated as of the relevant Calculation Date.

If on any Calculation Date following an Issuer Event of Default that is continuing, the Amortization Asset Value is less than the Amortization Liability Value as calculated as of the relevant Calculation Date, then the Amortization Test will be deemed to be breached and a Guarantor Event of Default will occur. The Guarantor or the Cash Manager, as the case may be, will immediately notify the Partners, CMHC and the Bond Trustee of any breach of the Amortization Test.

"**Amortization Test**" **= Amortization Asset Value – Amortization Liability Value**

"**Amortization Asset Value**" = A + B + C – D

where:

A = the aggregate Amortization True Loan Balance of each Loan in the Portfolio*:*

B = the amount of any cash standing to the GDA Account (exclusive of any Revenue Receipts up to the Calculation Date not otherwise applied)

C = the outstanding principal amount of any Substitute Assets

D = the product of:

(1) the weighted average remaining maturity of all outstanding covered bonds (in years and, where less than a year, deemed to be a year);

(2) the Principal Amount Outstanding of all covered bonds; and

(3) the Negative Carry Factor

"**Amortization True Loan Balance**" = the lower of (1) and (2)

(1) the True Loan Balance of the relevant Loan; and

(2) if such Loan is a Performing Eligible Loan, 80% of the Market Value of the related Mortgaged Property, or if such Loan is a Non-Performing Eligible Loan, zero

"**Negative Carry Factor**" =

(1) if the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds relative to the interest rate receivable on the Portfolio is less than or equal to 0.1% per annum, then 0.5%; and

(2) if the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds relative to the interest rate receivable on the Portfolio is greater than 0.1% per annum, then the sum of (x) 0.5% and (y) the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds less 0.1%,

unless the interest rate risk represented by the weighted average margin of the interest rate payable on the outstanding covered bonds relative to the interest rate receivable on the Portfolio is addressed or mitigated by the Interest Rate Swap Agreement, and the "Effective Date" thereunder has occurred, whereupon the Negative Carry Factor will be nil

"**Amortization Liability Value**" = the nominal amount of covered bond liabilities in Canadian Dollars (with currency translations undertaken using or at foregoing exchange rates reflected in the related Covered Bond Swap Agreement or, to the extent the foreign exchange risk of a non-Canadian Dollar denominated covered bond liability is not or no longer the subject of (or otherwise addressed or mitigated by) a Covered Bond Swap Agreement (by reason of termination or otherwise) end of day spot foreign exchange rates).

Valuation Calculation

The "**Valuation Calculation**" is equal to the VC Asset Value (as defined below) minus the Canadian Dollar Equivalent of the Trading Value of the aggregate Principal Amount Outstanding of the covered bonds as calculated on the relevant Calculation Date. For greater certainty, references in this Schedule to "immediately preceding Calculation Date" and "previous Calculation Date" are to the Calculation Period ending on the Calculation Date.

For the purposes of the Valuation Calculation, the "**VC Asset Value**" means the amount calculated as at each Calculation Date as follows:

A + B + C + D + E + F

where:

A = the aggregate "**LTV Adjusted Loan Present Value**" of (i) each Loan that is a Performing Eligible Loan, which shall be the lower of (1) the Present Value of the relevant Loan on such Calculation Date, and (2) 80% multiplied by the Latest Valuation relating to that Loan, and (ii) each Loan that is a Non-Performing Eligible Loan, which shall be equal to zero

minus

the aggregate sum of the following deemed reductions to the aggregate LTV Adjusted Loan Present Value of the Loans in the Portfolio if any of the following occurred during the previous Calculation Period:

(1) a Loan or its Related Security was, in the immediately preceding Calculation Period, in breach of the Loan Representations and Warranties contained in the Mortgage Sale Agreement or subject

to any other obligation of the Seller to repurchase the relevant Loan and its Related Security, and in each case the Seller has not repurchased the Loan or Loans of the relevant borrower and its or their Related Security to the extent required by the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement. In this event, the aggregate LTV Adjusted Loan Present Value of the Loans in the Portfolio on such Calculation Date will be deemed to be reduced by an amount equal to the LTV Adjusted Loan Present Value of the relevant Loan or Loans on such Calculation Date of the relevant borrower; and/or

(2) the Seller, in any preceding Calculation Period, was in breach of any other material warranty under the Mortgage Sale Agreement and/or the Servicer was, in any preceding Calculation Period, in breach of a material term of the Servicing Agreement. In this event, the aggregate LTV Adjusted Loan Present Value of the Loans in the Portfolio on such Calculation Date will be deemed to be reduced by an amount equal to the resulting financial loss incurred by the Guarantor in the immediately preceding Calculation Period (such financial loss to be calculated by the Cash Manager without double counting and to be reduced by any amount paid (in cash or in kind) to the Guarantor by the Seller to indemnify the Guarantor for such financial loss);

B = the aggregate amount of any Principal Receipts on the Loans and their Related Security up to such Calculation Date (as recorded in the Principal Ledger) which have not been applied as at such Calculation Date to acquire further Loans and their Related Security or otherwise applied in accordance with the Priorities of Payments of the Guarantor Agreement and/or the other Transaction Documents;

C = the aggregate amount of (i) any Cash Capital Contributions made by the Partners (as recorded in the Capital Account Ledger for each Partner of the Guarantor), (ii) proceeds advanced under the Intercompany Loan Agreement or (iii) proceeds from any sale of Selected Loans which, in each case, have not been applied as at such Calculation Date to acquire further Loans and their Related Security or otherwise applied in accordance with the Priorities of Payments and/or the other Transaction Documents;

D = the Trading Value of any Substitute Assets;

E = the balance, if any, of the Reserve Fund and the amounts credited to the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger, as applicable; and

F = the Trading Value of the Swap Collateral, if applicable.

155

"Trading Value" = The value determined with reference to one of the methods set forth in (a) through (f) below which can reasonably be considered the most accurate indicator of institutional market value in the circumstances:

(a) the last selling price;
(b) the average of the high and low selling price on the calculation date;
(c) the average selling price over a given period of days (not exceeding 30) preceding the calculation date;
(d) the close of day bid price on the calculation date (in the case of an asset);
(e) the close of day ask price on the calculation date (in the case of a liability);
(f) such other value as may be indicated by at least two actionable quotes obtained from appropriate market participants instructed to have regard for the nature of the asset or liability, its liquidity and the current interest rate environment

plus accrued return where applicable (with currency translations undertaken using or at the average close of day foreign exchange rates posted on the Bank of Canada website for the month in relation to which the calculation is made), provided that, in each case, the methodology selected, the reasons therefor and the determination of value pursuant to such selected methodology shall be duly documented.

Sale of Selected Loans following a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test

The Pre-Maturity Test will be breached if one or more Rating Agencies downgrades the Bank's unsecured, unsubordinated and unguaranteed debt obligations or issuer default rating, as applicable, below the Pre-Maturity Required Ratings and a Hard Bullet Covered Bond is due for repayment within a specified period of time thereafter. See "*Description of the Covered Bonds—Credit Structure—Pre-Maturity Test.*" If the Pre-Maturity Test is breached, the Guarantor will offer to sell Selected Loans pursuant to the terms of the Guarantor Agreement (see "*—Method of sale of Portfolio assets*" below), subject to:

(a) any right of pre-emption of the Seller pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement;
(b) a Capital Contribution in Kind made by one or more of the Partners (as recorded in the Capital Account Ledger for such Partners) of certain Substitute Assets in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement with an aggregate principal amount up to the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Required Amount (which will be a credit to the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger); or
(c) Cash Capital Contributions made by one or more of the Partners (as recorded in the Capital Account Ledger for each applicable Partner) or proceeds advanced under the Intercompany Loan Agreement which have not been applied to acquire further Portfolio assets or otherwise applied in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement and/or the other Transaction Documents with an aggregate principal

156

amount up to the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Required Amount (which will be a credit to the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger).

If the Bank fails to repay any Series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds on the Final Maturity Date thereof, then following the occurrence of an Issuer Event of Default and service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor, funds standing to the credit of the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger will be applied to repay the relevant Series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds. Otherwise, the proceeds will be applied as set out in "*Description of the Covered Bonds—Credit Structure—Pre-Maturity Test*" above.

Sale of Selected Loans after a Demand Loan Repayment Event has occurred or the Bank has otherwise demanded that the Demand Loan be repaid

If, prior to the service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice or a Notice to Pay, a Demand Loan Repayment Event has occurred or the Bank has demanded that the Demand Loan be repaid, the Guarantor may (a) sell Selected Loans in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement (see "*—Method of sale of Portfolio assets*" below), subject to the rights of pre-emption enjoyed by the Seller to purchase the Portfolio assets pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement, or (b) make a Payment in Kind in accordance with the terms of the Intercompany Loan Agreement. Any such sale will be subject to the condition that the Asset Coverage Test is satisfied after the receipt of the proceeds of such sale and repayment, after giving effect to such repayment.

Sale of Selected Loans at any time an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding or a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor

At any time an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding or a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor, but prior to service of a Guarantor Acceleration Notice on the Guarantor, the Guarantor will be obliged to sell Selected Loans in accordance with the Guarantor Agreement (see "*—Method of sale of Portfolio assets*" below), subject to the rights of pre-emption enjoyed by the Seller to buy the Portfolio assets pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement and subject to additional advances on the Intercompany Loan and any Cash Capital Contribution made by the Limited Partner. The proceeds from any such sale or refinancing will be credited to the GDA Account and applied as set out in the Priorities of Payments (see "*Cashflows*" below).

Method of sale of Portfolio assets

If the Guarantor is required to sell Selected Loans to Purchasers following a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test, the occurrence of a Demand Loan Repayment Event, the Demand Loan being demanded by the Bank, the service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice (if not revoked) or a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor, the Guarantor will be required to ensure that before offering Selected Loans for sale:

(a) the Loans being sold are Randomly Selected Loans (as described above); and

(b) the Selected Loans have an aggregate True Loan Balance in an amount that is as close as possible to the amount calculated as follows:

157

(i) following a Demand Loan Repayment Event or the Demand Loan being demanded by the Bank but prior to service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice, such amount that would ensure that, if the Selected Loans were sold at their True Loan Balance, the Demand Loan as calculated on the date of the demand could be repaid, subject to satisfaction of the Asset Coverage Test; or

(ii) following the service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice (but prior to service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor), such amount that would ensure that, if the Selected Loans were sold at their True Loan Balance, the Asset Coverage Test would be satisfied as at the next Calculation Date taking into account the payment obligations of the Guarantor on the Guarantor Payment Date following that Calculation Date (assuming for this purpose that the Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is not revoked on the next Calculation Date); or

(iii) following a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test or service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor:

N x A/B

where:

"N" is an amount equal to

(x) in respect of Selected Loans being sold following a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test, the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Required Amount less amounts standing to the credit of the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger; or

(y) in respect of Selected Loans being sold following service of a Notice to Pay, the Canadian Dollar Equivalent of the Required Redemption Amount of the Earliest Maturing Covered Bonds less amounts standing to the credit of the Guarantor Accounts and the principal amount of any Substitute Assets (excluding all amounts to be applied on the next following Guarantor Payment Date to repay higher ranking amounts in the Guarantee Priority of Payments and those amounts that are required to repay any Series of covered bonds which mature prior to or on the same date as the relevant Series of covered bonds);

"A" is an amount equal to the True Loan Balance of all the Loans and their Related Security in the Portfolio; and

"B" is an amount equal to the Canadian Dollar Equivalent of the Required Redemption Amount in respect of each Series of covered bonds then outstanding less the Canadian Dollar Equivalent of the Required Redemption Amount in respect of each Series of covered bonds then outstanding which has been provided for in cash.

"**Required Redemption Amount**" is an amount, in respect of a Series of covered bonds, equal to the *product of* (i) the Principal Amount Outstanding of the relevant Series of covered bonds *multiplied by* (ii) the *sum of* 1 *plus* the Negative Carry Factor *multiplied by* *(iii) the quotient of the number of days to maturity of the relevant Series of covered bonds divided by 365.*

The Guarantor will offer the Selected Loans for sale to Purchasers for the best price reasonably available but in any event:

(a) following (i) a Demand Loan Repayment Event, the Demand Loan being demanded by the Bank or (ii) the service of an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice (but prior to the service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor), in each case, for an amount not less than the True Loan Balance of the Loans;
(b) following a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test or service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor, for an amount not less than the Adjusted Required Redemption Amount; and
(c) at any other time, for an amount not less than the fair market value of such Selected Loans.

Following the service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor, if the Selected Loans have not been sold (in whole or in part) in an amount equal to the Adjusted Required Redemption Amount by the date which is six months prior to, as applicable, if the covered bonds are not subject to an Extended Due for Payment Date in respect of the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Final Maturity Date or, if the covered bonds are subject to an Extended Due for Payment Date in respect of the Covered Bond Guarantee, the Extended Due for Payment Date in respect of the Earliest Maturing Covered Bonds (after taking into account all payments, provisions and credits to be made in priority thereto), or the Final Maturity Date of the relevant Series of Hard Bullet Covered Bonds in respect of a sale in connection with the Pre-Maturity Test, then the Guarantor will offer the Selected Loans for sale for the best price reasonably available notwithstanding that such amount may be less than the Adjusted Required Redemption Amount.

The Guarantor will through a tender process appoint a portfolio manager of recognized standing on a basis intended to incentivize the portfolio manager to achieve the best price for the sale of the Portfolio assets (if such terms are commercially available in the market) and to advise it in relation to the sale of the Portfolio assets to Purchasers (except where the Seller is buying the Portfolio assets in accordance with its right of pre-emption in the Mortgage Sale Agreement). The terms of the agreement giving effect to the appointment in accordance with such tender will be approved by the Bond Trustee.

In respect of any sale or refinancing (as applicable) of Selected Loans at any time an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding, there has been a breach of the Pre-Maturity Test, or a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor, the Guarantor will instruct the portfolio manager to use all reasonable efforts to procure that Selected Loans are sold or refinanced (as applicable) as quickly as reasonably practicable (in accordance with the recommendations of the portfolio manager) taking into account the market conditions at that time and the scheduled repayment dates of the covered bonds and the terms of the Guarantor Agreement.

The terms of any sale and purchase agreement with respect to the sale of Selected Loans (which will give effect to the recommendations of the portfolio manager) will be subject to the prior written approval of the Bond Trustee. The Bond Trustee will not be required to release the

Loans and their Related Security from the Security unless the conditions relating to the release of the Security (as described under "*Security Agreement—Release of Security*", below) are satisfied.

Any such sale will not include any Loan Representations and Warranties from the Guarantor or the Seller in respect of the Portfolio assets unless expressly agreed by the Bond Trustee and unless otherwise agreed with the Seller.

Following the service of a Notice to Pay on the Guarantor, if Purchasers accept the offer or offers from the Guarantor so that some or all of the Selected Loans will be sold prior to the next following Final Maturity Date or, if the covered bonds are subject to an Extended Due for Payment Date in respect of the Covered Bond Guarantee, the next following Extended Due for Payment Date in respect of the Earliest Maturing Covered Bonds, then the Guarantor will, subject to the foregoing paragraph, enter into a sale and purchase agreement with the relevant Purchasers which will require among other things a cash payment from the relevant Purchasers.

Covenants of the General Partner and Limited Partner of the Guarantor

Each of the Partners covenants that, subject to the terms of the Transaction Documents, it will not sell, transfer, convey, create or permit to arise any security interest on, create any beneficial interest in or otherwise dispose of its interest in the Guarantor without the prior written consent of the Managing GP and, while the covered bonds are outstanding, the Bond Trustee.

The Guarantor covenants that it will not, save with the prior written consent of the Limited Partner (and, for so long as any covered bonds are outstanding, the consent of the Bond Trustee) or as envisaged by the Transaction Documents:

(a) have an interest in a bank account;
(b) have any employees, premises or subsidiaries;
(c) acquire any material assets;
(d) sell, exchange, deal with or grant any option, present or future right to acquire any of the assets or undertakings of the Guarantor or any interest therein or thereto;
(e) enter into any contracts, agreements or other undertakings;
(f) incur any indebtedness or give any guarantee or indemnity in respect of any such indebtedness;
(g) create or permit to subsist any security interest over the whole or any part of the assets or undertakings, present or future of the Guarantor;
(h) change the name or business of the Guarantor or do any act in contravention of, or make any amendment to, the Guarantor Agreement;
(i) do any act which makes it impossible to carry on the ordinary business of the Guarantor, including winding up the Guarantor;
(j) compromise, compound or release any debt due to it;

(k) commence, defend, consent to a judgment, settle or compromise any litigation or other claims relating to it or any of its assets;

(l) permit a person to become a general or limited partner (except in accordance with the terms of the Guarantor Agreement); or

(m) consolidate or merge with another person or convey or transfer its properties or assets substantially as an entirety to any other person.

Limit on investing in Substitute Assets

At any time that no Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding and prior to a Notice to Pay having been served to the Guarantor, the Guarantor will be permitted to hold Substitute Assets provided that the aggregate value of the Substitute Assets does not at any time exceed an amount equal to 10 percent of the aggregate value of (i) the aggregate loan balance of the Loans in the Portfolio, (ii) the face value of the Substitute Assets in the Portfolio, and (iii) all cash held by the Guarantor (subject to the Prescribed Cash Limitation), and provided that investments in Substitute Assets are made in accordance with the terms of the Cash Management Agreement and subject to the applicable Priority of Payments.

At any time an Asset Coverage Test Breach Notice is outstanding or a Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event has occurred, the Substitute Assets held by or on behalf of the Guarantor must be sold as quickly as reasonably practicable with proceeds credited to the GDA Account, subject at all times to the Prescribed Cash Limitation.

The Guarantor may not hold cash in excess of (such limitation, the "**Prescribed Cash Limitation**") (i) the amount necessary to meet its payment obligations for the immediately succeeding six months pursuant to the terms of the Transaction Documents, or (ii) such greater amount as CMHC may at its discretion permit in accordance with the Legislative Framework and the CMHC Guide; provided that to the extent that cash receipts of the Guarantor cause it to hold cash in excess of the amount in clause (i), the Guarantor will not be in breach of this covenant if it uses such excess amount to (x) purchase Loans and their Related Security for the Portfolio pursuant to the terms of the Mortgage Sale Agreement; and/or (y) to invest in Substitute Assets in an amount not exceeding the prescribed limit under the CMHC Guide; and/or (z) subject to complying with the Asset Coverage Test, to make Capital Distributions to the Limited Partner, in each case, within 31 days of receipt.

For greater certainty, amounts standing to the credit of the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger and the Reserve Fund (other than, in each case, those amounts that constitute Substitute Assets) constitute cash and are subject to the Prescribed Cash Limitation. In the event that the Guarantor is required to fund the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger and/or the Reserve Fund in accordance with the Transaction Documents and such funding would cause the Guarantor to hold cash in excess of the Prescribed Cash Limitation, any cash held by the Guarantor in excess of such cash standing to the credit of the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger and the Reserve Fund will be used by the Guarantor in accordance with clauses (x), (y) and (z) in the immediately preceding paragraph above to ensure that the Guarantor is not in breach of the Prescribed Cash Limitation. In the event that (i) the Guarantor is in breach of the Prescribed Cash Limitation and it does not hold any cash other than the amounts it is required to hold in order to fund the Pre-Maturity Liquidity Ledger and the Reserve Fund in accordance with the Transaction Documents or (ii) a Notice to Pay has been served to the Guarantor, the Guarantor will request that CMHC, in accordance with the discretion granted to it under the Legislative Framework and the CMHC Guide, permit the Guarantor to hold such amount of cash in excess of the Prescribed Cash Limitation as may be required to allow it to comply with the Transaction Documents in the circumstances.

The Guarantor Agreement provides that, upon the occurrence of any of the following events:

(a) the passing of any resolution of the directors or the shareholder of the Managing GP requiring or approving the bankruptcy, dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the Managing GP;
(b) the making of any assignment for the benefit of creditors of the Managing GP, or upon the appointment of a receiver of the assets and undertaking of the Managing GP,
(c) the appointment of a receiver of the assets and undertaking of the Managing GP, or
(d) the occurrence of a Covered Bond Guarantee Activation Event,

(each a "**Managing GP Default Event**"), the initial Managing GP (being Scotiabank Covered Bond GP Inc.) will cease to be the Managing GP of the Guarantor, and the Liquidation GP will be automatically appointed the new Managing GP without the need for consent on the part of any person.

Other Provisions

The allocation and distribution of Revenue Receipts, Principal Receipts and all other amounts received by the Guarantor is described under "*Cashflows*" below.

For so long as any covered bonds are outstanding, each of the Partners has agreed that it will not terminate or purport to terminate the Guarantor or institute any winding-up, administration, insolvency or other similar proceedings against the Guarantor or any of its general partners. Furthermore, each of the Partners has agreed, among other things, except as otherwise specifically provided in the Transaction Documents not to demand or receive payment of any amounts payable to such Partners by the Guarantor (or the Cash Manager on its behalf) or the Bond Trustee unless all amounts then due and payable by the Guarantor to all other creditors ranking higher in the relevant Priorities of Payments have been paid in full.

Each of the Partners will be responsible for the payment of its own tax liabilities and will be required to indemnify the other from any liabilities which they incur as a result of the relevant partner's non-payment.

Following the appointment of a liquidator or receiver to any partner, any decisions of the Guarantor that are reserved to the Partners or a unanimous decision of the Partners in the Guarantor Agreement will be made by the Partner(s) not in liquidation or receivership only.

The Guarantor Agreement is governed by the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein.

Cash Management Agreement

The Cash Manager (initially the Bank) will provide certain cash management services to the Guarantor pursuant to the terms of the Cash Management Agreement between the Guarantor, the Cash Manager, GDA Provider, Seller and Servicer and the Bond Trustee.

The Cash Manager's services include but are not limited to:

(i) maintaining the Ledgers on behalf of the Guarantor;
(ii) distributing the Revenue Receipts and the Principal Receipts in accordance with the Priorities of Payments described under "*Cashflows*" below;

Return of Notional Cash Investment in the Notional Interest Rate:
0.017%

Accrued Portion of the 0.65% Per Annum:
0.002%

Index Return:
0.312%

In this example, in order to highlight the effect of rebalancing into the money market position as a result of daily total return index rebalancing, we have assumed that the realized volatility for the applicable cap period exceeds the volatility cap by 1.5%, thereby reducing the exposure to the base index (and, consequently, each index underlying asset) by 20%. We have shown what the index underlying assets' returns would have been for the index business day both without and with the daily total return index rebalancing. Since the returns on EEM, LQD, IYR and PFF were higher than the money market position, the increased weighting to the money market position for the index business day caused the return of the index to be lower than it would have been without the daily total return index rebalancing feature.

We cannot predict which eligible underlying assets will be chosen as index underlying assets on any day, the weights of the index underlying assets or what the final levels will be for any index underlying assets or the notional interest rate. The actual amount that you will receive maturity and the rate of return on the offered notes will depend on the performance of the index which will be determined by the index underlying assets chosen and their weightings.

Table of Contents

THE ELIGIBLE UNDERLYING ASSETS

The defined terms provided in the description of each eligible underlying asset apply only in the description in which they are used. Unless otherwise indicated, these definitions are not intended to be used in other sections of this prospectus supplement.

The eligible underlying asset descriptions below are provided in the following order:

ASSET CLASS	ELIGIBLE UNDERLYING ASSET	TICKER
	SPDR® S&P 500® ETF Trust	SPY
Broad-Based Equities	iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF	EFA
	iShares® MSCI Japan ETF	EWJ
	iShares® 20+ Year Treasury Bond ETF	TLT
Fixed Income	iShares® iBoxx $ Investment Grade Corporate Bond ETF	LQD
	iShares® iBoxx $ High Yield Corporate Bond ETF	HYG
	iShares® 7-10 Year Treasury Bond ETF	IEF
Emerging Markets	iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF	EEM
	iShares® U.S. Real Estate ETF	IYR
Alternatives	iShares® U.S. Preferred Stock ETF	PFF
	iShares® Nasdaq Biotechnology ETF	IBB
Commodities	SPDR® S&P® Oil & Gas Exploration & Production ETF	XOP
	SPDR® Gold Trust	GLD
Inflation	iShares® TIPS Bond ETF	TIP
Cash Equivalent	Money Market Position	N/A

Some Common Concepts

Each of the eligible ETFs may be an exchange-traded fund, a unit investment trust, a commodity pool or another entity. Each description of an eligible ETF provides information about the particular structure (type of entity) of that eligible ETF. Each of the eligible ETFs files information with the SEC. Information provided to or filed with the SEC can be inspected and copied at the public reference facilities maintained by the SEC or through the SEC's website at sec.gov. The descriptions below will provide the "CIK number" for each of the eligible ETFs, which is an identifying number that will assist you in finding information about the eligible ETFs filed with the SEC.

Each of the eligible ETFs also has certain concepts in common with most or all of the other eligible ETFs. We have described some of these common concepts below.

Investment Objective

The investment objective of most eligible ETFs is to achieve investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of a particular index. That type of eligible ETF, sometimes called a "tracking ETF," uses a passive or indexing approach to try to achieve the ETF's investment objective. The investment advisor to the ETF does not try to beat the index; the ETF tracks and does not seek temporary defensive positions when markets decline or appear overvalued. This means, among other things, that a tracking ETF typically will not sell a particular holding just because it is performing poorly. Instead, the ETF seeks to track the index regardless of whether the index level is increasing or decreasing. The descriptions below will indicate the investment objective of each ETF and will indicate which index a particular ETF tracks if it is a tracking ETF. The description also will state how much of the ETF's assets generally will be invested in the securities in the index and what else the ETF may invest in. The descriptions also will state the strategy the investment advisor uses to track the index.

The eligible ETFs that track an equity index seek to track the performance of the "total return" version of such index. A total return index represents the total return earned in a portfolio that tracks the price return index and reinvests dividend income in the overall index, not in the specific stock paying the dividend. The difference between the price return calculation and the total return calculation of an index is that, with respect to the price return calculation, changes in the index level reflect changes in stock prices, whereas with respect to the total return calculation of the index, changes in the index level reflect both movements in stock prices and the reinvestment of dividend income. In addition, some of the eligible ETFs track an index that is calculated on a net daily total return basis, which tracks the price return index and

S-73

Table of Contents

reinvests dividend income in the overall index, except that the dividend income is reinvested net of certain withholding taxes. Notwithstanding an eligible ETF's investment objective to track the performance of the total return version of an index, the return on your notes will not reflect any dividends paid on the ETF shares, on the securities purchased by the ETF or on the securities that comprise the index such ETF tracks. See "Additional Risk Factors Specific to Your Notes — You Have No Shareholder Rights or Rights to Receive Any Shares or Units of Any Eligible ETF, or Any Assets Held by Any Eligible ETF or the Money Market Position" on page S-21 of this prospectus supplement.

Tracking Error

In the case of a tracking ETF, as described above, the difference between the performance of the ETF over a period of time and the performance of the index over such period of time is called the "tracking error" over that period of time. This is typically measured as the difference between the ETF's returns and the index returns over the same period of time. This is also sometimes referred to as the "correlation" between the index and the tracking ETF. An index and ETF are perfectly correlated if the correlation is 1.00 (i.e., the tracking error is 0.00%). Tracking errors can result for a variety of reasons, but one of the common reasons is that an index is a theoretical financial calculation of the performance of certain assets, but an eligible ETF holds an actual investment portfolio. The descriptions below will discuss some of the additional reasons for tracking errors in the eligible ETFs. The eligible ETFs provide information about the performance of the index and the performance of the eligible ETF for the same period. In some cases, the eligible ETFs assume reinvestment of share distributions when calculating the performance of the market price of the shares.

Creation Units

Prior to trading in the secondary market, shares of an eligible ETF are issued at net asset value to certain institutional investors (typically market makers or other broker-dealers) only in large block-size units, known as creation units. As a practical matter, only institutions, market makers or large investors purchase or redeem creation units. Except when aggregated in creation units (or upon the liquidation of the ETF), shares of an eligible ETF are not redeemable securities. The descriptions below will describe the size of the creation units for each eligible ETF. For most investors, the important thing to know is that redemptions of creation units may cause temporary dislocations in tracking errors for tracking ETFs.

Investment Advisor

Each of the eligible ETFs has an investment advisor. Depending on the structure of the eligible ETF, there may be other key roles with respect to that eligible ETF. Those roles and the entities that perform them will be described below.

Indicative Values, Net Asset Value and Share Prices

Each of the eligible ETFs calculates a net asset value, or NAV, at the end of each trading day. This value represents the value of the eligible ETF's assets less any applicable fees and expenses. The actual trading price of an eligible ETF's shares or units in the secondary market generally differs (and may deviate significantly during periods of market volatility) from the eligible ETF's daily net asset value. This is because the trading price is affected by market forces such as supply and demand, economic conditions and other factors.

The eligible ETFs are required for regulatory reasons to disseminate an approximate net asset value, often called an "indicative value," every fifteen seconds throughout the trading day. These indicative values are disseminated by information providers or market data vendors. These approximate or indicative values should not be viewed as a "real-time" update of the net asset value of the ETF, because the approximate value may not be calculated in the same manner as the net asset value, which is computed once a day. The approximate value is generally based on quotes and closing prices from the securities' local market and may not reflect events that occur subsequent to the local market's close. In most cases, the approximate value is not calculated by the eligible ETF and may not be calculated using the same methodology. In any event, for purposes of your notes and the index, the trading prices of the shares or units of the eligible ETFs included in the calculation of the index will be based on the trading prices alone and not the NAV or these approximate values.

Table of Contents

SPDR® S&P 500® ETF Trust

The units of the SPDR® S&P 500® ETF Trust (the "units") are issued by SPDR® S&P 500® ETF Trust (the "trust"), a unit investment trust that is a registered investment company.

- The trust is like a tracking ETF in that it seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the S&P 500® Index (the "index").
- The trust does not have an investment advisor. Its investments are adjusted by the trustee.
- Trustee: State Street Global Advisors Trust Company.
- Trust sponsor: PDR Services, LLC.
- The units trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "SPY".
- The trust's SEC CIK Number is 0000884394.
- The inception date for purposes of the units was January 22, 1993.
- The trust's units are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 50,000 units.

We obtained the following fee information from the trust's publicly available information without independent verification. The Trustee is entitled to receive a fee for services performed for the trust corresponding to the net asset value of the trust, at an annual rate of 0.10% per annum for the first $499,999,999 of assets, 0.08% per annum for assets over $499,999,999 and up to $2,499,999,999 and 0.06% per annum for assets of $2,500,000,000 or more (in each case reduced or increased by an adjustment amount for transaction fees, creation and redemption expenses and interest earned on cash). As of September 30, 2018, the trust's gross expense ratio is 0.0945% per annum. The trustee has agreed to waive a portion of its fee until February 1, 2018 to the extent operating expenses exceed 0.0945% after earnings credits are applied. After February 1, 2018, the trustee may discontinue this fee waiver.

For additional information regarding SPDR® S&P 500® ETF Trust, please consult the reports (including the Semi-Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N30-D for the period ended March 31, 2018) and other information the trust files with the SEC. Additional information regarding the trust, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the SPDR® S&P 500® ETF Trust website at spdrs.com/product/fund.seam?ticker=SPY. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective and Strategy

The trust seeks investment results that, before expenses, correspond generally to the price and yield performance of the index. The trust strives to achieve its investment objective by holding a portfolio of the common stocks that are included in the index, with the weight of each stock in the trust's portfolio substantially corresponding to the weight of such stock in the index. Although the trust may fail to own certain securities included in the index at any particular time, the trust generally will be substantially invested in index securities.

To maintain the correspondence between the composition and weightings of the common stocks that are actually held by the trust and the common stocks that are included in the index, the trustee adjusts the trust portfolio from time to time to conform to periodic changes made by the index sponsor to the identity and/or relative weightings of the common stocks that are included in the index. The trustee aggregates certain of these adjustments and makes changes to the trust's portfolio at least monthly, or more frequently in the case of significant changes to the index. The trust does not hold or trade futures or swaps and is not a commodity pool.

The following table displays the top ten holdings and weightings by industry sector of the trust and index. (Sector designations are determined by the trust sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and trust sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or trusts with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or trusts.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the trust website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

Top Ten Holdings of Trust and Index as of November 12, 2018

Trust Issuer	Percentage of Trust (%)	Index Issuer	Percentage of Index (%)
APPLE INC.	3.86%	APPLE INC.	3.87%
MICROSOFT CORPORATION	3.55%	MICROSOFT CORPORATION	3.56%
AMAZON.COM INC.	2.91%	AMAZON.COM INC.	2.91%
BERKSHIRE HATHAWAY INC. CLASS B	1.82%	BERKSHIRE HATHAWAY INC. CLASS B	1.82%
JOHNSON & JOHNSON	1.69%	JOHNSON & JOHNSON	1.70%
JPMORGAN CHASE & CO.	1.59%	JPMORGAN CHASE & CO.	1.59%
FACEBOOK INC. CLASS A	1.48%	FACEBOOK INC. CLASS A	1.48%
EXXON MOBIL CORPORATION	1.47%	EXXON MOBIL CORPORATION	1.47%
ALPHABET INC. CLASS C	1.39%	ALPHABET INC. CLASS C	1.39%
ALPHABET INC. CLASS A	1.36%	ALPHABET INC. CLASS A	1.36%

Weighting by Sector of Trust and Index as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage of Trust (%)	Percentage of Index (%)
Information Technology	20.08%	20.03%
Financials	13.66%	13.65%
Health Care	15.42%	15.42%
Consumer Discretionary	10.12%	10.11%
Consumer Staples	7.49%	7.49%
Industrials	9.37%	9.36%
Energy	5.59%	5.63%
Utilities	3.13%	3.14%
Real Estate	2.87%	2.88%
Materials	2.62%	2.62%
Communication Services	9.66%	9.66%

* The Global Industry Classification Structure, which S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC utilizes to classify the constituents of the index, was updated in September 2018. Please see "The S&P 500® Index" below for additional information about these updates.

Correlation

Although the trust intends to track the performance of the index as closely as possible, the trust's return may not match or achieve a high degree of correlation with the return of the index due to expenses and transaction costs incurred in adjusting the portfolio. In addition, it is possible that the trust may not always fully replicate the performance of the index due to unavailability of certain index securities in the secondary market or due to other extraordinary circumstances (e.g., if trading in a security has been halted).

For the period ended October 31, 2018, the SPDR® website gave the following performance figures for market price of a unit and the index: unit —1 year on an annualized basis, 7.22%; 3 years on an annualized basis, 11.38%; 5 years on an annualized basis, 11.20%; 10 years on an annualized basis, 13.08%; since inception on an annualized basis, 9.36%;

Table of Contents

index—1 year on an annualized basis, 7.35%; 3 years on an annualized basis, 11.52%; 5 years on an annualized basis, 11.34%; 10 years on an annualized basis, 13.24%; since inception on an annualized basis, 9.50%.

Unit Dividends

Holders of units receive dividends on the last business day of each April, July, October and January in an amount corresponding to the amount of any cash dividends declared on the common stocks held by the trust, net of the fees and expenses associated with the operation of the trust, and taxes, if applicable. Because of the fees and expenses, the dividend yield for units is ordinarily less than the hypothetical dividend yield of the index. The unit dividends will be reflected in the calculation of the index as described under "—Calculation of the Total Return of the Index" on page S-78 below.

The S&P 500® Index

The index includes a representative sample of 500 companies in leading industries of the U.S. economy. The 500 companies are not the 500 largest companies listed on the NYSE and not all 500 companies are listed on the NYSE. S&P chooses companies for inclusion in the index with an aim of achieving a distribution by broad industry groupings that approximates the distribution of these groupings in the common stock population of the U.S. equity market. Although the index contains 500 constituent companies, at any one time it may contain greater than 500 constituent trading lines since some companies included in the index prior to July 31, 2017 may be represented by multiple share class lines in the index. The index is calculated, maintained and published by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC (the "S&P"). In addition, information may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and on the following websites: us.spindices.com/indices/equity/SP-500 and spdji.com. We are not incorporating by reference the websites, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

S&P intends for the index to provide a performance benchmark for the large-cap U.S. equity markets. Constituent changes are made on an as-needed basis and there is no schedule for constituent reviews. Constituent changes are generally announced one to five business days prior to the change. Relevant criteria for additions to the index that are employed by S&P include: the company proposed for addition should have an unadjusted company market capitalization of $6.1 billion or more (for spin-offs, eligibility is determined using when-issued prices, if available); using composite pricing and volume, the ratio of annual dollar value traded in the proposed constituent to float-adjusted market capitalization of that company should be 1.00 or greater and the stock should trade a minimum of 250,000 shares in each of the six months leading up to the evaluation date; the company must be a U.S. company (characterized as a Form 10-K filer whose U.S. portion of fixed assets and revenues constitutes a plurality of the total and with a primary listing of the common stock on the NYSE, NYSE Arca, NYSE American (formerly NYSE MKT), NASDAQ Global Select Market, NASDAQ Select Market, NASDAQ Capital Market, Bats BZX, Bats BYX, Bats EDGA, Bats EDGX or IEX (each, an "eligible exchange")); the proposed constituent has a public float of 50% or more of its stock; the inclusion of the company will contribute to sector balance in the index relative to sector balance in the market in the relevant market capitalization range; financial viability (the sum of the most recent four consecutive quarters' Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) earnings (net income excluding discontinued operations) should be positive as should the most recent quarter); and, for IPOs, the company must be traded on an eligible exchange for at least twelve months. In addition, constituents of the S&P MidCap 400® Index and the S&P SmallCap 600® Index can be added to the index without meeting the financial viability, public float and/or liquidity eligibility criteria if the S&P Index Committee decides that such an addition will enhance the representativeness of the index as a market benchmark. Certain types of organizational structures and securities are always excluded, including business development companies (BDCs), limited partnerships, master limited partnerships, limited liability companies (LLCs), OTC bulletin board issues, closed-end funds, ETFs, ETNs, royalty trusts, tracking stocks, preferred stock and convertible preferred stock, unit trusts, equity warrants, convertible bonds, investment trusts, rights and American depositary receipts (ADRs). Stocks are deleted from index when they are involved in mergers, acquisitions or significant restructurings such that they no longer meet the inclusion criteria, and when they substantially violate one or more of the addition criteria. Stocks that are delisted or moved to the pink sheets or the bulletin board are removed, and those that experience a trading halt may be retained or removed in S&P's discretion. S&P evaluates additions and deletions with a view to maintaining index continuity.

For constituents included in the index prior to July 31, 2017, all publicly listed multiple share class lines are included separately in the index, subject to, in the case of any such share class line, that share class line satisfying the liquidity and float criteria discussed above and subject to certain exceptions. It is possible that one listed share class line of a company may be included in the index while a second listed share class line of the same company is excluded. For companies that issue a second publicly traded share class to index share class holders, the newly issued share class line is considered for inclusion if the event is mandatory and the market capitalization of the distributed class is not considered to be de minimis.

Table of Contents

As of July 31, 2017, companies with multiple share class lines are no longer eligible for inclusion in the index. Constituents of the index prior to July 31, 2015 with multiple share class lines will be grandfathered in and continue to be included in the index. If an index constituent reorganizes into a multiple share class line structure, that company will be reviewed for continued inclusion in the index at the discretion of the S&P Index Committee.

S&P divides the 500 companies included in the index into eleven Global Industry Classification Sectors: Consumer Discretionary, Consumer Staples, Energy, Financials, Health Care, Industrials, Information Technology, Materials, Real Estate, Telecommunication Services and Utilities. As of the close of business on September 21, 2018, S&P and MSCI, Inc. updated the Global Industry Classification Sector structure. Among other things, the update broadened the Telecommunications Services sector and renamed it the Communication Services sector. The renamed sector includes the previously existing Telecommunication Services Industry group, as well as the Media Industry group, which was moved from the Consumer Discretionary sector and renamed the Media & Entertainment Industry group. The Media & Entertainment Industry group contains three industries: Media, Entertainment and Interactive Media & Services. The Media industry continues to consist of the Advertising, Broadcasting, Cable & Satellite and Publishing sub-industries. The Entertainment industry contains the Movies & Entertainment sub-industry (which includes online entertainment streaming companies in addition to companies previously classified in such industry prior to September 21, 2018) and the Interactive Home Entertainment sub-industry (which includes companies previously classified in the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry prior to September 21, 2018 (when the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry was a sub-industry in the Information Technology sector)), as well as producers of interactive gaming products, including mobile gaming applications). The Interactive Media & Services industry and sub-industry includes companies engaged in content and information creation or distribution through proprietary platforms, where revenues are derived primarily through pay-per-click advertisements, and includes search engines, social media and networking platforms, online classifieds and online review companies. The Global Industry Classification Sector structure changes are effective for the S&P 500® Index as of the open of business on September 24, 2018 to coincide with the September 2018 quarterly rebalancing.

Calculation of the Total Return of the Index

The trust tracks the performance of the total return version of the index and the index is calculated using a base-weighted aggregative methodology. The total return calculation begins with the price return of the index. The value of the price return index on any day for which an index value is published is determined by a fraction, the numerator of which is the aggregate of the market price of each stock in the index times the number of shares of such stock included in the index, and the denominator of which is the divisor, which is described more fully below. The "market value" of any underlier stock is the product of the market price per share of that stock times the number of the then-outstanding shares of such underlier stock that are then included in the index.

The index is also sometimes called a "base-weighted aggregative index" because of its use of a divisor. The "divisor" is a value calculated by S&P that is intended to maintain conformity in index values over time and is adjusted for all changes in the underlier stocks' share capital after the "base date" as described below. The level of the index reflects the total market value of all underlier stocks relative to the index's base date of 1941-43.

In addition, the index is float-adjusted, meaning that the share counts used in calculating the index reflect only those shares available to investors rather than all of a company's outstanding shares. S&P seeks to exclude shares held by certain shareholders concerned with the control of a company, a group that generally includes the following: officers and directors and related individuals whose holdings are publicly disclosed, private equity, venture capital, special equity firms, publicly traded companies that hold shares for control in another company, strategic partners, holders of restricted shares, employee stock ownership plans, employee and family trusts, foundations associated with the company, holders of unlisted share classes of stock, government entities at all levels (except government retirement or pension funds) and any individual person listed as a 5% or greater shareholder in a company as reported in regulatory filings (collectively, "control holders"). To this end, S&P excludes all share-holdings (other than depositary banks, pension funds, mutual funds, exchange traded fund providers, 401(k) plans of the company, government retirement and pension funds, investment funds of insurance companies, asset managers and investment funds, independent foundations, savings plans and investment plans) with a position greater than 5% of the outstanding shares of a company from the float-adjusted share count to be used in index calculations.

The exclusion is accomplished by calculating an Investable Weight Factor ("IWF") for each stock that is part of the numerator of the float-adjusted index fraction described above:

IWF = (available float shares)/(total shares outstanding)

where available float shares is defined as total shares outstanding less shares held by control holders. In most cases, an IWF is reported to the nearest one percentage point. For companies with multiple share class lines, a separate IWF is calculated for each share class line.

Table of Contents

Once the price return index has been calculated, the total return index is calculated. First, the total daily dividend for each stock in the index is calculated by multiplying the per share dividend by the number of shares included in the index. Then the index dividend is calculated by aggregating the total daily dividends for each of the index stocks (which may be zero for some stocks) and dividing by the divisor for that day. Next the daily total return of the index is calculated as a fraction minus 1, the numerator of which is the sum of the index level plus the index dividend and the denominator of which is the index level on the previous day. Finally, the total return index for that day is calculated as the product of the value of the total return index on the previous day times the sum of 1 plus the index daily total return for that day.

Maintenance of the Index

In order to keep the index comparable over time S&P engages in an index maintenance process. The maintenance process involves changing the constituents as discussed above, and also involves maintaining quality assurance processes and procedures, adjusting the number of shares used to calculate the index, monitoring and completing the adjustments for company additions and deletions, adjusting for stock splits and stock dividends and adjusting for other corporate actions. In addition to its daily governance of indices and maintenance of the index methodology, at least once within any 12 month period, the S&P Index Committee reviews the index methodology to ensure the index continues to achieve the stated objective, and that the data and methodology remain effective. The S&P Index Committee may at times consult with investors, market participants, security issuers included or potentially included in the index, or investment and financial experts.

Divisor Adjustments

The two types of adjustments primarily used by S&P are divisor adjustments and adjustments to the number of shares (including float adjustments) used to calculate the index. Set forth below under "Adjustments for Corporate Actions" is a table of certain corporate events and their resulting effect on the divisor and the share count. If a corporate event requires an adjustment to the divisor, that event has the effect of altering the market value of the affected underlier stock and consequently of altering the aggregate market value of the underlier stocks following the event. In order that the level of the index not be affected by the altered market value (which could be an increase or decrease) of the affected underlier stock, S&P generally derives a new divisor by dividing the post-event market value of the underlier stocks by the pre-event index value, which has the effect of reducing the index's post-event value to the pre-event level.

Changes to the Number of Shares of a Constituent

The index maintenance process also involves tracking the changes in the number of shares included for each of the index companies. The timing of adjustments to the number of shares depends on the type of event causing the change, and whether the change represents 5% or more of the total share count (for companies with multiple share class lines, the 5% threshold is based on each individual share class line rather than total company shares). Changes as a result of mergers or acquisitions are implemented when the transaction occurs. At S&P's discretion, however, de minimis merger and acquisition changes may be accumulated and implemented with the updates made at the quarterly share updates as described below. Changes in a constituent's total shares of 5% or more due to public offerings (which must be underwritten, have a publicly available prospectus or prospectus summary filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and include a public confirmation that the offering has been completed) are implemented as soon as reasonably possible. Other changes of 5% or more are made weekly and are announced on Fridays for implementation after the close of trading on the following Friday. For changes of less than 5%, on the third Friday of the last month in each calendar quarter, S&P updates the share totals of companies in the index as required by any changes in the number of shares outstanding. S&P implements a share / IWF freeze beginning after the market close on the Tuesday preceding the second Friday of each quarterly rebalancing month and ending after the market close on the third Friday of the quarterly rebalancing month. During this frozen period, shares and IWFs are not changed except for certain corporate action events (merger activity, stock splits and rights offerings).

Adjustments for Corporate Actions

There is a large range of corporate actions that may affect companies included in the index. Certain corporate actions require S&P to recalculate the share count or the float adjustment or to make an adjustment to the divisor to prevent the value of the index from changing as a result of the corporate action. This helps ensure that the movement of the index does not reflect the corporate actions of individual companies in the index.

S-79

Table of Contents

Spin-Offs

As a general policy, a spin-off security is added to the index at a zero price at the market close of the day before the ex-date (with no divisor adjustment). The spin-off security will remain in the index if it meets all eligibility criteria. If the spin-off security is determined ineligible to remain in the index, it will generally be removed after at least one day of regular way trading (with a divisor adjustment). If there is a gap between the ex-date and distribution date (or payable date), or if the spin-off security does not trade regular way on the ex-date, the spin-off security is kept in the index until the spin-off security begins trading regular way.

Corporate Action	Share Count Revision Required?	Divisor Adjustment Required?
Stock split	Yes – share count is revised to reflect new count.	No – share count and price changes are off-setting
Change in shares outstanding (secondary issuance, share repurchase and/or share buy-back)	Yes – share count is revised to reflect new count.	Yes
Special dividends	No	Yes – calculation assumes that share price drops by the amount of the dividend; divisor adjustment reflects this change in index market value
Change in IWF	No	Yes – divisor change reflects the change in market value caused by the change to an IWF
Company added to or deleted from the S&P 500® Index	No	Yes – divisor is adjusted by the net change in market value, calculated as the shares issued multiplied by the price paid
Rights Offering	No	Yes – divisor adjustment reflects increase in market capitalization (calculation assumes that offering is fully subscribed)

Recalculation Policy

S&P reserves the right to recalculate and republish the index at its discretion in the event one of the following issues has occurred: (1) incorrect or revised closing price of one or more constituent securities; (2) missed corporate event; (3) incorrect application of corporate action or index methodology; (4) late announcement of a corporate event; or (5) incorrect calculation or data entry error. The decision to recalculate the index is made at the discretion of the index manager and/or index committee, as further discussed below. The potential market impact or disruption resulting from the potential recalculation is considered when making any such decision. In the event of an incorrect closing price, a missed corporate event or a misapplied corporate action, a late announcement of a corporate event, or an incorrect calculation or data entry error that is discovered within two trading days of its occurrence, the index manager may, at his or her discretion, recalculate the index without involving the index committee. In the event any such event is discovered beyond the two trading day period, the index committee shall decide whether the index should be recalculated. In the event of an incorrect application of the methodology that results in the incorrect composition and/or weighting of index constituents, the index committee shall determine whether or not to recalculate the index following specified guidelines. In the event that the index is recalculated, it shall be done within a reasonable timeframe following the detection and review of the issue.

Table of Contents

Calculations and Pricing Disruptions

Closing levels for the index are calculated by S&P based on the closing price of the individual constituents of the index as set by their primary exchange. Closing prices are received by S&P from one of its third party vendors and verified by comparing them with prices from an alternative vendor. The vendors receive the closing price from the primary exchanges. Real-time intraday prices are calculated similarly without a second verification. Prices used for the calculation of real time index values are based on the "Consolidated Tape". The Consolidated Tape is an aggregation of trades for each constituent over all regional exchanges and trading venues and includes the primary exchange. If there is a failure or interruption on one or more exchanges, real-time calculations will continue as long as the "Consolidated Tape" is operational.

If an interruption is not resolved prior to the market close, official closing prices will be determined by following the hierarchy set out in NYSE Rule 123C. A notice is published on the S&P website at spdji.com indicating any changes to the prices used in index calculations. In extreme circumstances, S&P may decide to delay index adjustments or not publish the index. Real-time indices are not restated.

Unexpected Exchange Closures

An unexpected market/exchange closure occurs when a market/exchange fully or partially fails to open or trading is temporarily halted. This can apply to a single exchange or to a market as a whole, when all of the primary exchanges are closed and/or not trading. Unexpected market/exchange closures are usually due to unforeseen circumstances, such as natural disasters, inclement weather, outages, or other events.

To a large degree, S&P is dependent on the exchanges to provide guidance in the event of an unexpected exchange closure. S&P's decision making is dependent on exchange guidance regarding pricing and mandatory corporate actions.

NYSE Rule 123C provides closing contingency procedures for determining an official closing price for listed securities if the exchange is unable to conduct a closing transaction in one or more securities due to a system or technical issue.

3:00 PM ET is the deadline for an exchange to determine its plan of action regarding an outage scenario. As such, S&P also uses 3:00 PM ET as the cutoff.

If all major exchanges fail to open or unexpectedly halt trading intraday due to unforeseen circumstances, S&P will take the following actions:

Market Disruption Prior to Open of Trading:

(i) If all exchanges indicate that trading will not open for a given day, S&P will treat the day as an unscheduled market holiday. The decision will be communicated to clients as soon as possible through the normal channels. Indices containing multiple markets will be calculated as normal, provided that at least one market is open that day. Indices which only contain closed markets will not be calculated.

(ii) If exchanges indicate that trading, although delayed, will open for a given day, S&P will begin index calculation when the exchanges open.

Market Disruption Intraday:

(i) If exchanges indicate that trading will not resume for a given day, the index level will be calculated using prices determined by the exchanges based on NYSE Rule 123C. Intraday index values will continue to use the last traded composite price until the primary exchange publishes official closing prices.

Historical Closing Prices of the Units

The closing price of the units has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the units are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the units as an indication of the future performance of the units. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the units will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates

Table of Contents

make any representation to you as to the performance of the units. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant units closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the units over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the units from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of SPDR® S&P 500® ETF Trust

"SPDR®" is a registered trademark of Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC ("S&P") and Dow Jones is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Trademark Holdings LLC ("Dow Jones") and have been licensed for use by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC. The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, Dow Jones, S&P or their respective affiliates, and neither S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, Dow Jones, S&P or their respective affiliates make any representation regarding the advisability of investing in the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF

The shares of the iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the MSCI EAFE Index (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "EFA".
- The iShares® Trust's SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF's inception date was August 14, 2001.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 600,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is paid a management fee from the ETF based on the ETF's allocable portion of an aggregate management fee based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other specified iShares® funds (the "funds") as follows: 0.35% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds less than or equal to $30.0 billion, plus 0.32% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $30.0 billion, up to and including $60.0 billion, plus 0.28% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $60.0 billion, up to and including $90.0 billion, plus 0.252% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $90.0 billion, up to and including $120.0 billion, plus 0.227% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $120.0 billion, up to and including $150.0 billion, plus 0.204% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $150.00 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the aggregate expense ratio of the ETF was 0.32% per annum.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N-CSR for the fiscal year ended July 31, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/EFA.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index may be changed without the approval of BFA's shareholders.

The following table displays the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and ETF sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or ETFs with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF website without independent verification.

iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

ETF Stock Issuer	Percentage (%)
NESTLE SA	1.97%
NOVARTIS AG	1.44%
ROCHE HOLDING PAR AG	1.30%
HSBC HOLDINGS PLC	1.23%
ROYAL DUTCH SHELL PLC	1.08%
BP PLC	1.02%
TOTAL SA	1.01%
TOYOTA MOTOR CORP	1.01%
ROYAL DUTCH SHELL PLC CLASS B	0.89%

Table of Contents

ASTRAZENECA PLC	0.76%
Total	11.71%

iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF Weighting by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
Financials	19.73%
Consumer Discretionary	10.67%
Industrials	14.07%
Consumer Staples	11.53%
Health Care	11.51%
Materials	7.56%
Information Technology	5.93%
Communication	5.27%
Energy	5.95%
Real Estate	3.50%
Utilities	3.46%
Cash and/or Derivatives	0.80%
Total	99.98%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

The Global Industry Classification Structure, which MSCI utilizes to classify the constituents of the index, was updated in September 2018. Please see "The MSCI® EAFE Index" below for additional information about these updates.

iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF Weighting by Country as of November 12, 2018*

Country	Percentage (%)
Japan	24.49%
United Kingdom	17.37%
France	10.85%
Germany	8.78%
Switzerland	8.52%
Australia	6.98%
Hong Kong	3.50%
Netherlands	3.40%
Spain	3.02%
Sweden	2.62%
Italy	2.23%
Denmark	1.70%
Singapore	1.28%
Finland	1.03%
Cash and/or Derivatives	0.80%
Other	3.41%
Total	99.98%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

Representative Sampling

BFA uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to manage the ETF. This strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively has an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the securities of the index and in depositary receipts representing securities of the index. The ETF may invest the remainder of its assets in certain futures, options and swap contracts, cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates, as well as in securities not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. Also, the ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Table of Contents

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities and other instruments held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences (including differences between a security's price at the local market close and the ETF's valuation of a security at the time of calculation of the ETF's net asset value),differences in transaction costs, the ETF's holding of uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of or the valuation of dividends or interest, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -7.44%; 3 years, 3.68%; 5 years, 1.86%; 10 years, 6.56%; since inception, 4.85%; index: 1 year, -6.85%; 3 years, 3.62%; 5 years, 2.02%; 10 years, 6.89%; since ETF inception, 4.93%.

Industry Concentration Policy

The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated.

The MSCI® EAFE Index

The MSCI EAFE Index (the "index") is a stock index calculated, published and disseminated daily by MSCI Inc. ("MSCI") through numerous data vendors, on the MSCI website and in real time on Bloomberg Financial Markets and Reuters Limited.

The index is a free float-adjusted market capitalization index and is one of the MSCI Global Investable Market Indices (the "MSCI Indices"). The index is considered a "standard" index, which means it consists of all eligible large capitalization and mid-capitalization stocks, as determined by MSCI, in the relevant market. Additional information about the MSCI Indices is available on the following website: msci.com/index-methodology. Daily closing price information for the index is available on the following website: msci.com. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

The index is intended to provide performance benchmarks for the developed equity markets in Australia, Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Hong Kong, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Portugal, Singapore, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland and the United Kingdom. The constituent stocks of the index are derived from the constituent stocks in the 21 MSCI standard single country indices for the developed market countries listed above. The index is calculated in U.S. dollars on a total return net basis. The index was launched on December 31, 1969 at an initial value of 100.

MSCI divides the companies included in the index into eleven Global Industry Classification Sectors: Consumer Discretionary, Consumer Staples, Energy, Financials, Health Care, Industrials, Information Technology, Materials, Real Estate, Telecommunication Services and Utilities. As of the close of business on September 21, 2018, MSCI and S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC updated the Global Industry Classification Sector structure. Among other things, the update broadened the Telecommunications Services sector and renamed it the Communication Services sector. The renamed sector includes the previously existing Telecommunication Services Industry group, as well as the Media Industry group, which was moved from the Consumer Discretionary sector and renamed the Media & Entertainment Industry group. The Media & Entertainment Industry group contains three industries: Media, Entertainment and Interactive Media & Services. The Media industry continues to consist of the Advertising, Broadcasting, Cable & Satellite and Publishing sub-industries. The Entertainment industry contains the Movies & Entertainment sub-industry (which includes online entertainment streaming companies in addition to companies previously classified in such industry prior to September 21, 2018) and the Interactive Home Entertainment sub-industry (which includes companies previously classified in the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry prior to September 21, 2018 (when the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry was a sub-industry in the Information Technology sector)), as well as producers of interactive gaming products, including mobile gaming applications). The Interactive Media & Services industry and sub-industry includes companies engaged in content and information creation or distribution through proprietary platforms, where revenues are derived primarily through pay-per-click advertisements, and includes search engines, social media and networking platforms, online classifieds and

Table of Contents

online review companies. The Global Classification Sector structure changes will be implemented in the MSCI EAFE Index in connection with the November 2018 semi-annual index review.

Construction of the MSCI Indices

MSCI undertakes an index construction process, which involves: (i) defining the equity universe; (ii) determining the market investable equity universe for each market; (iii) determining market capitalization size segments for each market; (iv) applying index continuity rules for the standard index; (v) creating style segments within each size segment within each market; and (vi) classifying securities under the Global Industry Classification Standard. The index construction methodology differs in some cases depending on whether the relevant market is considered a developed market or an emerging market. All of the MSCI Indices are standard indices, meaning that only securities that would qualify for inclusion in a large cap index or a mid cap index will be included as described below.

Defining the Equity Universe

Identifying Eligible Equity Securities: The equity universe initially looks at securities listed in any of the countries in the MSCI Global Index series, which will be classified as either "developed markets" or "emerging markets". All listed equity securities, including real estate investment trusts and certain income trusts in Canada are eligible for inclusion in the equity universe. Limited partnerships, limited liability companies and business trusts, which are listed in the U.S. and are not structured to be taxed as limited partnerships, are likewise eligible for inclusion in the equity universe. Conversely, mutual funds, exchange traded funds, equity derivatives and most investment trusts are not eligible for inclusion in the equity universe. Preferred shares that exhibit characteristics of equity securities are eligible. Securities for which the Hong Kong Securities and Futures Commission has issued high shareholding concentration notices are not eligible.

Country Classification of Eligible Securities: Each company and its securities (i.e., share classes) are classified in one and only one country, which allows for a distinctive sorting of each company by its respective country.

Determining the Market Investable Equity Universes

A market investable equity universe for a market is derived by (i) identifying eligible listings for each security in the equity universe; and (ii) applying investability screens to individual companies and securities in the equity universe that are classified in that market. A market is generally equivalent to a single country. The global investable equity universe is the aggregation of all market investable equity universes.

(i) Identifying Eligible Listings: A security may have a listing in the country where it is classified (a "local listing") and/or in a different country (a "foreign listing"). A security may be represented by either a local listing or a foreign listing (including a depositary receipt) in the global investable equity universe. A security may be represented by a foreign listing only if the security is classified in a country that meets the foreign listing materiality requirement (as described below), and the security's foreign listing is traded on an eligible stock exchange of a developed market country if the security is classified in a developed market country or, if the security is classified in an emerging market country, an eligible stock exchange of a developed market country or an emerging market country.

In order for a country to meet the foreign listing materiality requirement, the following is determined: all securities represented by a foreign listing that would be included in the country's MSCI Country Investable Market Index if foreign listings were eligible from that country. The aggregate free-float adjusted market capitalization for all such securities should represent at least (i) 5% of the free float-adjusted market capitalization of the relevant MSCI Country Investable Market Index and (ii) 0.05% of the free-float adjusted market capitalization of the MSCI ACWI Investable Market Index. If a country does not meet the foreign listing materiality requirement, then securities in that country may not be represented by a foreign listing in the global investable equity universe.

(ii) Applying Investability Screens: The investability screens used to determine the investable equity universe in each market are:

Equity Universe Minimum Size Requirement: This investability screen is applied at the company level. In order to be included in a market investable equity universe, a company must have the required minimum full market capitalization. The equity universe minimum size requirement applies to companies in all markets and is derived as follows:

- First, the companies in the developed market equity universe are sorted in descending order of full market capitalization and the cumulative coverage of the free float-adjusted market capitalization of the developed market equity universe is calculated for each company. Each company's free float-adjusted market capitalization is represented by the aggregation of the free float-adjusted market capitalization of the securities of that company in the equity universe.

Table of Contents

- Second, when the cumulative free float-adjusted market capitalization coverage of 99% of the sorted equity universe is achieved, by adding each company's free float-adjusted market capitalization in descending order, the full market capitalization of the company that reaches the 99% threshold defines the equity universe minimum size requirement.
- The rank of this company by descending order of full market capitalization within the developed market equity universe is noted, and will be used in determining the equity universe minimum size requirement at the next rebalance.

As of May 2017, the equity universe minimum size requirement was set at U.S. $236 million. Companies with a full market capitalization below this level are not included in any market investable equity universe. The equity universe minimum size requirement is reviewed and, if necessary, revised at each semi-annual index review, as described below.

Equity Universe Minimum Free Float-Adjusted Market Capitalization Requirement: This investability screen is applied at the individual security level. To be eligible for inclusion in a market investable equity universe, a security must have a free float-adjusted market capitalization equal to or higher than 50% of the equity universe minimum size requirement.

Minimum Liquidity Requirement: This investability screen is applied at the individual security level. To be eligible for inclusion in a market investable equity universe, a security must have at least one eligible listing that has adequate liquidity as measured by its 12-month and 3-month annualized traded value ratio ("ATVR") and 3-month frequency of trading. The ATVR attempts to mitigate the impact of extreme daily trading volumes and takes into account the free float-adjusted market capitalization of securities. A minimum liquidity level of 20% of the 3-month ATVR and 90% of 3-month frequency of trading over the last 4 consecutive quarters, as well as 20% of the 12-month ATVR, are required for inclusion of a security in a market investable equity universe of a developed market. A minimum liquidity level of 15% of the 3-month ATVR and 80% of 3-month frequency of trading over the last 4 consecutive quarters, as well as 15% of the 12-month ATVR, are required for inclusion of a security in a market investable equity universe of an emerging market.

Only one listing per security may be included in the market investable equity universe. In instances where a security has two or more eligible listings that meet the above liquidity requirements, then the following priority rules are used to determine which listing will be used for potential inclusion of the security in the market investable equity universe:

(1) Local listing (if the security has two or more local listings, then the listing with the highest 3-month ATVR will be used).

(2) Foreign listing in the same geographical region (MSCI classifies markets into three main geographical regions: EMEA, Asia Pacific and Americas. If the security has two or more foreign listings in the same geographical region, then the listing with the highest 3-month ATVR will be used).

(3) Foreign listing in a different geographical region (if the security has two or more foreign listings in a different geographical region, then the listing with the highest 3-month ATVR will be used).

Due to liquidity concerns relating to securities trading at very high stock prices, a security that is currently not a constituent of a MSCI Global Investable Markets Index that is trading at a stock price above U.S. $10,000 will fail the liquidity screening and will not be included in any market investable equity universe.

Global Minimum Foreign Inclusion Factor Requirement: This investability screen is applied at the individual security level. To determine the free float of a security, MSCI considers the proportion of shares of such security available for purchase in the public equity markets by international investors. In practice, limitations on the investment opportunities for international investors include: strategic stakes in a company held by private or public shareholders whose investment objective indicates that the shares held are not likely to be available in the market; limits on the proportion of a security's share capital authorized for purchase by non-domestic investors; or other foreign investment restrictions which materially limit the ability of foreign investors to freely invest in a particular equity market, sector or security.

MSCI will then derive a “foreign inclusion factor” for the company that reflects the proportion of shares outstanding that is available for purchase in the public equity markets by international investors. MSCI will then “float-adjust” the weight of each constituent company in an index by the company’s foreign inclusion factor.

Once the free float factor has been determined for a security, the security’s total market capitalization is then adjusted by such free float factor, resulting in the free float-adjusted market capitalization figure for the security.

Minimum Length of Trading Requirement: This investability screen is applied at the individual security level. For an initial public offering to be eligible for inclusion in a market investable equity universe, the new issue must have started

Table of Contents

trading at least three months before the implementation of a semi-annual index review. This requirement is applicable to small new issues in all markets. Large initial public offerings are not subject to the minimum length of trading requirement and may be included in a market investable equity universe and a standard index, such as the MSCI Indices, outside of a quarterly or semi-annual index review.

Minimum Foreign Room Requirement: This investability screen is applied at the individual security level. For a security that is subject to a foreign ownership limit to be eligible for inclusion in a market investable equity universe, the proportion of shares still available to foreign investors relative to the maximum allowed (referred to as "foreign room") must be at least 15%.

Defining Market Capitalization Size Segments for Each Market

Once a market investable equity universe is defined, it is segmented into the following size-based indices:

- Investable Market Index (Large Cap + Mid Cap + Small Cap)
- Standard Index (Large Cap + Mid Cap)
- Large Cap Index
- Mid Cap Index
- Small Cap Index

Creating the size segment indices in each market involves the following steps: (i) defining the market coverage target range for each size segment; (ii) determining the global minimum size range for each size segment; (iii) determining the market size–segment cutoffs and associated segment number of companies; (iv) assigning companies to the size segments; and (v) applying final size-segment investability requirements. For developed market indices and emerging market indices, the market coverage for a standard index is 85% and 42.5% respectively. As of April 2017, the global minimum size range for a developed market standard index is a full market capitalization of USD 2.75 billion to USD 6.32 billion, and the global minimum size range for an emerging market standard index is a full market capitalization of USD 1.37 billion to USD 3.16 billion.

Index Continuity Rules for Standard Indices

In order to achieve index continuity, as well as provide some basic level of diversification within a market index, notwithstanding the effect of other index construction rules, a minimum number of five constituents will be maintained for a developed market standard index and a minimum number of three constituents will be maintained for an emerging market standard index, and involves the following steps:

- If after the application of the index construction methodology, a developed market standard index contains fewer than five securities or an emerging market standard index contains fewer than three securities, then the largest securities by free float-adjusted market capitalization are added to the index in order to reach the minimum number of required constituents.
- At subsequent index reviews, if the minimum number of securities described above is not met, then after the market investable equity universe is identified, the securities are ranked by free float-adjusted market capitalization, however, in order to increase stability the free float-adjusted market capitalization of the existing index constituents (prior to review) is multiplied by 1.50, and securities are added until the desired minimum number of securities is reached.

Creating Style Indices within Each Size Segment

All securities in the investable equity universe are classified into value or growth segments. The classification of a security into the value or growth segment is used by MSCI to construct additional indices.

Classifying Securities under the Global Industry Classification Standard

All securities in the global investable equity universe are assigned to the industry that best describes their business activities. The GICS® classification of each security is used by MSCI to construct additional indices.

Calculation Methodology for the MSCI Indices

The performance of each of the MSCI Indices is a free float weighted average of the U.S. dollar values of its component securities.

Prices used to calculate the component securities are the official exchange closing prices or prices accepted as such in the relevant market. In the case of a market closure, or if a security does not trade on a specific day or during a specific period, MSCI carries forward the previous day's price (or latest available closing price). In the event of a market outage resulting in any component security price to be unavailable, MSCI will generally use the last reported price for such component security for the purpose of performance calculation unless MSCI determines that another price is more

Table of Contents

appropriate based on the circumstances. Closing prices are converted into U.S. dollars, as applicable, using the closing spot exchange rates calculated by WM/Reuters at 4:00 P.M. London Time.

Companies may be listed simultaneously on more than one stock exchange in Japan. A company may apply for delisting from one stock exchange while remaining listed on other stock exchanges. For such delisting, Japanese stock exchanges generally give notice one month prior to the expected last trading date of the security to be delisted. Should such delisting involve a change in the primary exchange and/or trigger a change in the price source, MSCI will obtain the price of the security from the new primary exchange two weeks after an announcement of delisting from the stock exchange.

Net Daily Total Return Methodology

The MSCI Indices are net daily total return indices. A daily total return index measures the market performance, including price performance and income from regular cash distributions, while a net daily total return index measures the price performance and income from dividends, net of certain withholding taxes. MSCI calculates withholding taxes using the highest applicable withholding tax rate applicable to institutional investors. The current withholding tax rate used by MSCI to calculate the MSCI Japan Index is 15.315%. This net income is reinvested in the index and thus makes up part of the total index performance. MSCI's net daily total return methodology reinvests net cash dividends in indices the day the security is quoted ex-dividend, or on the ex-date (converted to U.S. dollars, as applicable). In the case of the MSCI Japan Index, since many Japanese companies declare their dividends after the ex-date but make estimated dividends broadly available before the ex-date, an estimation of the dividend, or else the previous year dividend if no estimation is available, is reinvested on the ex-date. Certain dividends, including special/extraordinary dividends and commemorative dividends, are reinvested in the indices if, a day prior to the ex-date, the dividend impact on price is less than 5%. If the impact is 5% or more, the dividend will be reflected in the indices through a price adjustment. A specific price adjustment is always applied for stock dividends that are issued at no cost to the shareholders, an extraordinary capital repayment or a dividend paid in the shares of another company. Cash payments related to corporate events, such as mergers and acquisitions, are considered on a case-by-case basis.

Maintenance of the MSCI Indices

In order to maintain the representativeness of the MSCI Indices, structural changes may be made by adding or deleting component securities. Currently, such changes in the MSCI Indices may generally only be made on four dates throughout the year: after the close of the last business day of each February, May, August and November.

Each country index is maintained with the objective of reflecting, on a timely basis, the evolution of the underlying equity markets. In maintaining each component country index, emphasis is also placed on its continuity, continuous investability of constituent and replicability of the index and on index stability and minimizing turnover.

MSCI classifies index maintenance in three broad categories. The first consists of ongoing event related changes, such as mergers and acquisitions, which are generally implemented in the country indices in which they occur. The second category consists of quarterly index reviews, aimed at promptly reflecting other significant market events. The third category consists of semi-annual index reviews that systematically re-assess the various dimensions of the equity universe.

Ongoing event-related changes to the MSCI Indices are the result of mergers, acquisitions, spin-offs, bankruptcies, reorganizations and other similar corporate events. They can also result from capital reorganizations in the form of rights issues, stock bonus issues, public placements and other similar corporate actions that take place on a continuing basis. MSCI will remove from the indices as soon as practicable securities of companies that file for bankruptcy or other protection from their creditors, that are suspended and for which a return to normal business activity and trading is unlikely in the near future; or that fail stock exchange listing requirements with a delisting announcement. Securities may also be considered for early deletion in other significant cases, such as decreases in free float and foreign ownership limits, or when a constituent company acquires or merges with a non-constituent company or spins-off another company. In practice, when a constituent company is involved in a corporate event which results in a significant decrease in the company's free float adjusted market capitalization or the company decreases its foreign inclusion factor to below 0.15, the securities of that constituent company are considered for early deletion from the indices simultaneously with the event unless, in either case, it is a standard index constituent with a minimum free float-adjusted market capitalization is not at least two-thirds of one-half of the standard index interim size segment cut-off. Share conversions may also give rise to an early deletion. All changes resulting from corporate events are

announced prior to their implementation, provided all necessary information on the event is available.
MSCI’s quarterly index review process is designed to ensure that the country indices continue to be an accurate reflection of evolving equity markets. This goal is achieved by timely reflecting significant market driven changes that were

Table of Contents

not captured in each index at the time of their actual occurrence and that should not wait until the semi-annual index review due to their importance. These quarterly index reviews may result in additions and deletions of component securities from a country index (or a security being removed from one country listing and represented by a different country listing) and changes in "foreign inclusion factors" and in number of shares. Additions and deletions to component securities may result from: the addition of large companies that did not meet the minimum size criterion for inclusion at the time of their initial public offering or secondary offering; the replacement of companies which are no longer suitable industry representatives; the deletion of securities whose overall free float has fallen to less than 15% and that do not meet specified criteria; the deletion of securities that have become very small or illiquid; and the addition or deletion of securities as a result of other market events. Significant changes in free float estimates and corresponding changes in the foreign inclusion factor for component securities may result from: block sales, block buys, secondary offerings and transactions made by way of immediate book-building that did not meet the requirements for implementation at the time of such event; corporate events that should have been implemented at the time of such event but could not be reflected immediately due to lack of publicly available details at the time of the event; exercise of IPO over-allotment options which result in an increase in free float; increases in foreign ownership limits; decreases in foreign ownership limits which did not require foreign investors to immediately sell shares in the market; re-estimates of free float figures resulting from the reclassification of shareholders from strategic to non-strategic, and vice versa; the end of lock-up periods or expiration of loyalty incentives for non-strategic shareholders; conversion of a non-index constituent share class or an unlisted line of shares which has an impact on index constituents; and acquisition by shares of non-listed companies or assets. However, no changes in foreign inclusion factors are implemented for any of the above events if the change in free float estimate is less than 1%, except in cases of correction. Small changes in the number of shares resulting from, for example, exercise of options or warrants, conversion of convertible bonds or other instruments, conversion of a non-index constituent share class or an unlisted line of shares which has an impact on index constituents, periodic conversion of a share class into another share class, exercise of over-allotment options, exercise of share buybacks, or the cancellation of shares, are generally updated at the quarterly index review rather than at the time of the event. The results of the quarterly index reviews are announced at least two weeks in advance of their effective implementation dates as of the close of the last business day of February and August. MSCI has noted that consistency is a factor in maintaining each component country index.

MSCI's semi-annual index review is designed to systematically reassess the component securities of the index. During each semi-annual index review, the universe of component securities is updated and the global minimum size range for the index is recalculated, which is based on the full market capitalization and the cumulative free float-adjusted market capitalization coverage of each security that is eligible to be included in the index. The following index maintenance activities, among others, are undertaken during each semi-annual index review: the list of countries in which securities may be represented by foreign listings is reviewed; the component securities are updated by identifying new equity securities that were not part of the index at the time of the previous quarterly index review; the minimum size requirement for the index is updated and new companies are evaluated relative to the new minimum size requirement; existing component securities that do not meet the minimum liquidity requirements of the index may be removed (or, with respect to any such security that has other listings, a determination is made as to whether any such listing can be used to represent the security in the market investable universe); and changes in "foreign inclusion factors" are implemented (provided the change in free float is greater than 1%, except in cases of correction). During a semi-annual index review, component securities may be added or deleted from a country index for a range of reasons, including the reasons discussed with respect to component securities changes during quarterly index reviews as discussed above. Foreign listings may become eligible to represent securities only from the countries that met the foreign listing materiality requirement during the previous semi-annual index review (this requirement is applied only to countries that do not yet include foreign listed securities). Once a country meets the foreign listing materiality requirement at a given semi-annual index review, foreign listings will remain eligible for such country even if the foreign listing materiality requirements are not met in the future.

The results of the semi-annual index reviews are announced at least two weeks in advance of their effective implementation date as of the close of the last business day of May and November.

Index maintenance also includes monitoring and completing adjustments for share changes, stock splits, stock dividends, and stock price adjustments due to company restructurings or spin-offs.

These guidelines and the policies implementing the guidelines are the responsibility of, and, ultimately, subject to adjustment by, MSCI.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is

Table of Contents

not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® MSCI Japan ETF

The shares of the iShares® MSCI Japan ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares, Inc. (the "company"). The company was organized as a Maryland corporation on September 1, 1994 and is authorized to have multiple series or portfolios, of which the ETF is one.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the MSCI Japan Index (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "EWJ".
- The company's SEC CIK Number is 0000930667.
- The ETF's inception date was March 12, 1996.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 150,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is entitled to receive a management fee from the fund corresponding to the ETF's allocable portion of an aggregate management fee based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other specified iShares® funds (the "funds") as follows: 0.59% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds less than or equal to $7.0 billion, plus 0.54% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $7.0 billion, up to and including $11.0 billion, plus 0.49% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $11.0 billion, up to and including $24.0 billion, plus 0.44% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $24.0 billion, up to and including $48.0 billion, plus 0.40% per annum of the aggregate net assets over $48.0 billion, up to and including $72.0 billion, plus 0.36% per annum of the aggregate net assets over $72.0 billion, up to and including $96.0 billion, plus 0.32% per annum of the aggregate net assets in excess of $96.0 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the aggregate expense ratio of the ETF was 0.49% per annum.

For additional information regarding the company or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N-CSR for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018) and other information the company files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/EWJ.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index may be changed without the approval of BFA's shareholders.

The following table displays the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and ETF sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or ETFs with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

iShares® MSCI Japan ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

ETF Stock Issuer	Percentage (%)
TOYOTA MOTOR CORP	4.07%
MITSUBISHI UFJ FINANCIAL GROUP INC	2.15%
SONY CORP	2.05%
SOFTBANK GROUP CORP	1.95%
SUMITOMO MITSUI FINANCIAL GROUP IN	1.62%
KEYENCE CORP	1.55%
HONDA MOTOR LTD	1.42%
MIZUHO FINANCIAL GROUP INC	1.27%
KDDI CORP	1.17%
MITSUBISHI CORP	1.12%
Total	18.37%

iShares® MSCI Japan ETF Weighting by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
Consumer Discretionary	18.64%
Financials	12.57%
Industrials	20.73%
Information Technology	10.17%
Health Care	8.22%
Consumer Staples	8.26%
Materials	5.82%
Communication	7.28%
Real Estate	4.07%
Utilities	1.96%
Energy	1.25%
Cash and/or Derivatives	1.03%
Total	100.00%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

The Global Industry Classification Structure, which MSCI utilizes to classify the constituents of the index, was updated in September 2018. Please see " The MSCI Japan Index" below for additional information about these updates.

Representative Sampling

BFA uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to manage the ETF. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index.

The ETF will at all times invest at least 90% of its assets in the securities of the index and in depositary receipts representing securities of the index. The ETF may invest the remainder of its assets in other securities, including securities not in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. The ETF may also invest its other assets in futures contracts, options on futures contracts, other types of options and swaps related to the index, as well as cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates. Also, the ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Table of Contents

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities and other instruments held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences (including differences between a security's price at the local market close and the ETF's valuation of a security at the time of calculation of the ETF's net asset value), differences in transaction costs, the ETF's holding of uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of or the valuation of dividends or interest, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -5.12%; 3 years, 5.29%; 5 years, 4.36%; 10 years, 5.90%; since inception, 0.68%; index: 1 year, -3.56%; 3 years, 5.44%; 5 years, 4.89%; 10 years, 6.72%; since ETF inception, 1.29%.

Industry Concentration Policy

The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated.

The MSCI Japan Index

The index is a stock index calculated, published and disseminated daily by MSCI Inc. ("MSCI") through numerous data vendors, on the MSCI website and in real time on Bloomberg Financial Markets and Reuters Limited.

The index is a free float-adjusted market capitalization index and is one of the MSCI Global Investable Market Indices (the "MSCI Indices"). The index is categorized by MSCI as a developed market index and is considered a "standard" index, which means it consists of all eligible large capitalization and mid-capitalization stocks, as determined by MSCI, in the relevant market. Additional information about the MSCI Indices is available on the following website: msci.com/index-methodology. Daily closing price information for the index is available on the following website: msci.com. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

The index is designed to measure the performance of the large- and mid-capitalization segments of Japan's equity market. The 322 constituent stocks of the index (as of October 31, 2018) are selected from an eligible universe of equity securities listed on national Japanese stock exchanges including the First Section, Second Section and Mothers portion of the Tokyo Stock Exchange, the TSE, JASDAQ and the First Section, Second Section and Centrex portion of the Nagoya Stock Exchange. The index is calculated in U.S. dollars on a total return net basis. The index was launched on December 31, 1969 at an initial value of 100.

MSCI divides the companies included in the index into eleven Global Industry Classification Sectors: Financials, Consumer Discretionary, Industrials, Information Technology, Consumer Staples, Materials, Real Estate, Health Care, Telecommunication Services, Utilities and Energy. As of the close of business on September 21, 2018, MSCI and S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC updated the Global Industry Classification Sector structure. Among other things, the update broadened the Telecommunications Services sector and renamed it the Communication Services sector. The renamed sector includes the previously existing Telecommunication Services Industry group, as well as the Media Industry group, which was moved from the Consumer Discretionary sector and renamed the Media & Entertainment Industry group. The Media & Entertainment Industry group contains three industries: Media, Entertainment and Interactive Media & Services. The Media industry continues to consist of the Advertising, Broadcasting, Cable & Satellite and Publishing sub-industries. The Entertainment industry contains the Movies & Entertainment sub-industry (which includes online entertainment streaming companies in addition to companies previously classified in such industry prior to September 21, 2018) and the Interactive Home Entertainment sub-industry (which includes companies previously classified in the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry prior to September 21, 2018 (when the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry was a sub-industry in the Information Technology sector)), as well as producers of interactive gaming products, including mobile gaming applications). The Interactive Media & Services industry and sub-industry includes companies engaged in content and information creation or distribution through proprietary platforms, where revenues are derived primarily through pay-per-click advertisements, and includes search engines, social media and networking platforms, online classifieds and

Table of Contents

online review companies. The Global Classification Sector structure changes will be implemented in the MSCI Japan Index in connection with the November 2018 semi-annual index review.

For additional information about the construction, calculation methodology and maintenance of the index, please see "iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF — Construction of the MSCI Indices", "iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF — Calculation Methodology for the MSCI Indices" and "iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF — Maintenance of the MSCI Indices", respectively, on pages S-86, S-88 and S-89 of this prospectus supplement, respectively.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. The daily historical closing prices in the graph below have been adjusted for a 1-for-4 reverse stock split that became effective before the market open on November 7, 2016. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® MSCI Japan ETF

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® 20+ Year Treasury Bond ETF

The shares of the iShares® 20+ Year Treasury Bond ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it currently tracks is the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index (the "index"). Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 20+ Year Treasury Bond Index.
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NASDAQ under the ticker symbol "TLT".
- The iShares® Trust's SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF's inception date was July 22, 2002.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 100,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is paid a management fee from the ETF based on a percentage of the ETF's average daily net assets, at an annual rate of 0.15%. BFA is responsible for substantially all expenses of the ETF, except interest expenses, taxes, brokerage expenses, future distribution fees or expenses and extraordinary expenses. As of September 30, 2018, the expense ratio of the ETF was 0.15% per annum.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Semi-Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N−CSRS for the period ended August 31, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/TLT.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective and Strategy

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index that the ETF tracks may be changed without shareholder approval.

BFA uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to attempt to track the performance of the index. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability, duration, maturity or credit ratings and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index. The ETF may or may not hold all of the securities in the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the bonds in the index and at least 95% of its assets in U.S. government bonds. The ETF may invest up to 10% of its assets in U.S. government bonds not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. The ETF may also invest up to 5% of its assets in repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government obligations and in cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates. The ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Table of Contents

The ETF's Holdings

The following table displays the top holdings of the ETF. We obtained the information in the tables below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

iShares® 20+ Year Treasury Bond ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018*

U.S. Treasury Bond	Percentage (%)
2.50% due 2/15/2045	9.23%
2.50% due 2/15/2046	7.52%
3.00% due 11/15/2045	6.75%
3.13% due 8/15/2044	6.60%
2.88% due 5/15/2043	6.46%
2.50% due 5/15/2046	5.91%
4.25% due 11/15/2040	4.88%
2.75% due 8/15/2047	4.63%
3.75% due 11/15/2043	4.23%
2.88% due 11/15/2046	4.13%
Total	60.34%

The following table displays additional information about the bonds held by the ETF and the annualized performance difference, in each case as of November 12, 2018*. We obtained the information in the table below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

Weighted average maturity	25.51 years
Weighted average coupon	3.05%
Effective duration	17.05 years

Weighted average maturity is the length of time until the average security in the ETF will mature or be redeemed by its issuer. Weighted average coupon is the average coupon rate of the underlying bonds in the ETF, weighted by the relative size in the ETF. Effective duration is a measure of the potential responsiveness of a bond or portfolio price to small parallel shifts in interest rates, taking into account the possible changes in expected bond cash flows due to small parallel shifts in interest rates.

As of November 12, 2018*, the ETF's holdings were comprised of 31 U.S. Treasury bonds (99.89% of holdings) and cash and/or derivatives (0.11% of holdings). Of the ETF's U.S. Treasury bond holdings, all were AAA rated under the S&P major rating category. The S&P major rating categories are derived from the S&P, Moody's and Fitch ratings for a security.

*Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 20+ Year Treasury Bond Index.

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences, differences in transaction costs, the ETF holding uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of or the valuation of distributions, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

Table of Contents

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -6.34%; 3 years, -0.09%; 5 years, 3.79%; 10 years, 5.22%; since inception, 5.80%; index: 1 year, -6.52%; 3 years, -0.06%; 5 years, 3.81%; 10 years, 5.33%; since ETF inception, 5.88%. Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 20+ Year Treasury Bond Index.

The Index

The index is sponsored by ICE Data Indices, LLC ("IDI"). It is market value weighted and designed to measure the performance of U.S. dollar-denominated, fixed rate treasuries with a minimum term to maturity greater than 20 years. The ICE Data Indices, LLC Index Governance Committee (the "governance committee") is responsible for governance and oversight of the index along with oversight of the ICE Data Index Services team (the "IDIS"), which has the daily responsibility for the operation of the index. The governance committee will approve any necessary changes to the index methodology, and the IDIS is responsible for implementing the changes and notifying subscribers. Where a change is material, IDI will consult with stakeholders and subscribers in accordance with the IDI consultation process. For other changes, advance notice will be provided, where possible, to allow stakeholders and subscribers appropriate preparation to implement the change.

Eligibility Criteria and Inclusion Rules

In order to be included in the index, a security must be a U.S. dollar denominated, fixed rate U.S. Treasury issued debt security ("treasury") with a minimum term to maturity greater than 20 years. Inflation-linked securities, floating rate notes, cash management and treasury bills and government agency debt, whether issued with or without a government guarantee, are excluded from the index, as are zero coupon securities. The treasury is required to have a minimum amount outstanding of $300 million U.S. dollars. Amount outstanding is defined as the par amount outstanding of each treasury, inclusive of any announced auctions or re-openings, less the par amount of that treasury held in the Federal Reserve System Open Market Account ("SOMA") or bought at issuance (including by auction) by the Federal Reserve. Secondary market purchases by the Federal Reserve are reflected in the index in the month following the purchase.

Index Calculation

Index returns are calculated by aggregating the constituent level returns using market weights. The total market value of the index at any time is the sum of the market value of each constituent plus any intra-month cash from coupon payments or principal repayments and the weight for the constituent. Calculations are performed daily, using bid prices at 3 p.m. Eastern Time.

Index Maintenance

The index is rebalanced at each month end. The new index for the next month is available three days prior to month end and is intended to reflect the constituent changes from the prior rebalancing date based on index eligibility. Newly issued securities that are issued on or before the month-end rebalancing date that qualify for inclusion in the index will be included in the pro forma index with a price of $100 until replaced with an evaluated price as soon as available after the auction day.

No adjustments are made for treasuries that become eligible or ineligible intra-month. Any such change will be incorporated in the index at the next month-end rebalancing and made effective from the first day of the following month.

Cash that has accrued intra-month from interest and principal payments earns no reinvestment return during the month. The accumulated intra-month cash is removed from the index at month-end, which implies that it is reinvested pro rata across the entire index.

Current Composition of the Index

As of November 9, 2018, the index's holdings were comprised of 39 U.S. Treasury bonds. The following table displays additional information about the bonds held by the index as of November 9, 2018. We obtained the information in the table below from the ICE website without independent verification.

Weighted average maturity	25.81 years
Weighted average coupon	3.16%

Table of Contents

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® 20+ Year Treasury Bond ETF

*Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 20+ Year Treasury Bond Index.

Hypothetical and Historical Closing Levels of the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index

The closing level of the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any upward or downward trend in the historical or hypothetical closing level of the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index during the period shown below is not an indication that the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index is more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. You should not take the historical or hypothetical closing levels of the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index as an indication of the future performance of the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index or make any assumptions, based on the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index's historical or hypothetical performance, about the performance of the ETF.

Table of Contents

We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the ETF's shares will be consistent with the historical or hypothetical performance of the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index.

The graph below shows the closing levels of the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018 (using hypothetical performance data and historical closing levels). Since the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index was launched on December 31, 2015 and has a limited operating history, the graph includes hypothetical performance data for the underlier prior to its launch on December 31, 2015. The hypothetical performance data and historical closing levels were obtained from ICE's website, without independent verification. (In the graph, historical closing levels can be found to the right of the vertical solid line marker.)

Historical Performance of ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index

*The ETF began tracking the ICE U.S. Treasury 20+ Year Bond Index on April 1, 2016.

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® iBoxx $ Investment Grade Corporate Bond ETF

The shares of the iShares® iBoxx $ Investment Grade Corporate Bond ETF (the “ETF”) are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the Markit iBoxx® USD Liquid Investment Grade Index (the “index”).
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors (“BFA”).
- The ETF’s shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol “LQD”.
- The iShares® Trust’s SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF’s inception date was July 22, 2002.
- The ETF’s shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 100,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is paid a management fee from the ETF calculated based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other specified iShares® funds (the “funds”). The management fee for the ETF equals the ratio of the ETF’s net assets over the aggregate net assets of the ETF multiplied by the amount calculated as follows: 0.1500% per annum of the average daily net assets of the combined funds less than or equal to $121.0 billion; plus 0.1425% per annum of the average daily net assets of the combined funds on amounts greater than $121.0 billion up to and including $181.0 billion; plus 0.1354% of the average daily net assets of the combined funds on amounts greater than $181.0 billion up to and including $231.0 billion; plus 0.1287% of the average daily net assets of the combined funds on amounts greater than $231.0 billion up to and including $281.0 billion; plus 0.1222% of the average daily net assets of the combined funds on amounts greater than $281.0 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the expense ratio of the ETF was 0.15% per annum.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Semi-Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N−CSRS for the period ended August 31, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/LQD.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective and Strategy

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF’s investment objective and the index may be changed without the approval of BFA’s shareholders.

The following table displays the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and ETF sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or ETFs with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

iShares® iBoxx $ Investment Grade Corporate Bond ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

Corporate Bond Issuer	Percentage (%)
VERIZON COMMUNICATIONS INC	0.55%
ANHEUSER-BUSCH INBEV FINANCE INC	0.43%
ANHEUSER-BUSCH INBEV FINANCE INC	0.43%
GE CAPITAL INTERNATIONAL FUNDING C	0.38%
CVS HEALTH CORP	0.33%
CVS HEALTH CORP	0.33%
GOLDMAN SACHS GROUP INC	0.24%
CVS HEALTH CORP	0.24%
ANHEUSER-BUSCH INBEV FINANCE INC	0.23%
ANHEUSER-BUSCH INBEV FINANCE INC	0.23%
Total	3.39%

iShares® iBoxx $ Investment Grade Corporate Bond ETF Weighting by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
Banking	27.60%
Consumer Non-Cyclical	18.59%
Communications	12.26%
Energy	9.74%
Technology	9.62%
Consumer Cyclical	7.28%
Capital Goods	3.57%
Basic Industry	1.74%
Insurance	4.02%
Electric	1.94%
Transportation	1.18%
Finance Companies	0.62%
REITs	0.45%
Owned No Guarantee	0.22%
Brokerage/Asset Managers/Exchanges	0.51%
Cash and/or Derivatives	0.29%
Financial Other	0.00%
Natural Gas	0.30%
Utility Other	0.06%
Total	99.99%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

The following table displays additional information about the bonds held by the ETF, in each case as of November 12, 2018. We obtained the information in the table below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

Weighted average maturity	12.62 years
Weighted average coupon	4.06%
Effective duration	8.28 years

Weighted average maturity is the length of time until the average security in the ETF will mature or be redeemed by its issuer. Weighted average coupon is the average coupon rate of the underlying bonds in the ETF, weighted by the relative size in the ETF. Effective duration is a measure of the potential responsiveness of a bond or portfolio price to small parallel shifts in interest rates, taking into account possible changes in expected bond cash flows due to small parallel shifts in interest rates.

Table of Contents

Representative Sampling

Although the ETF seeks results that correspond generally to the performance of the index, the ETF uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to attempt to track the performance of the index. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index, although the ETF may or may not hold all of the securities in the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability, duration, maturity or credit ratings and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the component securities of the index and at least 95% of its assets in investment-grade corporate bonds. However, the ETF may at times invest up to 20% of its assets in certain futures, options and swap contracts, cash and cash equivalents as well as bonds not included in the index but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index and which are either: (i) included in the Markit iBoxx USD Index (the broader index upon which the index is based); or (ii) new issues which BFA believes are or about to enter the index or the Markit iBoxx USD Index. The ETF may invest up to 5% of its assets in repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government obligations and in cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market entering funds advised by BFA or its affiliates. The ETF may also lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and of the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including transaction costs, non-U.S. currency valuations, asset valuations, corporate actions (such as mergers and spin-offs), timing variances and differences between the ETF's portfolio and the index resulting from the ETF's use of representative sampling or from legal restrictions (such as diversification requirements) that apply to the ETF but not to the index.

Tracking error may occur because of differences between the securities held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences (including, as applicable, differences between a security's price at the local market close and the ETF's valuation of a security at the time of calculation of the ETF's NAV), differences in transaction costs, the ETF holding uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of distributions, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in the index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -4.14%; 3 years, 2.12%; 5 years, 2.88%; 10 years, 6.69%; since inception, 5.02%; index: 1 year, -4.06%; 3 years, 2.39%; 5 years, 3.10%; 10 years, 7.23%; since ETF inception, 5.29%.

Table of Contents

Industry Concentration Policy

The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated in that industry or group of industries. For purposes of this limitation, securities of the U.S. government (including its agencies and instrumentalities), repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government securities, and securities of state or municipal governments and their political subdivisions are not considered to be issued by members of any industry.

The Index

The index is a bond index calculated, published and disseminated by the index sponsor, Markit Indices Limited ("Markit"). The index is designed to provide a balanced representation of the U.S. dollar denominated liquid investment grade (as determined by Markit) corporate debt market. The index is market-value weighted, with an issuer weight cap of 3%, calculated as of the last business day of each month using the end-of-month closing prices for each bond. The index is calculated as end-of-day and distributed once daily after 4 p.m. EST. The indices are calculated every day except on common U.S. bank holidays. In addition, the indices are calculated with the previous trading day's close on the last calendar day of each month if that day is not a trading day.

As of February 28, 2018, the index included approximately 1,823 bonds chosen according to the index rules described below.

Selection Criteria of the Index

The bonds in the index must meet all the criteria described below as of the close of business three business days prior to the rebalancing date, and in each case provided that the relevant bond data can be verified, at Markit's sole discretion, as of that cut-off date. The new index composition becomes effective on the first business day of the next month. Additionally, the index rules and their application will be governed by two committees:

- Technical Committee: consists of representatives from market makers/banks and meets on a monthly basis in order to provide feedback and information into the monthly rebalancing process and to monitor any market developments.
- Oversight Committee: consists of representatives from mostly the buy side and meets in order to discuss the decisions of the Technical Committee, the wider index rules and any market developments which may warrant rule changes.

Bond Classification: Bonds must be USD denominated corporate credit (i.e., debt instruments backed by corporate issuers that are not secured by specific assets) with clearance and settlement available through The Depository Trust Company. Bonds must be publicly registered with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission or be Rule 144A offerings with registration rights. Debt issued by governments, sovereigns, quasi-sovereigns, and government-backed or guaranteed entities is excluded. The issuer or, in the case of a finance subsidiary, the issuer's guarantor, must be domiciled, incorporated and the country of risk must be in Andorra, Australia, Austria, Belgium, Bermuda, Canada, Cayman Islands, Cyprus, Denmark, Faeroe Islands, Finland, France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hong Kong, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Jersey, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Malta, Monaco, Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Portugal, San Marino, Singapore, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United States or United Kingdom. A new country is added to the index if it is classified as a developed market on the "Markit Global Economic Development Classification." A country is no longer eligible for the index if it is classified as an emerging market based on the "Markit Global Economic Development Classification". The "Markit Global Economic Development Classification" is updated once per year. The results are published at the end of July. The inclusion/exclusion of a country becomes effective at the end of October. Each bond is assigned to one of the following six sectors: Consumer Goods, Consumer Services, Financials, Industrials & Materials, Telecommunication & Technology and Utilities & Energy.

All bonds are classified based on the principal activities of the issuer, the main sources of the cash flows used to pay coupons and redemptions, and a bond's specific collateral type or legal provisions. Markit reviews bond classification regularly and makes necessary changes at the next rebalancing.

Bond Type: Only fixed rate bonds whose cash flow can be determined in advance are eligible, including fixed coupon bonds, step-up bonds with coupon schedules known at issuance (or as functions of the issuer's rating), bonds with sinking funds, amortizing bonds, medium term notes, Rule 144A offerings with a registration right (only 144A bonds with a Regulation S version eligible for the Markit iBoxx® USD Benchmark Index), callable bonds and putable bonds. Preferred shares, convertible bonds, subordinated bank or insurance debt with mandatory contingent conversion features or with any conversion options before the first call date, bonds with other equity features attached (e.g., options or warrants),

Table of Contents

private placements, perpetual bonds, fixed-to-floater bonds, floating rate notes, pay-in kind bonds, zero coupon bonds, bonds with zero step-ups ("GAINS"), bonds with difference between accrual and coupon payment periods, and monthly-paying bonds are excluded. Any bond subject to a firm call or tender offer, with the exception of exchange offers, in the month immediately following the rebalancing date will be excluded, provided that Markit is aware of such tender offer or firm call.

For retail bonds and private placements, publicly available information is not always conclusive and the classification of a bond as a retail bond or a private placement will be made at Markit's discretion based on the information available at the time of the determination. In instances where a new bond type is not specifically excluded or included in the index according to the published index rules, Markit will analyze the features of such securities in line with the principles set out in the index rules to make the determination as to whether the bond will be included.

Credit Rating: All bonds must have a Markit iBoxx rating of investment grade. Ratings from each of the following three agencies are considered for the calculation of the Markit iBoxx Rating: Fitch Ratings, Moody's Investor Service and S&P Global Ratings. Investment grade is defined as BBB- or above from Fitch or S&P and Baa3 or above from Moody's. If a bond is rated by more than one of the above agencies, then the Markit iBoxx rating is the average of the provided ratings. In the case of an ID change or exchange of a Rule 144A/Regulation S offering into a registered bond, the ratings from the Rule 144A/Regulation S offering are also used for the registered bond.

Time to Maturity: At the rebalancing day, all bonds must have an expected remaining life of at least three years, and all newly included bonds must have an expected remaining life of at least three years and six months.

Amount Outstanding: The outstanding face value of a bond must be at least $750 million as of the bond selection cut-off date, after taking into account buybacks or increases. The outstanding face value of all bonds denominated in USD in the broader Markit iBoxx USD Investment Grade Corporate Index (excluding fixed-to-floater and perpetual bonds) from the issuer must be at least $2 billion as of the bond selection cut-off date.

Minimum Run: Any bond that enters the index must remain in the index for a minimum of six months (provided that the bond is not downgraded to sub-investment grade, defaulted or fully redeemed in that period).

Lockout Period: A bond that drops out of the index at re-balancing is excluded from re-entering the index for a three-month period.

Calculation of the Index

Bond Prices: All iBoxx indices are multi-source priced. Prices for the bonds in the index are sourced from a number of representative sources. Pricing data is produced by experienced pricing analysts using established instrument evaluation models; non-transactional data such as observed bid and ask prices may predominate for a given bond as the data is being scrutinized to reliably represent the interest measured. The pricing service may also decide to rely upon expert judgment in an active albeit low liquidity market or any other circumstances, when observed bid and ask prices or transactions may not be consistently available each day.

Index Rebalancing: The index is rebalanced every month on the last business day of the month after the close of business. Any inclusion after the index cut-off day (t-3) will not be considered in the re-balancing process, but will become effective at the end of the following month. New bonds issued are taken into account if they are publicly known to settle through the last calendar day of the month and if their rating and amount outstanding has become known at least three trading days before the end of the month.

Three preview lists of eligible bonds are published on ten (t-10), five (t-5), and three (t-3) trading days before the end of the month. Two business days before the end of each month, the rating and amount information for the constituents is updated and the list is adjusted for all rating and amount changes which are known to have taken place three business days before the end of the month which could also result in exclusion of the bond. The rating and amount changes made two business days before the end of the month will not be considered for inclusion. Two business days before the end of the month the final index membership list for the following month is published at the close of business.

Index Weights: The weight for each bond is determined on the last business day of each month using the end-of-month market values and applying an issuer cap of 3%.

Index Data: New bonds are included in the index at their respective ask prices when they enter the index family. In the event that no price can be established for a particular bond, the index continues to be calculated based on the last-available price.

S-105

Table of Contents

Index Calculation: The components of the total return are price changes, accrued interest, coupon payments, and reinvestment income on cash flows received during the composition month. Calculations are performed daily, using bid prices at approximately 4 p.m. Eastern Time.

Treatment of Special Intra-Month Events: Data for the application of corporate actions in the index may not be fully or timely available at all times. In such cases, Markit will estimate the approximate value based on the available data at the time of calculation.

- Unscheduled Full Redemption: If a bond is fully redeemed intra-month, the redeemed bond is treated as cash based on the last consolidated price, the call price or repurchase price, as applicable. In addition, the clean price of the bond is set to the redemption price, and the interest accrued until the redemption date is treated as an irregular coupon payment.
- Bonds Trading Flat of Accrued: If a bond is identified as trading flat of accrued, the accrued interest of the bonds is set to 0 in the total return index calculation and the bond is excluded from the calculation of all bond and index analytical values.
- Multi-Coupon Bonds: For step-up bonds with a pre-defined coupon schedule, such schedule cannot change during the life of the bond and is used for all calculations. For event-driven bonds whose coupon may change upon occurrence (or non-occurrence) of pre-specified events, the coupon schedule as of the calculation date is used.

Additional information about the iBoxx $ Liquid Investment Grade Index is available at markit.com/product/IBoxx and may also be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles and other publicly available documents. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF’s Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Table of Contents

Historical Performance of iShares® iBoxx $ Investment Grade Corporate Bond ETF

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® iBoxx $ High Yield Corporate Bond ETF

The shares of the iShares® iBoxx $ High Yield Corporate Bond ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the Markit iBoxx® USD Liquid High Yield Index (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "HYG".
- The iShares® Trust's SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF's inception date was April 4, 2007.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 100,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is paid a management fee from the ETF corresponding to the ETF's allocable portion of an aggregate management fee based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and another specified iShares® fund (the "funds") as follows: 0.5000% per annum of the average daily net assets of the combined funds less than or equal to $19.0 billion, plus 0.4750% per annum of the average daily net assets of the combined funds on amounts greater than $19.0 billion up to $33.0 billion, plus 0.4513% per annum of the average daily net assets of the combined funds on amounts greater than $33.0 billion up to $47.0 billion, plus 0.4287% of the average daily net assets of the combined funds on amounts in excess of $47.0 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the expense ratio of the ETF was 0.49% per annum.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Semi-Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N–CSRS for the period ended August 31, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/HYG.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective and Strategy

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index may be changed without the approval of BFA's shareholders. The following table displays the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and ETF sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or ETFs with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.). We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

iShares® iBoxx $ High Yield Corporate Bond ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

Corporate Bond Issuer	Percentage (%)
BLK CSH FND TREASURY SL AGENCY	0.69%
ALTICE FRANCE SA (FRANCE) 144A	0.59%
SPRINT CORP	0.53%
FIRST DATA CORPORATION 144A	0.42%
BAUSCH HEALTH COMPANIES INC 144A	0.38%
CCO HOLDINGS LLC 144A	0.36%
CHS/COMMUNITY HEALTH SYSTEMS INC	0.36%
BAUSCH HEALTH COMPANIES INC 144A	0.36%
REYNOLDS GROUP ISSUER LLC	0.36%
PRIME SECURITY SERVICES BORROWER L 144A	0.34%
Total	4.39%

iShares® iBoxx $ High Yield Corporate Bond ETF Weighting by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
Communications	23.19%
Consumer Non-Cyclical	15.99%
Consumer Cyclical	12.06%
Energy	14.82%
Capital Goods	7.25%
Technology	8.15%
Basic Industry	4.39%
Finance Companies	3.63%
Electric	2.78%
Banking	1.24%
Transportation	1.04%
Cash and/or Derivatives	0.50%
Financial Other	1.11%
Insurance	1.53%
Industrial Other	0.69%
Reits	0.88%
Brokerage/Asset Managers/Exchanges	0.22%
Owned No Guarantee	0.56%
Total	100.03%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

The following table displays additional information about the bonds held by the ETF, in each case as of November 12, 2018. We obtained the information in the table below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

Weighted average maturity	4.88 years
Weighted average coupon	6.14%
Effective duration	3.77 years

Table of Contents

Weighted average maturity is the length of time until the average security in the ETF will mature or be redeemed by its issuer. Weighted average coupon is the average coupon rate of the underlying bonds in the ETF, weighted by the relative size in the ETF. Effective duration is a measure of the responsiveness of a bond or portfolio price to small parallel shifts in interest rates, taking into account possible changes in expected bond cash flows due to small parallel shifts in interest rates.

Representative Sampling

Although the ETF seeks results that correspond generally to the performance of the index, the ETF uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to attempt to track the performance of the index. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index, although the ETF may or may not hold all of the securities in the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability, duration, maturity or credit ratings and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the component securities of the index and may invest up to 10% of its assets in certain futures, options and swaps contracts, cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds affiliated with BFA, as well as in bonds not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. From time to time when conditions warrant, however, the ETF may invest at least 80% of its assets in the component securities of the index and may invest up to 20% of its assets in certain futures, options and swap contracts, cash and cash equivalents, including shares of BlackRock Cash Funds as well as securities not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. For example, the ETF may invest in securities not included in the index in order to reflect prospective changes in the index. The ETF may also lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF’s total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and of the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including transaction costs, non-U.S. currency valuations, asset valuations, corporate actions (such as mergers and spin-offs), timing variances and differences between the ETF’s portfolio and the index resulting from the ETF’s use of representative sampling or from legal restrictions (such as diversification requirements) that apply to the ETF but not to the index.

Tracking error may occur because of differences between the securities held in the ETF’s portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences (including, as applicable, differences between a security’s price at the local market close and the ETF’s valuation of a security at the time of calculation of the ETF’s NAV), differences in transaction costs, the ETF holding uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of or the valuation of distributions, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. Tracking error risk may be heightened during times of increased market volatility or other unusual market conditions. BFA expects that the ETF may experience higher tracking error than is typical for similar exchange-traded funds. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF’s tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF’s use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF’s shares and the index. The market price of the ETF’s shares represents changes to the mid-point price and accounts for distributions from the ETF. The mid-point is the average of the mid-point of the bid-ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, 0.37%; 3 years, 4.93%; 5 years, 3.37%; 10 years, 8.70%; since inception, 5.21%; index: 1 year, 0.97%; 3 years, 5.78%; 5 years, 3.91%; 10 years, 9.84%; since ETF inception, 5.74%.

Industry Concentration

The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated in that industry or group of industries. For purposes of this limitation, securities of the U.S. government (including its agencies and instrumentalities), repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government securities, and securities of state or municipal governments and their political subdivisions are not considered to be issued by members of any industry.

Table of Contents

The Index

The index is a bond index calculated, published and disseminated by the index sponsor, Markit Indices Limited ("Markit"). The index is designed to reflect the performance of U.S. dollar ("USD") denominated high yield (as determined by Markit) corporate debt through a broad coverage of the USD high yield liquid bond universe. The index is market-value weighted, with an issuer weight cap of 3%, calculated as of the last business day of each month using the end-of-month closing prices for each bond. The index is calculated as end-of-day and distributed once daily. The indices are calculated every day except on common U.S. bank holidays. In addition, the indices are calculated with the previous trading day's close on the last calendar day of each month if that day is not a trading day.

As of February 28, 2018, the index included approximately 983 bonds chosen according to the index rules described below.

Selection Criteria of the Index

The bonds in the index must meet all the criteria described below as of the close of business three business days prior to the rebalancing date provided that the relevant bond data can be verified, at Markit's sole discretion, as of that cut-off date. The new index composition becomes effective on the first business day of the next month. Additionally, the index rules and their application will be governed by two committees:

- Technical Committee: consists of representatives from market makers/banks and meets on a monthly basis in order to provide feedback and information into the monthly rebalancing process and to monitor any market developments.
- Oversight Committee: consists of representatives from mostly the buy side and meets in order to discuss the decisions of the Technical Committee, the wider index rules and any market developments which may warrant rule changes.

Bond Classification: Bonds must be USD denominated corporate credit (i.e., debt instruments backed by corporate issuers that are not secured by specific assets). Debt issued by governments, sovereigns, quasi-sovereigns, and government-backed or guaranteed entities is excluded. As of August 2012, the issuer or, in the case of a finance subsidiary, the issuer's guarantor, must be domiciled, incorporated and the country of risk must be in Andorra, Australia, Austria, Belgium, Bermuda, Canada, Cayman Islands, Cyprus, Denmark, Faeroe Islands, Finland, France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hong Kong, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Jersey, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Malta, Monaco, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Portugal, San Marino, Singapore, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, the United States or the United Kingdom. A new country is added to the index if it is classified as a developed market according to "Markit's Global Economic Development Classification." A country is no longer eligible for the index if it is classified as an emerging market based on "Markit's Global Economic Development Classification." The "Markit Global Economic Development Classification" is updated once per year. The results are published at the end of July. The inclusion/exclusion of a country becomes effective at the end of October. Each bond is assigned to one of the following sectors: Oil & Gas, Basic Materials, Industrials, Consumer Goods, Health Care, Consumer Services, Telecommunications, Technology, Utilities, Financials and Technology.

All bonds are classified based on the principal activities of the issuer, the main sources of the cash flows used to pay coupons and redemptions, and a bond's specific collateral type or legal provisions. Markit reviews bond classification regularly and makes necessary changes at the next rebalancing.

Bond Type: Only fixed rate bonds whose cash flow can be determined in advance are eligible, including fixed coupon bonds, step-up bonds with coupon schedules known at issuance (or as functions of the issuer's rating), bonds with sinking funds, amortizing bonds, medium term notes, Rule 144A offerings, callable bonds and putable bonds. Preferred shares, convertible bonds, subordinated bank or insurance debt with mandatory contingent conversion features or with any conversion options before the first call date, bonds with other equity features attached (e.g., options or warrants), private placements, perpetual bonds, floating rate notes, pay-in kind bonds, zero coupon bonds, bonds with zero step-ups ("GAINS"), bonds with difference between accrual and coupon payment periods, monthly-paying bonds and Regulation S offerings are excluded. Any bond subject to a firm call or tender offer, with the exception of exchange offers in the month immediately following the rebalancing date will be excluded, provided that Markit is aware of such tender offer or firm call.

Table of Contents

For retail bonds and private placements, publicly available information is not always conclusive and the classification of a bond as a retail bond or a private placement will be made at Markit's discretion based on the information available at the time of the determination. In instances where a new bond type is not specifically excluded or included in the index according to the published index rules, Markit will analyze the features of such securities in line with the principles set out in the index rules to make the determination as to whether the bond will be included.

Credit Rating: All bonds must have a rating of sub-investment grade. Ratings from each of the following three agencies are considered: Fitch Ratings, Moody's Investor Service and S&P Global Ratings. If more than one agency rates a given bond, those ratings are averaged. Sub-investment grade is defined as BB+ or lower from Fitch or S&P and Ba1 or lower from Moody's, but not in default. Bonds rated D by Fitch or S&P, or that have been subject to a default press release by Moody's are excluded. An included bond subsequently downgraded to D by Fitch or S&P or subject to a default press release by Moody's (as of the bond selection cut-off date) will be excluded on the next rebalancing date. In case of an exchange of a 144A bond into a registered bond, the ratings from the 144A bond are also used for the registered bond. After a bond has migrated into high yield from investment grade status, it must retain that status for three months before it can be included in the index.

Time to Maturity: At issuance, all bonds must have an expected remaining life of 15 years or less. At the rebalancing day, all bonds must have an expected remaining life of at least one year and all newly included bonds must have an expected remaining life of at least one year and six months.

Amount Outstanding: The outstanding face value of a bond must be at least $400 million as of the bond selection cut-off date, after taking into account buybacks or increases. The outstanding face value of all non-convertible bonds denominated in USD from the issuer must be at least $1 billion as of the bond selection cut-off date.

Minimum Run: Any bond that enters the index must remain in the index for a minimum of six months (provided that the bond is not upgraded to investment grade, defaulted or fully redeemed in that period).

Lockout Period: A bond that drops out of the index at re-balancing is excluded from re-entering the index for a three-month period.

Calculation of the Index

Bond Prices: All iBoxx indices are multi-source priced. Prices for the bonds in the index are sourced from a number of representative sources. Pricing data is produced by experienced pricing analysts using established instrument evaluation models; non-transactional data such as observed bid and ask prices may predominate for a given bond as the data is being scrutinized to reliably represent the interest measured. The pricing service may also decide to rely upon expert judgment in an active albeit low liquidity market or any other circumstances, when observed bid and ask prices or transactions may not be consistently available each day.

Index Rebalancing: The index is rebalanced every month on the last business day of the month. Any inclusion after the index cut-off day (t-3) will not be considered in the re-balancing process, but will become effective at the end of the following month. New bonds issued are taken into account if they are publicly known to settle through the last calendar day of the month and if their rating and amount outstanding has become known at least three trading days before the end of the month.

Three preview lists of eligible bonds are published on ten (t-10), five (t-5), and three (t-3) trading days before the end of the month. Two business days before the end of each month, the rating and amount information for the constituents is updated and the list is adjusted for all rating and amount changes which are known to have taken place three business days before the end of the month which could also result in exclusion of the bond. The rating and amount changes made two business days before the end of the month will not be considered for inclusion. Two business days before the end of the month the final index membership list for the following month is published at the close of business.

Index Weights: The weight for each bond is determined on the last business day of each month using the end-of-month market values and applying an issuer cap of 3%.

Index Calculation: The components of the total return are price changes, accrued interest, coupon payments, and reinvestment income on cash flows received during the composition month. The calculation is based on bond pricing provided by independent bond pricing services. The cut-off time for the bond pricing used in the index is 3 p.m. Eastern Time.

Table of Contents

Treatment of Special Intra-Month Events: Data for the application of corporate actions in the index may not be fully or timely available at all times. In such cases, Markit will estimate the approximate value based on the available data at the time of calculation.

- Unscheduled Full Redemption: If a bond is fully redeemed intra-month, the redeemed bond is treated as cash based on the last consolidated price, the call price or repurchase price, as applicable. In addition, the clean price of the bond is set to the redemption price, and the interest accrued until the redemption date is treated as an irregular coupon payment.
- Bonds Trading Flat of Accrued: If a bond is identified as trading flat of accrued, the accrued interest of the bond is set to 0 in the total return index calculation and is excluded from the calculation of all bond and index analytical values.

Bonds will be considered trading flat of accrued in any of the following situations:

- Default rating
- Issuer has announced a failure to pay a coupon
- Issuer has announced an intention not to make a payment on an upcoming coupon (grace period)
- Multi-Coupon Bonds: For step-up bonds with a pre-defined coupon schedule, such schedule cannot change during the life of the bond and is used for all calculations. For event-driven bonds whose coupon may change upon occurrence (or non-occurrence) of pre-specified events, the coupon schedule as of the calculation date is used.

Additional information about the Markit iBoxx $ Liquid High Yield Index is available at markit.com/product/IBoxx and may also be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles and other publicly available documents. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Table of Contents

Historical Performance of iShares® iBoxx $ High Yield Corporate Bond ETF

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® 7-10 Year Treasury Bond ETF

The shares of the iShares® 7-10 Year Treasury Bond ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it currently tracks is the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index (the "index"). Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 7-10 Year Treasury Bond Index.
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NASDAQ under the ticker symbol "IEF".
- The iShares® Trust's SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF's inception date was July 22, 2002.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 100,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is paid a management fee from the ETF based on a percentage of the ETF's average daily net assets, at an annual rate of 0.15%. BFA is responsible for substantially all expenses of the ETF, except interest expenses, taxes, brokerage expenses, future distribution fees or expenses and extraordinary expenses. As of September 30, 2018, the expense ratio of the ETF was 0.15% per annum.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Semi-Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N-CSRS for the period ended August 31, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/IEF.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective and Strategy

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index that the ETF tracks may be changed without shareholder approval.

BFA uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to attempt to track the performance of the index. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability, duration, maturity or credit ratings and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index. The ETF may or may not hold all of the securities in the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the bonds in the index and at least 95% of its assets in U.S. government bonds. The ETF may invest up to 10% of its assets in U.S. government bonds not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. The ETF may also invest up to 5% of its assets in repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government obligations and in cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates. The ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Table of Contents

The ETF's Holdings

The following table displays the top holdings of the ETF. We obtained the information in the tables below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

iShares® 7-10 Year Treasury Bond ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018*

U.S. Treasury Bond	Percentage (%)
2.38% due 5/15/2027	20.65%
1.63% due 5/15/2026	15.31%
2.25% due 8/15/2027	15.10%
2.25% due 2/15/2027	13.78%
2.00% due 11/15/2026	8.84%
2.88% due 5/15/2028	6.93%
1.63% due 2/15/2026	6.90%
2.75% due 2/15/2028	5.62%
2.25% due 11/15/2027	3.31%
1.50% due 8/15/2026	2.28%
Total	98.72%

The following table displays additional information about the bonds held by the ETF and the annualized performance difference, in each case as of November 12, 2018*. We obtained the information in the table below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

Weighted average maturity	8.32 years
Weighted average coupon	2.17%
Effective duration	7.42 years

Weighted average maturity is the length of time until the average security in the ETF will mature or be redeemed by its issuer. Weighted average coupon is the average coupon rate of the underlying bonds in the ETF, weighted by the relative size in the ETF. Effective duration is a measure of the potential responsiveness of a bond or portfolio price to small parallel shifts in interest rates, taking into account the possible changes in expected bond cash flows due to small parallel shifts in interest rates.

As of November 12, 2018*, the ETF's holdings were comprised of 12 U.S. Treasury bonds (99.92% of holdings) and cash and/or derivatives (0.08% of holdings). Of the ETF's U.S. Treasury bond holdings, all were AAA rated under the S&P major rating category. The S&P major rating categories are derived from the S&P, Moody's and Fitch ratings for a security.

*Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 7-10 Year Treasury Bond Index.

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences, differences in transaction costs, the ETF holding uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of or the valuation of distributions, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -3.17%; 3 years, -0.16%; 5 years, 1.53%; 10 years, 3.79%; since inception, 4.33%; index: 1 year, -3.16%;

Table of Contents

3 years, -0.11%; 5 years, 1.58%; 10 years, 3.93%; since ETF inception, 4.38%. Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 7-10 Year Treasury Bond Index.

The Index

The index is sponsored by ICE Data Indices, LLC (“IDI”). It is market value weighted and designed to measure the performance of U.S. dollar-denominated, fixed rate treasuries with a minimum term to maturity greater than seven years and less than or equal to ten years.

The ICE Data Indices, LLC Index Governance Committee (the “governance committee”) is responsible for governance and oversight of the index along with oversight of the ICE Data Index Services team (the “IDIS”), which has the daily responsibility for the operation of the index. The governance committee will approve any necessary changes to the index methodology, and the IDIS is responsible for implementing the changes and notifying subscribers. Where a change is material, IDI will consult with stakeholders and subscribers in accordance with the IDI consultation process. For other changes, advance notice will be provided, where possible, to allow stakeholders and subscribers appropriate preparation to implement the change.

Eligibility Criteria and Inclusion Rules

In order to be included in the index, a security must be a U.S. dollar denominated, fixed rate U.S. Treasury issued debt security (“treasury”) with a minimum term to maturity greater than seven years and less than or equal to ten years. Inflation-linked securities, floating rate notes, cash management and treasury bills and government agency debt, whether issued with or without a government guarantee, are excluded from the index, as are zero coupon securities. The treasury is required to have a minimum amount outstanding of $300 million U.S. dollars. Amount outstanding is defined as the par amount outstanding of each treasury, inclusive of any announced auctions or re-openings, less the par amount of that treasury held in the Federal Reserve System Open Market Account (“SOMA”) or bought at issuance (including by auction) by the Federal Reserve. Secondary market purchases by the Federal Reserve are reflected in the index in the month following the purchase.

Index Calculation

Index returns are calculated by aggregating the constituent level returns using market weights. The total market value of the index at any time is the sum of the market value of each constituent plus any intra-month cash from coupon payments or principal repayments. Calculations are performed daily, using bid prices at 3 p.m. Eastern Time.

Index Maintenance

The index is rebalanced on the last business day (a day that SIFMA declares the U.S. fixed income markets open) of each month. The index composition for the next month is published three business days before the end of the prior month, which will include all eligible treasuries, including any new auctions or re-openings which are announced on or before the third business day before the prior month end. Newly issued securities that are issued on or before the month-end rebalancing date that qualify for inclusion in the index will be included in the pro forma index with a price of $100 until replaced with an evaluated price as soon as available after the auction day.

No adjustments are made for treasuries that become eligible or ineligible intra-month. Any such change will be incorporated in the index at the next month-end rebalancing and made effective from the first day of the following month.

Cash that has accrued intra-month from interest and principal payments earns no reinvestment return during the month. The accumulated intra-month cash is removed from the index at month-end, which implies that it is reinvested pro rata across the entire index.

Current Composition of the Index

As of November 9, 2018, the index’s holdings were comprised of 19 U.S. Treasury bonds. The following table displays additional information about the bonds held by the index as of November 9, 2018. We obtained the information in the table below from the ICE website without independent verification.

Weighted average maturity	8.43 years
Weighted average coupon	2.43%

Table of Contents

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® 7-10 Year Treasury Bond ETF

* Prior to April 1, 2016, the ETF tracked the Barclays U.S. 7-10 Year Treasury Bond Index.

Hypothetical and Historical Closing Levels of the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index

The closing level of the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any upward or downward trend in the historical or hypothetical closing level of the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index during the period shown below is not an indication that the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index is more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. You should not take the historical or hypothetical closing levels of the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index as an indication of the future performance of the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index or make any assumptions, based on the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index's historical or hypothetical performance, about the performance of the ETF.

Table of Contents

We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the ETF's shares will be consistent with the historical or hypothetical performance of ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index.

The graph below shows the closing levels of the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018 (using hypothetical performance data and historical closing levels). Since the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index was launched on December 31, 2015 and has a limited operating history, the graph includes hypothetical performance data for the underlier prior to its launch on December 31, 2015. The hypothetical performance data and historical closing levels were obtained from ICE's website, without independent verification. (In the graph, historical closing levels can be found to the right of the vertical solid line marker.)

Historical Performance of ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index

*The ETF began tracking the ICE U.S. Treasury 7-10 Year Bond Index on April 1, 2016.

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF

The shares of the iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares, Inc. (the "company"). The Company was organized as a Maryland corporation on September 1, 1994 and is authorized to have multiple series or portfolios, of which the ETF is one. On July 1, 2013, the iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets Index Fund changed its name to the iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the MSCI Emerging Markets Index (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "EEM".
- The company's SEC CIK Number is 0000930667.
- The ETF's inception date was April 7, 2003.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 450,000 shares or multiples thereof.

The index was launched on December 31, 1987 with an initial level of 100.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is entitled to receive a management fee from the ETF based on the ETF's allocable portion of an aggregate management fee based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other specified iShares® funds (the "funds") as follows: 0.75% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds less than or equal to U.S. $14.0 billion, plus 0.68% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of U.S. $14.0 billion up to and including U.S. $28.0 billion, plus 0.61% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of U.S. $28.0 billion up to and including U.S. $42.0 billion, plus 0.54% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of U.S. $42.0 billion up to and including U.S. $56.0 billion, plus 0.47% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of U.S. $56.0 billion up to and including U.S. $70.0 billion, plus 0.41% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of U.S. $70.0 billion up to and including U.S. $84.0 billion, plus 0.35% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds in excess of U.S. $84.0 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the aggregate expense ratio of the ETF was 0.69% per annum.

The investment advisory agreement of the ETF provides that BFA will pay all operating expenses of the ETF, except interest expenses, taxes, brokerage expenses, future distribution fees or expenses, and extraordinary expenses. The ETF may also pay "Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses". Acquired Fund Fees and Expenses reflect the ETF's pro rata share of the fees and expenses incurred by investing in other investment companies.

For additional information regarding the company or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N-CSR for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018) and other information the company files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/EEM.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective

The ETF seeks to track the investment results, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective may be changed without shareholder approval.

The following tables display the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. ETF advisors and index sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between ETFs or indices with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

ETF Stock Issuer	Percentage (%)
TENCENT HOLDINGS LTD	4.11%
SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS LTD	4.00%
TAIWAN SEMICONDUCTOR MANUFACTURING	3.85%
ALIBABA GROUP HOLDING ADR REPRESEN	3.45%
NASPERS LIMITED N LTD	1.68%
CHINA CONSTRUCTION BANK CORP H	1.64%
CHINA MOBILE LTD	1.21%
PING AN INSURANCE (GROUP) CO OF CH	1.05%
BAIDU ADR REPTG INC CLASS A	1.04%
INDUSTRIAL AND COMMERCIAL BANK OF	0.98%
Total	23.01%

iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF Weighting by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
Financials	24.69%
Information Technology	15.25%
Consumer Discretionary	10.06%
Consumer Staples	6.51%
Energy	8.43%
Industrials	5.49%
Communication	13.29%
Materials	7.69%
Utilities	2.61%
Real Estate	2.85%
Health Care	2.88%
Cash and/or Derivatives	0.24%
Other	0.00%
Total	99.99%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

The Global Industry Classification Structure, which MSCI utilizes to classify the constituents of the index, was updated in September 2018. Please see "The MSCI® Emerging Markets Index" below for additional information about these updates.

Table of Contents

iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF Weighting by Country as of November 12, 2018*

Country	Percentage (%)
China	30.14%
Korea (South)	14.21%
Taiwan	11.66%
India	8.76%
Brazil	7.63%
South Africa	6.09%
Russian Federation	3.85%
Mexico	2.77%
Thailand	2.47%
Malaysia	2.44%
Indonesia	2.08%
Poland	1.23%
Chile	1.11%
Qatar	1.09%
Cash and/or Derivatives	0.24%
Other	4.23%
Total	100.00%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

Representative Sampling

BFA uses a representative sampling strategy to attempt to track the performance of the index. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have aggregate investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability, earnings valuation and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the securities of the index and in depositary receipts representing securities of the index. The ETF may invest the remainder of its assets in securities not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. The ETF may also invest its other assets in futures contracts, options and swaps, as well as cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds affiliated with BFA. Also, the ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received). The ETF invests all of its assets that are invested in India in a wholly owned subsidiary located in the Republic of Mauritius. BFA also serves of the investment advisor of the subsidiary.

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the ETF’s assets and the index, pricing differences (including differences between a security’s price at the local market close and the ETF’s valuation of a security at the time of calculation of the ETF’s net asset value per share), differences in transaction costs, the ETF’s holding of uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of or the valuation of dividends or interest, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF’s performance difference will not exceed 5%. The ETF’s use of a representative sampling strategy can be expected to produce a greater tracking error over a period of time than would result if the ETF used an indexing strategy in which an exchange traded fund invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF’s shares and the index. The market price of the ETF’s shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -13.51%; 3 years, 6.06%; 5 years, 0.36%; 10 years, 6.45%; since inception, 10.17%; index: 1 year, -12.52%; 3 years, 6.52%; 5 years, 0.78%; 10 years, 7.84%; since ETF inception, 10.67%.

Table of Contents
Industry Concentration Policy
The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated in that industry or group of industries.
The MSCI® Emerging Markets Index
The MSCI Emerging Markets Index, (the "index") is a stock index calculated, published and disseminated daily by MSCI Inc. ("MSCI") through numerous data vendors, on the MSCI website and in real time on Bloomberg Financial Markets and Reuters Limited.
The index is a free float-adjusted market capitalization index and is one of the MSCI Global Investable Market Indices (the "MSCI Indices"), the methodology of which is described below. The index is considered a "standard" index, which means it consists of all eligible large capitalization and mid-capitalization stocks, as determined by MSCI, in the relevant emerging markets. Additional information about the MSCI Indices is available on the following website: msci.com/index-methodology. Daily closing price information for the index is available on the following website: msci.com. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.
The index is intended to provide performance benchmarks for the emerging equity markets in the Americas, Europe, the Middle East, Africa and Asia, which are, as of the date of this prospectus supplement, Brazil, Chile, China, Colombia, Czech Republic, Egypt, Greece, Hungary, India, Indonesia, Korea, Malaysia, Mexico, Pakistan, Peru, Philippines, Poland, Qatar, Russia, South Africa, Taiwan, Thailand, Turkey and the United Arab Emirates. The constituent stocks of the MSCI Emerging Markets Index are derived from the constituent stocks in the 24 MSCI standard single country indices for the emerging market countries listed above. The index is calculated in U.S. dollars on a total return net basis. The index was launched on December 31, 1987 at an initial value of 100.
As of the close on May 31, 2018, MSCI began a multi-step process to include, in the MSCI Emerging Markets Index, large cap China A shares that are not in trading suspension. As part of the first step of the inclusion process, which resulted from the May 2018 quarterly index review, MSCI added such large cap China A shares to the MSCI Emerging Markets Index at 2.5% of their foreign inclusion factor-adjusted market capitalization (as defined below). In connection with the August 2018 quarterly index review, MSCI implemented the second step of the inclusion process by increasing the foreign inclusion factor-adjusted market capitalization of those existing China A share constituents from 2.5% to 5%. With the implementation of this second step, and the inclusion of additional China A shares in connection with the august 2018 quarterly index review, China A shares were initially expected to represent approximately 0.75% of the MSCI Emerging Markets Index.
MSCI has announced that, beginning in June 2019, it expects to include the MSCI Saudi Arabia Index in the MSCI Emerging Markets Index, representing on a pro forma basis a weight of approximately 2.6% of the MSCI Emerging Markets Index with 32 securities, following a two-step inclusion process. The first inclusion step is expected to coincide with the May 2019 semi-annual review and the second inclusion step is expected to take place as part of the August 2019 quarterly index review. In addition, MSCI has announced the reclassification of the MSCI Argentina Index from a "frontier market" to an "emerging market", and the MSCI Argentina Index is expected to be included in the MSCI Emerging Markets Index coinciding with the May 2019 semi-annual index review. MSCI expects to continue to restrict the inclusion in the MSCI Argentina Index to only foreign listings of Argentinian companies, such as American depositary receipts.
MSCI divides the companies included in the index into eleven Global Industry Classification Sectors: Financials, Consumer Discretionary, Industrials, Information Technology, Consumer Staples, Materials, Real Estate, Health Care, Telecommunication Services, Utilities and Energy. As of the close of business on September 21, 2018, MSCI and S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC updated the Global Industry Classification Sector structure. Among other things, the update broadened the Telecommunications Services sector and renamed it the Communication Services sector. The renamed sector includes the previously existing Telecommunication Services Industry group, as well as the Media Industry group, which was moved from the Consumer Discretionary sector and renamed the Media & Entertainment Industry group. The Media & Entertainment Industry group contains three industries: Media, Entertainment and Interactive Media & Services. The Media industry continues to consist of the Advertising, Broadcasting, Cable & Satellite and Publishing sub-industries. The Entertainment industry contains the Movies & Entertainment sub-industry (which includes online entertainment streaming companies in addition to companies previously classified in such

industry prior to September 21, 2018) and the Interactive Home Entertainment sub-industry (which includes companies previously classified in the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry prior to September 21, 2018 (when the Home Entertainment Software sub-industry was a sub-industry in the Information Technology sector)), as well as producers of interactive gaming products, including mobile

Table of Contents

gaming applications). The Interactive Media & Services industry and sub-industry includes companies engaged in content and information creation or distribution through proprietary platforms, where revenues are derived primarily through pay-per-click advertisements, and includes search engines, social media and networking platforms, online classifieds and online review companies. The Global Classification Sector structure changes will be implemented in the MSCI Emerging Markets Index in connection with the November 2018 semi-annual index review.

For additional information about the construction, calculation methodology and maintenance of the index, please see "iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF — Construction of the MSCI Indices", "iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF — Calculation Methodology for the MSCI Indices" and "iShares® MSCI EAFE ETF — Maintenance of the MSCI Indices", respectively, on pages S-86, S-88 and S-89 of this prospectus supplement, respectively.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® MSCI Emerging Markets ETF

Table of Contents

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® U.S. Real Estate ETF

The shares of the iShares® U.S. Real Estate ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the Dow Jones U.S. Real Estate Index℠ (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "IYR".
- The ETF's SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF's inception date was June 12, 2000.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 50,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is entitled to receive a management fee from the ETF corresponding to the ETF's allocable portion of an aggregate management fee based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other iShares® funds (the "funds") as follows: 0.48% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the combined funds less than or equal to $10.0 billion; plus 0.43% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the combined funds over $10.0 billion, up to and including $20.0 billion; plus 0.38% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the combined funds in excess of $20.0 billion, up to and including $30.0 billion; plus 0.34% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the combined funds in excess of $30.0 billion, up to and including $40.0 billion; plus 0.33% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the combined funds in excess of $40.0 billion, up to and including $50.0 billion; plus 0.31% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the combined funds in excess of $50.0 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the expense ratio of the ETF was 0.43%.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N-CSR for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/IYR.htm?fundSearch=true&qt=IYR. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index may be changed at any time, without the approval of BFA's shareholders.

The following tables display the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and ETF sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or ETFs with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF's website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

iShares® U.S. Real Estate ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

ETF Stock Issuer	Percentage (%)
AMERICAN TOWER REIT CORP	6.81%
SIMON PROPERTY GROUP REIT INC	5.57%
CROWN CASTLE INTERNATIONAL REIT CO	4.36%
PROLOGIS REIT INC	4.09%
PUBLIC STORAGE REIT	2.99%
EQUINIX REIT INC	2.95%
WELLTOWER INC	2.49%
AVALONBAY COMMUNITIES REIT INC	2.44%
EQUITY RESIDENTIAL REIT	2.40%
DIGITAL REALTY TRUST REIT INC TRUS	2.20%
Total	36.30%

iShares® U.S. Real Estate ETF by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
SPECIALIZED REITS	30.66%
RETAIL REITS	13.72%
RESIDENTIAL REITS	13.47%
OFFICE REITS	9.72%
HEALTH CARE REITS	9.29%
HOTEL & RESORT REITS	4.71%
MORTGAGE REITS	4.78%
DIVERSIFIED REITS	3.85%
INDUSTRIAL REITS	5.78%
REAL ESTATE SERVICES	2.11%
RESEARCH & CONSULTING SERVICES	1.25%
REAL ESTATE DEVELOPMENT	0.41%
CASH AND/OR DERIVATIVES	0.23%
Total	99.98%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

Representative Sampling

The ETF uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to attempt to track the performance of the index before fees and expenses. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have aggregate investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index. The ETF may or may not hold all of the securities that are included in the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the securities of the index and in depositary receipts representing securities thereof. The ETF may invest the remainder of its assets in securities not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. The ETF may also invest its other assets in certain futures, options and swaps contracts, as well as cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates.

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and of the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities and other instruments held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences, transaction costs, the ETF holding uninvested cash, differences in the timing of the accrual of dividends or interest, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the costs of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time,

Table of Contents

the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, 1.46%; 3 years, 5.35%; 5 years, 7.49%; 10 years, 10.81%; since inception, 9.34%; index: 1 year, 1.74%; 3 years, 5.78%; 5 years, 7.96%; 10 years, 11.28%; since ETF inception, 9.81%.

Industry Concentration Policy

The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated in that industry or group of industries.

The Index

The index is a float-adjusted market capitalization total return index that is calculated, published and disseminated by the index sponsor, S&P Dow Jones Indices ("Dow Jones"). It is a subset of the Dow Jones U.S. Index, and is designed to represent real estate investment trusts ("REITs") and other companies that invest directly or indirectly in real estate through development, management or ownership, including property agencies. Stocks are selected for the index if they are contained in the index universe and if, based on their revenues, they have been classified into the Real Estate Supersector (8600) as defined by the proprietary classification system used by Dow Jones. Because the index is comprised primarily of REITs, the prices of the component stocks reflect changes in lease rates, vacancies, property development and transactions. The index is calculated in U.S. dollars on a total return (gross) basis. As of October 31, 2018, the index had 117 constituents.

Current Composition of the Index

As of October 31, 2018, the top ten constituents of the index and their relative weights in the index were as follows: American Tower Corp. A (6.78%), Simon Property Group A (5.61%), Crown Castle Intl Corp. (4.46%), ProLogis Inc. (4.01%), Public Storage (3.04%), Equinix Inc. (2.97%), Welltower Inc. (2.43%), AvalonBay Communities Inc. (2.39%), Equity Residential (2.36%) and Digital Realty Trust Inc. (2.10%).

Calculation and Dissemination

The closing values of the index are calculated on a 24-hour day that ends at 5:30 p.m. New York time and, following the determination of the previous day's closing price, the index values for the current day are updated and disseminated on a real-time basis beginning at 5:30 p.m. whenever any of the exchanges represented in the index are open.

If trading in a stock is suspended while its market is open, the last traded price for that stock is used for all subsequent index computations until trading resumes. If trading is suspended before the opening, the stock's adjusted closing price from the previous day is used to calculate the index. Until a particular stock opens, its adjusted closing price from the previous day is used in the index computation.

If a market is closed due to an exchange holiday, the previous adjusted closing price for each of its index underlying assets, coupled with the most-recent intraday currency bid price, is used to determine the index's current U.S. dollar value.

To be included in the index, a stock must be part of the index universe, defined as all stocks traded on major U.S. stock exchanges minus any non-common issues and illiquid stocks. Index candidates must be common shares or other securities that have the characteristics of common equities. All classes of common shares, both fully and partially paid, are eligible. Fixed-dividend shares and securities such as convertible notes, warrants, rights, mutual funds, unit investment trusts, closed-end fund shares, shares in limited partnerships and shares in business development companies ("BDCs") are not eligible. Temporary issues arising from corporate actions, such as "when-issued shares," are considered on a case-by-case basis when necessary to maintain continuity in a company's index membership. REITs, listed property trusts, and similar real-property-owning pass-through structures taxed as REITs by their domiciles also are eligible.

Each stock must also meet two separate liquidity criteria to be considered eligible for inclusion in the index. Stocks must have a 12-month median value traded ratio (MVTR) of at least 20% to be eligible, or at least 14% for current constituents to remain eligible. The MVTR for a stock is calculated by taking the median daily value traded amount for each of the 12 months preceding the rebalancing reference date, multiplying the amount by the number of days that the

Table of Contents

stock traded during that month, and then dividing the result by its end-of-month float-adjusted market capitalization. The sum of the 12 monthly values is the MVTR for such stock. If a stock has traded for less than 12 months, the average of the available monthly values is taken and multiplied by 12 to obtain the MVTR. In addition, stock must have a 6-month median daily traded value (MDVT) over the 6 months prior to the rebalancing reference date of at least $250,000 to be eligible, or at least $175,000 for current constituents to remain eligible. If a stock has traded for less than 6 months, the MDVT amount for as long as the stock has been trading is used.

After determination of the index universe, the index universe is then sorted by float-adjusted market capitalization and stocks in the top 95% of the index universe are categorized into 10 Industries, 19 Supersectors, 41 Sectors and 114 Subsectors as defined by a proprietary classification system used by Dow Jones. Segments are designed to capture the risk characteristics of a specific market by grouping together constituents that respond in similar ways to economic, political and environmental factors.

The index level is calculated using a fraction, the numerator of which is the price of each stock in the index multiplied by the number of shares used in the index calculation (total shares outstanding times the IWF), and summed across all the stocks in the index. The denominator is the index divisor.

The Index Divisor

To assure that the index's value, or level, does not change when stocks are added or deleted, the divisor is adjusted to offset the change in market value of the index. Thus, the divisor plays a critical role in the index's ability to provide a continuous measure of market valuation when faced with changes to the stocks included in the index. In a similar manner, some corporate actions that cause changes in the market value of the stocks in an index should not be reflected in the index level. Adjustments are made to the divisor to eliminate the impact of these corporate actions. Any change to the stocks in the index that alters the total market value of the index while holding stock prices constant will require a divisor adjustment.

Divisor adjustments are made "after the close" meaning that after the close of trading the closing prices are used to calculate the new divisor based on whatever changes are being made. It is, then, possible to provide two complete descriptions of the index – one as it existed at the close of trading and one as it will exist at the next opening of trading. If the same stock prices are used to calculate the index level for these two descriptions, the index levels are the same. With prices constant, any change that changes the total market value included in the index will require a divisor change. For cataloging changes, it is useful to separate changes caused by the management of the index from those stemming from corporate actions of the constituent companies. Among those changes driven by index management are adding or deleting companies, adjusting share counts and changes to IWFs and other factors affecting share counts or stock prices.

When a company is added to or deleted from the index, the net change in the market value of the index is calculated and this is used to calculate the new divisor. The market values of stocks being added or deleted are based on the prices, shares outstanding, IWFs and any other share count adjustments.

There are a large range of different corporate actions ranging from routine share issuances or buy backs to unusual events like spin-offs or mergers. These are listed on the table below with a description of the adjustments, if any.

Table of Contents

Corporate Action	Effects	Divisor Adjustments?
Company added/deleted	Net change in market value determines the divisor adjustment.	Yes
Change in shares outstanding	Any combination of secondary issuance, share repurchase or buy back – share counts revised to reflect change.	Yes
Stock split	Share count revised to reflect new count. Divisor adjustment is not required since the share count and price changes are offsetting.	No
Spin-off	If the spun-off company is not being added to the index, the divisor adjustment reflects the decline in index market value (i.e., the value of the spun-off unit).	Yes
Spin-off	Spun-off company added to the index, no company removed from the index.	No
Spin-off	Spun-off company added to the index, another company removed to keep number of names fixed. Divisor adjustment reflects deletion.	Yes
Change in IWF	Increasing (decreasing) the IWF increases (decreases) the total market value of the index. The divisor change reflects the change in market value caused by the change to an IWF.	Yes
Special Dividend	When a company pays a special dividend the share price is assumed to drop by the amount of the dividend; the divisor adjustment reflects this drop in index market value.	Yes
Rights offering	Each shareholder receives the right to buy a proportional number of additional shares at a set (often discounted) price. The calculation assumes that the offering is fully subscribed. Divisor adjustment reflects increase in market cap measured as the shares issued multiplied by the price paid.	Yes

Annual Reconstitution, Quarterly Reviews and Index Maintenance

The index is reconstituted annually in September. The process includes the review of all stocks in their respective markets to determine eligibility according to the existing criteria. The reference date for data used in the annual reconstitution is the last business day in July. In addition, the investable weight factor (“IWF”), for each stock is reviewed

Table of Contents

and updated as needed. Changes are implemented at the opening of trading on the Monday following the third Friday of September. Changes in IWFs resulting from corporate actions which exceed 5% are implemented as soon as possible; changes of less than 5% are implemented at the next annual review.

Generally, no companies are added to an index between annual reconstitutions except for initial public offerings and spinoffs. Any exceptions to this rule are announced with ample lead time. Any stocks considered for addition at the quarterly rebalance must have a float market cap larger than the smallest stock included in the index at the time of the previous reconstitution.

Changes in shares outstanding of less than 5% are accumulated and made quarterly in March, June, September and December. These changes, as well as any weight adjustments, are implemented at the opening of trading on the Monday following the third Friday of the quarterly update month.

The indices are also reviewed on an ongoing basis to account for corporate actions such as mergers, acquisitions, takeovers, delistings or bankruptcies. Changes to index composition and related weight adjustments are made as soon as they are effective. Corporate actions (such as stock splits, stock dividends, spin-offs and rights offerings) are applied after the close of trading on the day prior to the ex-date. Share changes resulting from exchange offers are applied on the ex-date.

Initial public offerings and new listings on eligible exchanges are added to at the next quarterly update if the new listing occurs on or before the final trading day of February, May, August or November and meets all other eligibility requirements. Spinoffs of index constituents are added to the index at a zero price at the market close on the day before the ex-date (with no divisor adjustment). If a spun-off company is determined not to be eligible to remain in the index, it will be removed after at least one day of regular way trading (with a divisor adjustment). Spinoffs are assigned the same size and style as the parent company at the time of the action. All spinoff sizes are evaluated at the next quarterly update.

Whenever possible, Dow Jones will announce changes in the index at least two business days prior to their implementation date.

If an index constituent is suspended by its primary market, it may be removed from the index at the discretion of the Index Committee. When this occurs, S&P Dow Jones Indices will use the best-available alternate pricing source to determine the value at which the company should be removed from the index.

Float Adjustment

A company's outstanding shares are adjusted to exclude shares held by certain shareholders concerned with the control of a company, a group that generally includes the following: officers and directors, private equity, venture capital, special equity firms, publicly traded companies that hold shares in another company, strategic partners, holders of restricted shares, employee stock ownership plans, employee and family trusts, foundations associated with the company, holders of unlisted share classes of stock, government entities at all levels (except government retirement or pension funds) and any individual person who controls a 5% or greater stake in a company as reported in regulatory filings. However, holdings by depositary banks, mutual funds, exchange-traded fund providers, asset managers, pension plans and other institutional investors, even if greater than 5% of the outstanding shares of a company, are generally included in the float-adjusted share count to be used in the index calculations, as they are deemed to be acting as investors and not involved with control of a company.

The index adjustment to reflect control holders is accomplished by calculating the IWF for each stock that is part of the numerator of the float-adjusted index fraction described above:

IWF = (available float shares)/(total shares outstanding)

where available float shares are defined as total shares outstanding less shares held by control holders. In most cases, IWFs are reported to the nearest one percentage point.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

Table of Contents

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® U.S. Real Estate ETF

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® U.S. Preferred Stock ETF

The shares of the iShares® U.S. Preferred Stock ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the S&P U.S. Preferred Stock Index™ (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NASDAQ under the ticker symbol "PFF".
- The iShares® Trust's SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF's inception date was March 26, 2007.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 50,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is entitled to receive a management fee from the ETF based on the ETF's allocable portion of an aggregate management fee based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other specified iShares® funds (the "funds") as follows: 0.48% per annum of the average daily net assets of the funds less than or equal to $46.0 billion, plus 0.456% per annum of the average daily net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $46.0 billion, up to and including $81.0 billion, plus 0.4332% per annum of the average daily net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $81.0 billion, up to and including $111.0 billion, plus 0.4116% per annum of the average daily net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $111.0 billion, up to and including $141.0 billion, plus 0.391% per annum of the average daily net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $141.0 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the average daily expense ratio of the ETF was 0.46% per annum.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N-CSR for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/PFF.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective

The ETF seeks to achieve a return that corresponds generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index may be changed without shareholder approval. The following table displays the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and ETF sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or ETFs with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

iShares® U.S. Preferred Stock ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

ETF Stock Issuer	Percentage (%)
BECTON DICKINSON AND COMPANY	2.19%
GMAC CAPITAL TRUST I	2.06%
BARCLAYS BANK PLC	1.95%
CITIGROUP CAPITAL XIII	1.77%
BLK CSH FND TREASURY SL AGENCY	1.37%
SEMPRA ENERGY	1.29%
WELLS FARGO DEPOSITARY SHARES CO	1.23%
CITIGROUP DEPOSITORY INC	1.20%
PNC FINANCIAL SERVICES GROUP INC	1.16%
HSBC HOLDINGS PLC	1.08%
Total	15.30%

iShares® U.S. Preferred Stock ETF Weighting by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
Banks	36.16%
Diversified Financials	24.60%
Real Estate	12.63%
Insurance	9.92%
Telecommunications	0.82%
Utilities	3.63%
Energy	3.24%
Food Bevg Tobacco	1.82%
Capital Goods	2.05%
Commercial & Professional Services	0.31%
Transportation	0.77%
Tech Hardware & Equip	0.29%
Health Care Equipment & Services	2.19%
Media & Entertainment	0.14%
Cash and/or Derivatives	1.43%
Total	100.00%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

iShares® U.S. Preferred Stock ETF Weighting by Country as of November 12, 2018*

Country	Percentage (%)
United States	90.15%
United Kingdom	4.15%
Netherlands	2.59%
Cash and/or Derivatives	1.43%
Other	1.69%
Total	100.01%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding and the holding of cash and/or derivatives.

Representative Sampling

BFA uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to manage the ETF. This strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively has an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index.

The ETF generally will invest at least 90% of its assets in the component securities of the index and may invest up to 10% of its assets in certain futures, options and swap contracts, cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates, as well as in securities not included in the index, but which BFA believes will

Table of Contents

help the ETF track the index. From time to time when conditions warrant, however, the ETF may invest at least 80% of its assets in the component securities of the index and may invest up to 20% of its assets in certain futures, options and swap contracts, cash and cash equivalents, including shares of BlackRock Cash Funds, as well as in securities not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. Also, the ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities or other instruments held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences, transaction costs, the ETF's holding of uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of dividends or interest, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the need to meet with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -0.75%; 3 years, 2.93%; 5 years, 5.03%; 10 years, 9.12%; since inception, 3.90%; index: 1 year, -0.06%; 3 years, 3.71%; 5 years, 5.72%; 10 years, 10.50%; since ETF inception, 4.41%.

Industry Concentration Policy

The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated.

The S&P U.S. Preferred Stock Index

The S&P U.S. Preferred Stock Index (Bloomberg ticker SPPREF) is managed by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC ("S&P") and is an index that represents the U.S. preferred stock market and is calculated with a float-adjusted market capitalization scheme, subject to a single issuer weight cap of 10%. Preferred stocks are a class of capital stock that pays dividends at a specified rate and has a preference over common stock in the payment of dividends and the liquidation of assets. In a float-adjusted market capitalization weighted index, constituents are weighted based on market capitalization, but the share counts used in calculating the index reflect only those shares available to investors rather than all of a company's outstanding shares. Float adjustment excludes shares that are closely held by control groups, other publicly traded companies or government agencies. The S&P U.S. Preferred Stock Index is calculated, maintained and published by S&P and is part of the S&P Dow Jones Indices family of indices. Additional information is available on the following websites: us.spindices.com/indices/ fixed-income/sp-us-preferred-stock-index and spdji.com/. We are not incorporating by reference the websites or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Eligibility for Inclusion in the Index

Selection for the index is comprised of U.S. traded preferred stocks that meet criteria relating to minimum size, liquidity, exchange listing and time to maturity. Preferred stocks trading on the NYSE (including NYSE Arca and NYSE Amex), the NASDAQ Global Select Market, the NASDAQ Select Market and the NASDAQ Capital Market are eligible to be included in the index. Over-the-counter bulletin board and unregistered securities are excluded. Preferred stocks issued by a company to meet its capital or financing requirements are eligible. These include floating, variable and fixed-rate preferreds, cumulative and non-cumulative preferreds, preferred stocks with a callable or conversion feature and trust preferreds. Some trust preferreds issued by a company to meet its capital requirements carry a brand name or moniker, which are included. However, structured products and brand name products issued by financial institutions that are packaged securities linked to indices, baskets of stocks or another company's stock are excluded. Special ventures such as toll roads or dam operators may issue preferred-like securities, which are also excluded.

The following preferred stocks are eligible to be in the index: preferred stocks that do not have a mandatory conversion or scheduled maturity within the next 12 months; preferred stocks with market capitalization of greater than or equal to $100 million; preferred stocks that have traded more than 250,000 shares per month in each of the previous six months as of the rebalancing reference date (as defined below) (issues with fewer than six months of trading history will

Table of Contents

be evaluated over the available period and may be included should size and available trading history infer the issue will satisfy this requirement). Preferred stocks for which S&P cannot determine an indicated dividend yield are not eligible. There is no limit to the number of preferred stocks issued by a single company, however, a maximum weight of 10% is set per issuer. All eligible securities for an issuer are included in the index, with the aggregate weight capped on a pro rata basis to a maximum of 10% of the index market capitalization.

Current components meeting the following criteria will continue to be eligible for inclusion in the index: current components with market capitalization of greater than or equal to $75 million as of the rebalancing reference date (as defined below); current components that have traded more than 125,000 shares per month over each of the previous six months as of the rebalancing reference date (however, no current component is removed from the index for violating this volume requirement during the first 12 months following its addition to the index).

Preferred stocks for which S&P cannot determine an indicated dividend yield as of the rebalancing reference date are not eligible for inclusion in the index.

Current Composition of the Index

As of November 12, 2018, the index held stocks of companies in the following sub-industries (with their corresponding weights in the fund): financials (72.13%), real estate (11.49%), utilities (4.39%), communication services (0.91%), energy (3.56%), health care (2.21%), industrials (3.07%), consumer staples (1.80%), information technology (0.28%) and consumer discretionary (0.15%).

As of November 12, 2018, the top ten constituents of the index and their relative weights in the index were as follows: Becton Dickinson & Co. Deposit Shs Repr 1/20th Cum Conv Pfd Registered Shs Series A (2.21%), GMAC CAP TR I GTD TR PFD-2 (2.10%), Barclays Bank Plc Adr Pfd Sr 5 (2.00%), Citigroup Cap XIII 7.875% TruPS (1.77%), Sempra Energy 6 % Cum Conv Red Pfd Registered Shs 2017-15.01.21 Series A (1.31%), Wells Fargo & Co Dep Shs Ser 8% Ser 'J' (1.31%), JP Morgan Chase & Co-Depositary Shs Repr 1/400th Non-Cum Red Pfd Registered Shs Series -DD (1.26%), Citigroup Inc Deposit Shs Repr 1/1000th 6 7/8 % Non-Cum Perp Pfd Shs Series K (1.19%), PNC Financial Services Group Inc DR (1.17%) and Hsbc Hldgs Plc Adr A 1/40Pf A (1.11%).

As of November 12, 2018, the countries of domicile included in the index and their relative weights were: United States (89.73%), United Kingdom (4.04%), Netherlands (2.62%), Germany (1.81%), China (0.61%), Greece (0.46%), Bermuda (0.37%), Norway (0.19%) and Canada (0.18%).

Calculation of the Total Return of the Index

The index uses a float-adjusted market capitalization weighting subject to a single issuer weight cap of 10%, meaning that the share counts used in calculating the index reflect only those shares available to investors rather than all of a company's outstanding shares. The constituents are weighted by float-adjusted market capitalization and at each rebalancing, all eligible securities for an issuer are included in the index, with the issuer's aggregate weight capped on a pro rata basis to a maximum of 10% of the index market capitalization.

The ETF tracks the performance of the "total return" version of the index. The total return calculation begins with the price return of the index. The price return index value is derived from dividing the index market value by the index divisor.

The index market value is the sum of the product of the number of then-outstanding index shares for each index constituent multiplied by the price of such constituent's shares. The number of index shares for each constituent is equal to the float-adjusted outstanding shares number for such constituent. In calculating the float adjustment, S&P seeks to exclude shares held by certain shareholders concerned with the control of a company, a group that generally includes the following: officers and directors and related individuals whose holdings are publicly disclosed, private equity, venture capital, special equity firms, publicly traded companies that hold shares for control in another company, strategic partners, holders of restricted shares, employee stock ownership plans, employee and family trusts, foundations associated with the company, holders of unlisted share classes of stock, government entities at all levels (except government retirement or pension funds) and any individual person listed as a 5% or greater stakeholder in a company as reported in regulatory filings (collectively, "control holders"). To this end, S&P excludes all share-holdings (other than depositary banks, pension funds, mutual funds, exchange traded fund providers, 401(k) plans of the company, government retirement and pension funds, investment funds of insurance companies, asset managers and investment funds, independent foundations, savings plans and investment plans) with a position greater than 5% of the outstanding shares of a company from the float-adjusted share count to be used in index calculations.

Table of Contents

The exclusion is accomplished by calculating an investable weight factor (IWF) for each stock that is part of the numerator of the float-adjusted index fraction described above:

IWF = (available float shares)/(total shares outstanding)

where available float shares is defined as total shares outstanding less shares held by control holders. For companies with multiple share class lines, a separate IWF is calculated for each share class line.

For issuers where the combined weight of all issues included in the index is greater than 10% of the index, such issuer's combined initial weight in the index (and therefore float-adjusted outstanding shares) will be adjusted to equal 10% of the index. All other issuer weights (and therefore float-adjusted outstanding shares) are increased proportionally.

The initial divisor was set to have a base index value of 1,000 on September 19, 2003 and has been adjusted from time to time, as described below, to minimize distortions introduced by the addition and removal of constituents.

In order to maintain index series continuity, it is also necessary to adjust the divisor at each rebalancing. Therefore, the divisor (after rebalancing) equals the index market value (after rebalancing) divided by the index value before rebalancing. The divisor keeps the index comparable over time and is one manipulation point for adjustments to the index, which we refer to as maintenance of the index.

Once the price return index has been calculated, the total return index is calculated. First, the total daily dividend for each stock in the index is calculated by multiplying the per share dividend by the number of shares included in the index. Dividends are reinvested in the index after the close on the ex-date for such dividend. Then the index dividend is calculated by aggregating the total daily dividends for each of the index stocks (which may be zero for some stocks) and dividing by the divisor for that day. Next, the daily total return of the index is calculated as a fraction minus 1, the numerator of which is the sum of the index level plus the index dividend and the denominator of which is the index level on the previous day. Finally, the total return index for that day is calculated as the product of the value of the total return index on the previous day times the sum of 1 plus the index daily total return for that day.

Maintenance of the Index

The composition of the index is reviewed quarterly on each rebalancing date, which is the third Friday in January, April, July and October. Rebalancing occurs after the close of the rebalancing date. The reference date for additions and deletions is five business days prior to the first Friday of the rebalancing month (the rebalancing reference date). Additions occur only at the quarterly rebalancing. There are no intra-quarter additions. A constituent is deleted intra-quarter if it is called or undergoes mandatory conversion. Subject to market conditions, S&P will provide five days' advance notice of a deletion. Should an existing constituent delist during the five-day notification period, it is removed at the closing price from its last day of trading. The quarterly rebalancing also results in deletions, if one or more constituents no longer meets continued eligibility requirements.

Adjustments are made to the index in the event of certain corporate actions relating to the stocks included in the index, such as rights offerings, stock splits and delisting from the primary exchange, as specified below.

Table of Contents

The table below summarizes the types of index maintenance adjustments:

Type of Corporate Action	Adjustment Factor	Divisor Adjustment Required
Shares called for cash or par value	If the issuer calls a constituent, it is removed from the index with a minimum of two days' notice.	Yes
Shares called for conversion or automatically converted	The constituent is removed from the index at the time of the conversion with a minimum of two days' notice.	Yes
Delisting from primary exchange	The constituent is removed from the index with a minimum of two days' notice. If no primary exchange price is available, it is removed at the OTC or pink sheet price. If no OTC or pink sheet price is available, the security can be removed at a zero price at the discretion of the S&P Index Committee.	Yes
Special cash distribution	The price of the stock making the special payment is reduced by the per share special payment.	Yes
Rights offering on preferred share class	The price is adjusted to the Price of Parent shares minus (Price of Rights shares/Rights Ratio).	Yes
Preferred Stock Split	Index Shares are multiplied by and the price is divided by the split factor.	No
Issuance of additional shares for the preferred share class in the index	None. Shares are revised semiannually.	No
Partial call for cash or par value	On the redemption date, the constituent shares outstanding are reduced by the number of shares called and the constituent is adjusted to the call prices plus accrued interest.	Yes

Recalculation Policy

S&P reserves the right to recalculate and republish the index at its discretion in the event one of the following issues has occurred: (1) incorrect or revised closing price of one or more constituent securities; (2) missed corporate event; (3) incorrect application of corporate action or index methodology; (4) late announcement of a corporate event; or (5) incorrect calculation or data entry error. The decision to recalculate the index is made at the discretion of the index manager and/or index committee, as further discussed below. The potential market impact or disruption resulting from the potential recalculation is considered when making any such decision. In the event of an incorrect closing price, a missed corporate event or a misapplied corporate action, a late announcement of a corporate event, or an incorrect calculation or data entry error that is discovered within two trading days of its occurrence, the index manager may, at his or her discretion, recalculate the index without involving the index committee. In the event any such event is discovered beyond the two trading day period, the index committee shall decide whether the index should be recalculated. In the event of an incorrect application of the methodology that results in the incorrect composition and/or weighting of index constituents, the index committee shall determine whether or not to recalculate the index following specified guidelines. In the event that the index is recalculated, it shall be done within a reasonable timeframe following the detection and review of the issue.

Calculations and Pricing Disruptions

Table of Contents

Closing levels for the index are calculated by S&P based on the closing price of the individual constituents of the index as set by their primary exchange. Closing prices are received by S&P from one of its third party vendors and verified by comparing them with prices from an alternative vendor. The vendors receive the closing price from the primary exchanges. Real-time intraday prices are calculated similarly without a second verification. Prices used for the calculation of real time index values are based on the "Consolidated Tape". The Consolidated Tape is an aggregation of trades for each constituent over all regional exchanges and trading venues and includes the primary exchange. If there is a failure or interruption on one or more exchanges, real-time calculations will continue as long as the "Consolidated Tape" is operational.

If an interruption is not resolved prior to the market close, official closing prices will be determined by following the hierarchy set out in NYSE Rule 123C. A notice is published on the S&P website at spdji.com indicating any changes to the prices used in index calculations. In extreme circumstances, S&P may decide to delay index adjustments or not publish the index. Real-time indices are not restated.

Unscheduled Exchange Closures

An unexpected market/exchange closure occurs when a market/exchange fully or partially fails to open or trading is temporarily halted. This can apply to a single exchange or to a market as a whole, when all of the primary exchanges are closed and/or not trading. Unexpected market/exchange closures are usually due to unforeseen circumstances, such as natural disasters, inclement weather, outages, or other events.

To a large degree, S&P is dependent on the exchanges to provide guidance in the event of an unexpected exchange closure. S&P's decision making is dependent on exchange guidance regarding pricing and mandatory corporate actions.

NYSE Rule 123C provides closing contingency procedures for determining an official closing price for listed securities if the exchange is unable to conduct a closing transaction in one or more securities due to a system or technical issue.

3:00 PM ET is the deadline for an exchange to determine its plan of action regarding an outage scenario. As such, S&P also uses 3:00 PM ET as the cutoff.

If all major exchanges fail to open or unexpectedly halt trading intraday due to unforeseen circumstances, S&P will take the following actions:

Market Disruption Prior to Open of Trading:

(i) If all exchanges indicate that trading will not open for a given day, S&P will treat the day as an unscheduled market holiday. The decision will be communicated to clients as soon as possible through the normal channels. Indices containing multiple markets will be calculated as normal, provided that at least one market is open that day. Indices which only contain closed markets will not be calculated.

(ii) If exchanges indicate that trading, although delayed, will open for a given day, S&P will begin index calculation when the exchanges open.

Market Disruption Intraday:

(i) If exchanges indicate that trading will not resume for a given day, the index level will be calculated using prices determined by the exchanges based on NYSE Rule 123C. Intraday index values will continue to use the last traded composite price until the primary exchange publishes official closing prices.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes.

Table of Contents

The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® U.S. Preferred Stock ETF

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

The iShares® Nasdaq Biotechnology ETF

The shares of the iShares® Nasdaq Biotechnology ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares, Inc. (the "company"). The company was organized as a Maryland corporation on September 1, 1994 and is authorized to have multiple series or portfolios, of which the ETF is one.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the NASDAQ Biotechnology Index (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock Fund Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NASDAQ under the ticker symbol "IBB".
- The company's SEC CIK Number is 0000930667.
- The ETF's inception date was February 5, 2001.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 50,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is entitled to receive a management fee from the fund corresponding to the ETF's allocable portion of an aggregate management fee based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other specified iShares® funds (the "funds") as follows: 0.48% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds less than or equal to $121 billion, plus 0.456% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $121 billion, up to and including $181 billion, plus 0.4332% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $181 billion, up to and including $231 billion, plus 0.4116% per annum of the aggregate net assets of the funds on amounts in excess of $231 billion, up to and including $281 billion, plus 0.3910% per annum of the aggregate net assets in excess of $281 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the expense ratio of the ETF was 0.47% per annum.

For additional information regarding the company or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N-CSR for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2018) and other information the company files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/IBB.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index may be changed without the approval of BFA's shareholders.

The following table displays the top holdings and weightings by industry sector of the ETF. (Sector designations are determined by the ETF sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and ETF sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices or ETFs with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices or ETFs.) We obtained the information in the tables below from the ETF website without independent verification.

Table of Contents

iShares® Nasdaq Biotechnology ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

ETF Stock Issuer	Percentage (%)
AMGEN INC	8.96%
GILEAD SCIENCES INC	8.70%
BIOGEN INC	8.43%
CELGENE CORP	6.73%
ILLUMINA INC	6.15%
VERTEX PHARMACEUTICALS INC	4.38%
REGENERON PHARMACEUTICALS INC	3.98%
ALEXION PHARMACEUTICALS INC	3.73%
MYLAN NV	2.61%
BIOMARIN PHARMACEUTICAL INC	2.33%
Total	56.00%

iShares® Nasdaq Biotechnology ETF Weighting by Sector as of November 12, 2018*

Sector	Percentage (%)
Biotechnology	79.48%
Pharmaceuticals	10.52%
Life Sciences Tools & Services	9.36%
Health Care Technology	0.02%
Health Care Equipment	0.40%
Health Care Supplies	0.10%
Health Care Distributors	0.09%
Cash and/or Derivatives	0.03%
Total	100.00%

* Percentages may not sum to 100% due to rounding.

Representative Sampling

BFA uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to manage the ETF. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the securities of the index and in depositary receipts representing securities of the index. The ETF may invest the remainder of its assets in other securities, including securities not in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. The ETF may also invest its other assets in futures contracts, options on futures contracts, other types of options and swaps related to the index, as well as cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates. Also, the ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities held in the ETF’s portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences (including, as applicable, differences between a security’s price at the local market close and the ETF’s value of a security at the time of calculation of the ETF’s net asset value), differences in transaction costs, the ETF holding uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of or the valuation of dividends or interest, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the costs to the ETF of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF’s tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF’s use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

Table of Contents

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -0.30%; 3 years, -1.16%; 5 years, 8.95%; 10 years, 16.15%; since inception, 6.79%; index: 1 year, 0.05%; 3 years, -0.89%; 5 years, 9.25%; 10 years, 16.47%; since ETF inception, 7.14%.

Industry Concentration Policy

The ETF will concentrate its investments (i.e., hold 25% or more of its total assets) in a particular industry or group of industries to approximately the same extent that the index is concentrated.

The NASDAQ Biotechnology Index

The NASDAQ Biotechnology Index® (the "index") is designed to track the performance of a set of securities listed on The NASDAQ Stock Market that are classified as either biotechnology or pharmaceutical according to the Industry Classification Benchmark ("ICB"). The index is calculated using a modified market capitalization-weighted methodology. The index is calculated, maintained and published by The NASDAQ OMX Group, Inc. ("index sponsor"). The base date for the index is November 1, 1993, with a base value of 200.00, as adjusted. We have derived all information contained in this document regarding the index from publicly available information. Additional information about the index is available on the following website: indexes.nasdaqomx.com/Index/Overview/NBI. We are not incorporating by reference the website or any material it includes in this prospectus supplement.

As of November 12, 2018, 85.54% of the securities included in the index were classified into the Biotechnology sector, 14.05% of the securities included in the index were classified into the Pharmaceuticals sector and 0.41% of the securities included in the index were classified into the Medical Equipment sector. (Sector designations are determined by the index sponsor using criteria it has selected or developed. Index sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed in only one sector and the basis on which that sector is selected may also differ. As a result, sector comparisons between indices with different index sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices.)

The top ten constituent stocks of the index as of November 12, 2018, by weight, are: Amgen Inc. (8.96%), Gilead Sciences, Inc. (8.70%), Biogen Inc. (8.43%), Celgene Corp. (6.73%), Illumina, Inc. (6.15%), Vertex Pharmaceuticals Inc. (4.38%), Regeneron Pharmaceuticals Inc. (3.98%), Alexion Pharmaceuticals Inc. (3.73%), Mylan NV Ordinary Shares (2.61%) and BioMarin Pharmaceutical Inc. (2.33%).

Construction of the NASDAQ Biotechnology Index

The index is a modified market capitalization-weighted index. Index composition is reviewed on an annual basis in December. First, the index sponsor determines which stocks meet the applicable eligibility criteria. The eligibility criteria is applied using market data through the end of October and is updated for total shares outstanding submitted in publicly filed documents via EDGAR through the end of November to determine security market capitalization.

Eligibility Criteria for Inclusion in the Index

To be eligible for inclusion in the index, a security must meet the following criteria:

- the security's U.S. listing must be exclusively listed on the NASDAQ Global Select Market or the NASDAQ Global Market (unless the stock was dually listed on another U.S. market prior to January 1, 2004 and has continuously maintained such listing);
- the issuer of the security must be classified according to the Industry Classification Benchmark (ICB) as either biotechnology or pharmaceutical;
- the security may not be issued by an issuer currently in bankruptcy proceedings;
- the security must have a market capitalization of at least $200 million. Market capitalization is determined by multiplying a stock's last sale price by its total number of shares outstanding;
- the security must have an average daily trading volume ("ADTV") of at least 100,000 shares;
- the issuer of the security may not have entered into a definitive agreement or other arrangement which would likely result in the security no longer being eligible for inclusion in the index;
- the issuer of the security may not have annual financial statements with an audit opinion that is currently withdrawn. This will be determined based upon a security issuer's public filings with the SEC; and

Table of Contents

- the security must have "seasoned" on NASDAQ, NYSE or NYSE Amex. Generally, a company is considered to be seasoned if it has been listed on a market for at least three full months (excluding the first month of initial listing) as of the last trading day in October.

Index eligibility is limited to specific security types only. The security types eligible for the index include common stocks, ordinary shares, ADRs and shares of beneficial interest or limited partnership interests. For purposes of index eligibility criteria, if the security is a depositary receipt representing a security of a non-U.S. issuer, then references to the "issuer" are references to the issuer of the underlying security.

All securities meeting the above criteria are included in the index. Generally, the list of additions and deletions is publicly announced via a press release in the early part of December. Security additions and deletions are made effective after the close of trading on the third Friday in December.

The final list of constituents included in the index, including any replacements made during the annual review, is made effective after the close of trading on the third Friday in December. Generally, the list of annual additions and deletions as a result of the annual review is publicly announced by the index sponsor via a press release in the early part of December, in conjunction with an announcement on the index sponsor's website.

Calculation of the Total Return of the Index

The ETF tracks the performance of the "total return" version of the index. The index is a modified market capitalization-weighted index. The value of the index equals the index market value divided by the index divisor. The overall index market value is the aggregate of each index security's market value, as may be adjusted for any corporate actions. An index security's market value is determined by multiplying the last sale price by its index share weight, also known as "index shares". In other words, the value of the index is equal to (i) the sum of the products of (a) the index shares of each of the index securities multiplied by (b) each such security's last sale price (adjusted for corporate actions, if any), divided by (ii) the divisor of the index.

In calculating the index, the divisor serves the purpose of scaling the aggregate value of each index share weight multiplied by such stock's last sale price to a lower order of magnitude which is more desirable for index reporting purposes. The index divisor is calculated as the ratio of (i) the start of day market value of the index divided by (ii) the previous day index value.

The total return index reinvests cash dividends on the ex-date. The total return index was synchronized to the value of the price return index at the close on September 24, 2003.

The index is calculated in U.S. dollars during the U.S. market trading day based on the last sale price and are disseminated once per second from 09:30:01 until 17:16:00 ET. The closing value of the index may change up until 17:15:00 ET due to corrections to the last sale price of the index stocks. The official closing value of the index is ordinarily disseminated at 17:16:00 ET.

Index Maintenance

Changes to Index Constituents

Changes to the index constituents may be made during the annual evaluation. In addition, if at any time during the year other than the annual evaluation it is determined that an index security no longer meets the index eligibility criteria, or is otherwise determined to have become ineligible for continued inclusion in the index, the security is removed from the index and will not be replaced.

Ordinarily, a security will be removed from the index at its last sale price. The last sale price refers to the price at which a security last traded during regular market hours as reported on such security's index market, which may be the NASDAQ Official Closing Price (NOCP). The index market is the index eligible stock market for which the security's prices are received and used by the index sponsor for purposes of calculating the index.

If, however, at the time of its removal the security is halted from trading on its primary listing market and an official closing price cannot readily be determined, the index security may, in the index sponsor's discretion, be removed at a price of $0.00000001 ("zero price"). This zero price will be applied to the index security after the close of the market but prior to the time the official closing value of the index is disseminated, which is ordinarily 17:16:00 ET.

Table of Contents

Divisor Adjustments

Ordinarily, whenever there is a change in index shares, a change in an index security or a change to the price of an index security due to certain corporate actions, including spin-offs, rights issuances or special cash dividends, the divisor is adjusted to ensure that there is no discontinuity in the value of the index which might otherwise be caused by any such change. All changes are announced in advance and are reflected in the index prior to market open on the index effective date.

Quarterly Index Rebalancing

On a quarterly basis, the index is rebalanced such that the maximum weight of any index security does not exceed 8% and no more than five securities are at that cap. The excess weight of any capped security is distributed proportionally across the remaining index securities. If after redistribution, any of the five highest ranked index securities are weighted below the 8% cap, these securities are not capped. Next, any remaining index securities in excess of 4% are capped at 4% and the excess weight is redistributed proportionally across the remaining index securities. This process is repeated, if necessary, to derive the final weights.

Finally, to complete the rebalancing process, once the final weighting percentages for each index security have been set, the modified market capitalization weighting methodology is applied to the capitalization of each index security, using the last sale price of the security at the close of trading on the last day in February, May, August and November and after applying quarterly changes to the total shares outstanding. Index shares are then calculated by multiplying the weight of the security derived above by the new market value of the index, and dividing the modified market capitalization for each index security by its corresponding last sale price. Changes to the index shares will be made effective after the close of trading on the third Friday in March, June, September and December.

Corporate Actions and Index Adjustments

Aside from changes resulting from quarterly rebalancing, intra-quarter changes in index shares can also result from a change in an index security's total shares outstanding that is greater than 10.0%. Changes in total shares outstanding are determined by an index stock issuer's public filings with the SEC. Changes in the price and/or index shares driven by corporate events such as stock dividends, stock splits and certain spin-offs and rights issuances are adjusted on the ex-date. If the change in total shares outstanding arising from other corporate actions is greater than or equal to 10.0%, the change is made as soon as practicable. Otherwise, if the change in total shares outstanding is less than 10.0%, then all such changes are accumulated and made effective at one time on a quarterly basis after the close of trading on the third Friday in each of March, June, September and December. The index shares are then adjusted by the same percentage amount by which the total shares outstanding have changed.

Special Cash Dividends. A dividend is considered "special" if the information provided by the listing exchange in their announcement of the ex-date indicates that the dividend is special. Other nomenclature for a special dividend may include, but is not limited to, "extra", "extraordinary", "non-recurring", "one-time" and "unusual". The price of the index stock the index is adjusted for the amount of the special cash dividend.

As discussed above, ordinarily whenever there is a change in index shares, a change in an index security or a change to the price of an index security due to spin-offs, rights issuances or special cash dividends, the divisor is adjusted.

Discretionary Adjustments

In addition to the above, the index sponsor may, from time to time, exercise reasonable discretion as it deems appropriate in order to ensure index integrity.

Market Disruption Events

If trading in an index security is halted on its primary listing market, the most recent last sale price for that security is used for all index computations until trading on such market resumes. Likewise, the most recent last sale price is used if trading in a security is halted on its primary listing market before the market is open.

Corrections and Calculations

The closing value of the index may change up until 17:15:00 ET due to corrections to the last sale price of the index securities. In the event that a change has been made to the index intraday, the index sponsor will make an announcement describing such change. In the event an index calculation has been corrected retroactively, an announcement will be provided.

Table of Contents

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. The daily historical closing prices in the graph below have been adjusted for a 3-for-1 stock split that became effective after the market close on November 30, 2017. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® Nasdaq Biotechnology ETF

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

The SPDR® S&P® Oil & Gas Exploration & Production ETF

The shares of the SPDR® S&P® Oil & Gas Exploration & Production ETF (the "ETF") are issued by the SPDR® Series Trust (the "trust"), a registered investment company.

- The ETF seeks investment results which correspond generally to the total return performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the S&P Oil & Gas Exploration & Production Index (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: SSGA Funds Management, Inc. ("SSGA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "XOP".
- The trust's SEC CIK Number is 0001064642.
- The inception date was June 19, 2006.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 50,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the SPDR® website, without independent verification. SSGA is entitled to receive a management fee from the ETF based on a percentage of the ETF's average daily net assets at an annual rate of 0.35% of the average daily net assets of the ETF. From time to time, SSGA may waive all or a portion of its fee, although it does not currently intend to do so. SSGA pays all expenses of the ETF other than the management fee, brokerage expenses, taxes, interest, fees and expenses of the independent trustees (including any trustee's counsel fees), litigation expenses, acquired fund fees and expenses and other extraordinary expenses. As of September 30, 2018, the gross expense ratio of the ETF was 0.35% per annum.

For additional information regarding the trust or SSGA, please consult the reports (including the Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N−CSR for the fiscal year ended June 30, 2018) and other information the trust files with the SEC. Information provided to or filed with the SEC can be inspected and copied at the public reference facilities maintained by the SEC or through the SEC's website at sec.gov. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the SPDR® website at spdrs.com/product/fund.seam?ticker=XOP. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective and Strategy

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the total return performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF uses a representative sampling strategy to try to achieve its investment objective, which means that the ETF is not required to purchase all of the securities represented in the index. Instead, the ETF may purchase a subset of the securities in the index in an effort to hold a portfolio of securities with generally the same risk and return characteristics of the index. Under normal market conditions, the ETF generally invests substantially all, but at least 80%, of its total assets in the securities comprising the index. The ETF will provide shareholders with at least 60 days' notice prior to any change in this 80% investment policy. In addition, the ETF may invest in equity securities not included in the index, cash and cash equivalents or money market instruments, such as repurchase agreements and money market funds (including money market funds advised by SSGA).

In certain situations or market conditions, the ETF may temporarily depart from its normal investment policies and strategies provided that the alternative is consistent with the ETF's investment objective and is in the best interest of the ETF. For example, the ETF may make larger than normal investments in derivatives to maintain exposure to the index if it is unable to invest directly in a component security.

The board may change the ETF's investment strategy, index and other policies without shareholder approval. The board may also change the ETF's investment objective without shareholder approval.

Table of Contents

The ETF's Holdings and Industrial Sector Classifications

The ETF holds stocks of companies in the oil and gas exploration and production segment of the S&P Total Market Index. As of November 12, 2018, the ETF held stocks of companies in the following sub-industries (with their corresponding weights in the ETF): oil & gas exploration & production (79.36%); oil & gas refining & marketing (14.64%) and integrated oil & gas (6.01%).

As of November 12, 2018, the top ten constituents of the ETF and their relative weights in the ETF were as follows: Southwestern Energy Company (2.42%), Cabot Oil & Gas Corporation (2.41%), Range Resources Corporation (2.32%), CNX Resources Corporation (2.12%), Chevron Corporation (2.08%), Murphy Oil Corporation (2.05%), Exxon Mobil Corporation (2.00%), Cimarex Energy Co. (1.95%), Occidental Petroleum Corporation (1.93%) and Concho Resources Inc. (1.91%).

Correlation

Although SSGA seeks to track the performance of the index (i.e., achieve a high degree of correlation with the index), the ETF's return may not match the return of the index. The ETF incurs a number of operating expenses not applicable to the index, and incurs costs in buying and selling securities. In addition, the ETF may not be fully invested at times, generally as a result of cash flows into or out of the ETF or reserves of cash held by the ETF to meet redemptions. SSGA may attempt to replicate the index return by investing in fewer than all of the securities in the index, or in some securities not included in the index, potentially increasing the risk of divergence between the ETF's return and that of the index.

As of October 31, 2018, the SPDR® website gave the following performance figures for the market value return of the ETF's shares (which is based on the midpoint between the highest bid and the lowest offer on the exchange on which the shares of the ETF are listed for trading, as of the time that the ETF's NAV is calculated, and is before tax) and the index return (in each case on an annualized basis):

Period	1 year	3 years	5 years	10 years	Since inception*
ETF's shares	6.01%	0.00%	-11.39%	1.55%	1.38%
Index	6.44%	0.24%	-11.31%	1.67%	1.55%

*June 19, 2006.

Industry Concentration Policy

The ETF's assets will generally be concentrated in an industry or group of industries to the extent that the index concentrates in a particular industry or group of industries. By focusing its investments in a particular industry or sector, financial, economic, business, and other developments affecting issuers in that industry, market, or economic sector will have a greater effect on the ETF than if it had not focused its assets in that industry, market, or economic sector, which may increase the volatility of the ETF.

Share Prices and the Secondary Market

The trading prices of shares of the ETF will fluctuate continuously throughout trading hours based on market supply and demand rather than the ETF's net asset value, which is calculated at the end of each business day. The trading prices of the ETF's shares may differ (and may deviate significantly during periods of market volatility) from the ETF's daily net asset value. The indicative optimized portfolio value ("IOPV") of the shares of the ETF is disseminated every fifteen seconds throughout the trading day by NYSE Arca. The IOPV calculations are based on estimates of the value of the ETF's net asset value per share using market data converted into U.S. dollars at the current currency rates and is based on quotes and closing prices from the securities' local market and may not reflect events that occur subsequent to the local market's close. Premiums and discounts between the IOPV and the market price may occur. This should not be viewed as a "real-time" update of the net asset value per share of the ETF, which is calculated only once a day. In addition, the issuance or redemption of ETF shares to or from certain institutional investors, which are done only in large blocks of at least 50,000, may cause temporary dislocations in the market price of the shares.

The Underlying Index

The S&P Oil & Gas Exploration & Production Select Industry Index (Bloomberg ticker SPSIOPTR) is managed by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC ("S&P") and is a modified equal-weighted index that is designed to measure the performance of stocks in the S&P Total Market Index that both (i) are classified under the Global Industry Classification Standard ("GICS®") in the integrated oil & gas, oil & gas exploration & production and oil & gas refining & marketing sub-industries and (ii) satisfy certain liquidity and market capitalization requirements. The S&P Total

Market Index tracks all

Table of Contents

eligible U.S. common stocks listed on the NYSE, NYSE Arca, NYSE American (formerly NYSE MKT), NASDAQ Global Select Market, NASDAQ Select Market, NASDAQ Capital Market, Bats BZX, Bats BYX, Bats EDGA, Bats EDGX and IEX. The index is one of the 21 sub-industry sector indices S&P maintains that are derived from a portion of the stocks comprising the S&P Total Market Index. An equal-weighted index is one where every stock, or company, has the same weight in the index. As such, the index must be rebalanced from time to time to re-establish the proper weighting.

Eligibility for Inclusion in the Index

Selection for the index is based on a company's GICS® classification, as well as liquidity and market capitalization requirements. In addition, only U.S. companies are eligible for inclusion in the index. GICS® classifications are determined by S&P using criteria it has selected or developed. Index and classification system sponsors may use very different standards for determining sector designations. In addition, many companies operate in a number of sectors, but are listed only in one sector. As a result, sector comparisons between indices with different sponsors may reflect differences in methodology as well as actual differences in the sector composition of the indices.

To qualify for membership in the index, at each quarterly rebalancing a stock must satisfy the following criteria: (i) be a member of the S&P Total Market Index; (ii) be assigned to the integrated oil & gas, oil & gas exploration & production or oil & gas refining and marketing sub-industry; and (iii) meet one of the following float-adjusted market capitalization (FAMC) and float-adjusted liquidity ratio (FALR) requirements: (a) be a current constituent of the index and have a FAMC greater than or equal to $300 million and have a FALR greater than or equal to 50%; (b) have an FAMC greater than or equal to $500 million and a FALR greater than or equal to 90%; or (c) have an FAMC greater than or equal to $400 million and a FALR greater than or equal to 150%. The FALR is defined as the dollar value traded over the previous 12 months divided by the FAMC as of the index's rebalancing reference date.

All stocks in the related GICS® sub-industries satisfying the above requirements are included in the index and the total number of stocks in the index should be at least 35. If there are fewer than 35 stocks in the index, the market capitalization requirements may be relaxed to reach at least 22 stocks.

With respect to liquidity, the length of time to evaluate liquidity is reduced to the available trading period for companies that recently became public or companies that were spun-off from other companies, the stocks of which therefore do not have 12 months of trading history.

Current Composition of the Index

As of November 12, 2018, the index held stocks of companies in the following sub-industries (with their corresponding weights in the ETF): oil & gas exploration & production (79.36%), oil & gas refining & marketing (14.64%) and integrated oil & gas (6.01%).

As of November 12, 2018, the top ten constituents of the index and their relative weights in the index were as follows: Southwestern Energy Company (2.42%), Cabot Oil & Gas Corporation (2.41%), Range Resources Corporation (2.33%), CNX Resources Corporation (2.12%), Chevron Corporation (2.08%), Murphy Oil Corporation (2.05%), Exxon Mobil Corporation (2.00%), Cimarex Energy Co. (1.95%), Occidental Petroleum Corporation (1.93%) and Concho Resources Inc. (1.91%).

Calculation of the Total Return of the Index

The ETF tracks the performance of the "total return" version of the index. The total return calculation begins with the price return of the index. The price return index is calculated as the index market value divided by the divisor. In an equal-weighted index like the index, the market capitalization of each stock used in the calculation of the index market value is redefined so that each stock has an equal weight in the index on each rebalancing date. The adjusted market capitalization for each stock in the index is calculated as the product of the stock price, the number of shares outstanding, the stock's float factor and the adjustment factor.

A stock's float factor refers to the number of shares outstanding that are available to investors. S&P indices exclude shares closely held by control groups from the index calculation because such shares are not available to investors. For each stock, S&P calculates an Investable Weight Factor (IWF) which is the percentage of total shares outstanding that are included in the index calculation.

The adjustment factor for each stock is assigned at each rebalancing date and is calculated by dividing a specific constant set for the purpose of deriving the adjustment factor (often referred to as modified index shares) by the number of stocks in the index multiplied by the float adjusted market value of such stock on such rebalancing date.

Table of Contents

Adjustments are also made to ensure that no stock in the index will have a weight that exceeds the value that can be traded in a single day for a theoretical portfolio of $2 billion. Theoretical portfolio values are reviewed annually and any updates are made at the discretion of the index committee, as defined below. The maximum basket liquidity weight for each stock in the index will be calculated using the ratio of its three-month median daily value traded to the theoretical portfolio value of $2 billion. Each stock's weight in the index is then compared to its maximum basket liquidity weight and is set to the lesser of (1) its maximum basket liquidity weight or (2) its initial equal weight. All excess weight is redistributed across the index to the uncapped stocks. If necessary, a final adjustment is made to ensure that no stock in the index has a weight greater than 4.5%. No further adjustments are made if the latter step would force the weight of those stocks limited to their maximum basket liquidity weight to exceed that weight. If the index contains exactly 22 stocks as of the rebalancing effective date, the index will be equally weighted without basket liquidity constraints.

If a company has more than one share class line in the S&P Total Market Index, such company will be represented once by the designated listing (generally the share class with both (i) the highest one-year trading liquidity as defined by median daily value traded and (ii) the largest FAMC). S&P reviews designated listings on an annual basis and any changes are implemented after the close of the third Friday in September. The last trading day in July is used as the reference date for the liquidity and market capitalization data in such determination. Once a listed share class line is added to the index, it may be retained in the index even though it may appear to violate certain constituent addition criteria. For companies that issue a second publicly traded share class to index share class holders, the newly issued share class line will be considered for inclusion if the event is mandatory and the market capitalization of the distributed class is not considered to be de minimis.

The index is calculated by using the divisor methodology used in all S&P equity indices. The initial divisor was set to have a base value of 1,000 on December 17, 1999. The index level is the index market value divided by the index divisor. In order to maintain index series continuity, it is also necessary to adjust the divisor at each rebalancing. Therefore, the divisor (after rebalancing) equals the index market value (after rebalancing) divided by the index value before rebalancing. The divisor keeps the index comparable over time and is one manipulation point for adjustments to the index, which we refer to as maintenance of the index.

Once the price return index has been calculated, the total return index is calculated. First, the total daily dividend for each stock in the index is calculated by multiplying the per share dividend by the number of shares included in the index. Dividends are reinvested in the index after the close on the ex-date for such dividend. Then the index dividend is calculated by aggregating the total daily dividends for each of the index stocks (which may be zero for some stocks) and dividing by the divisor for that day. Next, the daily total return of the index is calculated as a fraction minus 1, the numerator of which is the sum of the index level plus the index dividend and the denominator of which is the index level on the previous day. Finally, the total return index for that day is calculated as the product of the value of the total return index on the previous day times the sum of 1 plus the index daily total return for that day.

Maintenance of the Index

The composition of the index is reviewed quarterly. Rebalancing occurs after the closing of the relevant U.S. trading markets on the third Friday of the month ending that quarter. The reference date for additions and deletions is after the closing of the last trading day of the previous month. Closing prices as of the second Friday of the last month of the quarter are used for setting index weights. Existing stocks in the index are removed at the quarterly rebalancing if either their FAMC falls below $300 million or their FALR falls below 50%. A stock will also be deleted from the index if the S&P Total Market Index deletes that stock. Stocks are added between rebalancings only if a company deletion causes the number of stocks in the index to fall below 22. The newly added stock will be added to the index at the weight of the deleted stock. If the stock was deleted at $0.00, the newly added stock will be added at the deleted stock's previous day's closing value (or the most immediate prior business day that the deleted stock was not valued at $0.00) and an adjustment to the divisor will be made (only in the case of stocks removed at $0.00). At the next rebalancing, the index will be rebalanced based on the eligibility requirements and equal-weight methodology discussed above.

In the case of GICS® changes, where a stock does not belong to the oil & gas exploration & production sub-industry or another qualifying sub-industry after the classification change, it is removed from the index on the next rebalancing date. In the case of a spin-off, the spin-off company will be added to the index at a zero price after the close of trading on the day before the ex-date. In general and subject to certain exceptions, both the parent company and spin-off companies will remain in the index until the next index rebalancing. In the case of a merger involving two index constituents, the merged entity will remain in the index provided that it meets all general eligibility requirements. The merged entity will be added to the index at the weight of the stock deemed to be the surviving stock in the transaction. The surviving stock will

Table of Contents

not experience a weight change and its subsequent weight will not be equal to that of the pre-merger weight of the merged entities.

Adjustments are made to the index in the event of certain corporate actions relating to the stocks included in the index, such as spin-offs, rights offerings, stock splits and special dividends, as specified below.

The table below summarizes the types of index maintenance adjustments:

Type of Corporate Action	Adjustment Factor	Divisor Adjustment Required
Spin-Off	In general and subject to certain exceptions, both the parent stock and spin-off stocks will remain in the index until the next index rebalancing, regardless of whether they conform to the theme of the index.	No
Rights Offering	Price is adjusted to equal (i) price of parent company minus (ii) price of rights subscription divided by the rights ratio. Index shares change so that the company's weight remains the same as its weight before the rights offering.	No
Stock split (e.g., 2-for-1), stock dividend or reverse stock split	Index shares multiplied by split factor (i.e., 2); stock price divided by split factor (i.e., 2).	No
Share issuance or share repurchase	None.	No
Special dividends	Price of the stock making the special dividend payment is reduced by the per share special dividend amount after the close of trading on the day before the dividend ex-date.	Yes

Index Committee

The Americas Thematic and Strategy Index Committee (the "index committee") maintains the index and consists of full-time professional members of S&P staff. At regular meetings, the index committee reviews pending corporate actions that may affect index constituents, statistics comparing the composition of the indices to the market, companies that are being considered as candidates for additions to the index and any significant market events. The index committee may also revise index policy, such as the rules for selecting constituents, the treatment of dividends, share counts or other matters.

Unexpected Exchange Closures

An unexpected market/exchange closure occurs when a market/exchange fully or partially fails to open or trading is temporarily halted. This can apply to a single exchange or to a market as a whole, when all of the primary exchanges are closed and/or not trading. Unexpected market/exchange closures are usually due to unforeseen circumstances, such as natural disasters, inclement weather, outages, or other events.

To a large degree, S&P is dependent on the exchanges to provide guidance in the event of an unexpected exchange closure. S&P's decision making is dependent on exchange guidance regarding pricing and mandatory corporate actions.

NYSE Rule 123C provides closing contingency procedures for determining an official closing price for listed securities if the exchange is unable to conduct a closing transaction in one or more securities due to a system or technical issue.

3:00 PM ET is the deadline for an exchange to determine its plan of action regarding an outage scenario. As such, S&P also uses 3:00 PM ET as the cutoff.

If all major exchanges fail to open or unexpectedly halt trading intraday due to unforeseen circumstances, S&P will take the following actions:

Market Disruption Prior to Open of Trading:

Table of Contents

(i) If all exchanges indicate that trading will not open for a given day, S&P will treat the day as an unscheduled market holiday. The decision will be communicated to clients as soon as possible through the normal channels. Indices containing multiple markets will be calculated as normal, provided that at least one market is open that day. Indices which only contain closed markets will not be calculated.

(ii) If exchanges indicate that trading, although delayed, will open for a given day, S&P will begin index calculation when the exchanges open.

Market Disruption Intraday:

(i) If exchanges indicate that trading will not resume for a given day, the index level will be calculated using prices determined by the exchanges based on NYSE Rule 123C. Intraday index values will continue to use the last traded composite price until the primary exchange publishes official closing prices.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Table of Contents

Historical Performance of SPDR® S&P® Oil and Gas Exploration & Production ETF

"SPDR®" is a registered trademark of Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC ("S&P") and Dow Jones is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Trademark Holdings LLC ("Dow Jones") and have been licensed for use by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC. The offered notes are not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, Dow Jones, S&P or their respective affiliates, and neither S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, Dow Jones, S&P or their respective affiliates make any representation regarding the advisability of investing in the offered notes.

Table of Contents

SPDR® Gold Trust

The SPDR® Gold Trust (the "trust") issues SPDR® Gold Shares, which represent units of fractional undivided beneficial interest in and ownership of the trust (the "shares"). The trust holds gold bars and intends for its shares to reflect the performance of the price of gold bullion minus the trust's expenses and fees. The shares trade under the ticker symbol "GLD" on the NYSE Arca.

We have derived all information regarding the trust and the shares contained in this prospectus supplement from publicly available information without independent verification. For additional information regarding the trust, please consult the reports (including the annual report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2017) and other information the trust files with the SEC. Information provided to or filed with the SEC can be inspected and copied at the public reference facilities maintained by the SEC or through the SEC's website at sec.gov and can be located by reference to SEC CIK number 0001222333. Additional information regarding the trust may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the SPDR® Gold Shares website at spdrgoldshares.com. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

The Trust

The SPDR® Gold Trust is an investment trust, formed on November 12, 2004, that holds gold bars and is expected from time to time to issue blocks of 100,000 trust shares (called baskets) in exchange for deposits of gold and to distribute gold in connection with redemptions of baskets.

The trust's sponsor is World Gold Trust Services, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company, which is wholly-owned by the World Gold Council, a not-for-profit association registered under Swiss law. The sponsor established the trust and generally oversees the performance of the trustee and the trust's principal service providers, but does not exercise day-to-day oversight. The sponsor may remove the trustee and appoint a successor in certain circumstances.

The trustee is BNY Mellon Asset Servicing, a division of The Bank of New York Mellon. The trustee is generally responsible for the day-to-day administration of the trust. This includes selling the trust's gold as needed to pay the trust's expenses (gold sales are expected to occur approximately monthly in the ordinary course), calculating the net asset value ("NAV") of the trust and the NAV per trust share, receiving and processing orders from authorized participants to create and redeem baskets and coordinating the processing of such orders with the custodian and The Depository Trust Company and monitoring the custodian. The trustee determines the NAV of the trust on each day that the NYSE Arca is open for regular trading, at the earlier of (i) the afternoon session of the twice daily determination of the price of an ounce of gold through an auction by the London Bullion Market Association (the "LBMA"), administered by the ICE Benchmark Administration, which starts at 3:00 PM London, England time (known as the "LBMA Gold Price PM"), or (ii) 12:00 PM New York time. The LBMA Gold Price is determined by participants in a physically settled, electronic and tradable auction. The LBMA Gold Price replaced the previously established London PM Gold Fix on March 20, 2015. The NAV of the trust is the aggregate value of the trust's assets less its estimated accrued but unpaid liabilities (which include accrued expenses). In determining the trust's NAV, the trustee values the gold held by the trust based on the LBMA Gold Price PM for an ounce of gold. The trustee also determines the NAV per trust share.

The custodian is HSBC Bank plc. The custodian is responsible for the safekeeping of the trust's gold bars transferred to it in connection with the creation of baskets. The custodian also facilitates the transfer of gold in and out of the trust through gold accounts it maintains for authorized participants and the trust. The custodian is a market maker, clearer and approved weigher under the rules of the LBMA.

Shareholders of the trust have no voting rights, except in limited circumstances. Shareholders holding at least 66 2/3% of the shares outstanding may vote to remove the trustee. The trustee may terminate the trust upon the agreement of shareholders owning at least 66 2/3% of the outstanding shares. In addition, certain amendments to the trust indenture require 51% or unanimous consent of the shareholders.

Table of Contents

The trust is not registered as an investment company under the Investment Company Act of 1940 and is not required to register under that act. The trust will not hold or trade in commodity futures contracts regulated by the Commodity Exchange Act of 1936 (the "CEA"), as administered by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (the "CFTC"). The trust is not a commodity pool for purposes of the CEA, and none of the sponsor, the trustee or the marketing agent, State Street Global Advisors Funds Distributors, LLC, is subject to regulation by the CFTC as a commodity pool operator or a commodity trading advisor in connection with the shares.

Investment Objective

The investment objective of the trust is for the shares to reflect the performance of the price of gold bullion, less the trust's expenses. The sponsor believes that, for many investors, the shares represent a cost-effective investment in gold. The sponsor intends the shares to offer investors an opportunity to participate in the gold market through an investment in securities without the logistics of buying, storing and insuring gold. The trust has no fixed termination date and will terminate upon the occurrence of a termination event listed in the trust indenture.

The trust indenture provides for distributions to shareholders in only two circumstances. First, if the trustee and the sponsor determine that the trust's cash account balance exceeds the anticipated expenses of the trust for the next 12 months and the excess amount is more than $0.01 per share outstanding, they shall direct the excess amount to be distributed to the shareholders. Second, if the trust is terminated and liquidated, the trustee will distribute to the shareholders any amounts remaining after the satisfaction of all outstanding liabilities of the trust and the establishment of such reserves for applicable taxes, other governmental charges and contingent or future liabilities as the trustee shall determine. Shareholders of record on the record date fixed by the trustee for a distribution will be entitled to receive their pro rata portion of any distribution.

Creation and Redemption of the Shares of the Trust

The trust creates and redeems its shares from time to time, but only in one or more baskets (a basket equals a block of 100,000 trust shares). The creation and redemption of baskets requires the delivery to the trust or the distribution by the trust of the amount of gold and any cash represented by the baskets being created or redeemed, the amount of which is based on the combined NAV of the number of trust shares included in the baskets being created or redeemed. The initial amount of gold required for deposit with the trust to create shares for the period from the formation of the trust to the first day of trading of the trust shares on the NYSE was 10,000 ounces per basket. The number of ounces of gold required to create a basket or to be delivered upon the redemption of a basket gradually decreases over time, due to the accrual of the trust's expenses and the sale of the trust's gold to pay the trust's expenses. Baskets may be created or redeemed only by an authorized participant, which is a person who is a registered broker-dealer or other securities market participant such as a bank or other financial institution which is not required to register as a broker-dealer to engage in securities transactions, is a participant in the Depository Trust Company system, has entered into an agreement with the sponsor and the trustee which provides the procedures for the creation and redemption of baskets and for the delivery of the gold and any cash required for such creations and redemptions and has established an unallocated gold account with the custodian. Authorized participants pay a transaction fee for each order to create or redeem baskets and may sell the shares included in the baskets they create to other investors.

Termination Events

The sponsor may, and it is anticipated that the sponsor will, direct the trustee to terminate and liquidate the trust at any time if the NAV of the trust is less than $350 million (as adjusted over time for inflation). The sponsor may also direct the trustee to terminate the trust if the CFTC determines that the trust is a commodity pool under the CEA. The trustee may also terminate the trust upon the agreement of trust shareholders owning at least 66 % of the outstanding trust shares.

In addition, the trustee will terminate and liquidate the trust if one of the following events occurs:

- The Depository Trust Company, the securities depository for the shares of the trust, is unwilling or unable to perform its functions under the trust indenture and no suitable replacement is available;
- The shares of the trust are de-listed from the NYSE Arca and are not listed for trading on another U.S. national securities exchange or through the NASDAQ Stock Market within five business days from the date the shares of the trust are de-listed;

Table of Contents

- The NAV of the trust remains less than $50 million for a period of 50 consecutive business days;
- The sponsor resigns or is unable to perform its duties or becomes bankrupt or insolvent and the trustee has not appointed a successor and has not itself agreed to act as sponsor;
- The trustee resigns or is removed and no successor trustee is appointed within 60 days;
- The custodian resigns and no successor custodian is appointed within 60 days;
- The sale of all of the trust's assets;
- The trust fails to qualify for treatment, or ceases to be treated, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, as a grantor trust; or
- The maximum period for which the trust is allowed to exist under New York law ends.

Upon the termination of the trust, the trustee will, within a reasonable time after the termination of the trust, sell the trust's gold bars and, after paying or making provision for the trust's liabilities, distribute the proceeds to the shareholders of the trust.

Valuation of Gold and NAV

As of 3:00 PM London time on each day that the NYSE Arca is open for regular trading or, if no LBMA Gold Price PM is determined at 3:00 PM London time on such day or the LBMA Gold Price PM has not been announced by 12:00 PM New York time on such day, as of 12:00 PM New York time on such day, the trustee values the gold held by the trust and determines both the adjusted NAV and the NAV of the trust. The trustee values the trust's gold on the basis of that day's LBMA Gold Price PM or, if no LBMA Gold Price PM is determined on such day or has not been announced by the valuation time, the next most recent LBMA Gold Price (AM or PM) determined prior to that time is used, unless the trustee, in consultation with the sponsor, determines that such price is inappropriate as a basis for valuation. In the event the trustee and the sponsor determine that the LBMA Gold Price PM or last prior LBMA Gold Price (AM or PM) is not an appropriate basis for valuation of the trust's gold, they shall identify an alternative basis for such valuation to be employed by the trustee. Once the value of the gold has been determined, the trustee subtracts all estimated accrued fees (other than the fees accruing for the evaluation day which are computed by reference to the adjusted NAV of the trust or the custody fees accruing for the evaluation day which are based on the value of the gold held by the trust), expenses and other liabilities of the trust from the total value of the gold and all other assets of the trust (other than any amounts credited to the trust's reserve account, if established). The resulting figure is the adjusted NAV of the trust. The adjusted NAV of the trust is used to compute the fees of the sponsor, the trustee and the marketing agent. To determine the trust's NAV, the trustee subtracts the amount of estimated accrued fees accruing for the evaluation day which are computed by reference to the adjusted NAV of the trust and to the value of the gold held by the trust from the adjusted NAV of the trust. The resulting figure is the NAV of the trust. The trustee also determines the NAV per trust share by dividing the NAV of the trust by the number of the trust shares outstanding as of the close of trading on NYSE Arca (which includes the net number of any trust shares created or redeemed on such evaluation day).

The shares may trade at, above or below the NAV per share. The NAV per share fluctuates with changes in the market value of the trust's assets. The trading price of the shares fluctuates in accordance with changes in the NAV per share as well as market supply and demand.

Expenses and Fees

The trust's only recurring fixed expense is the sponsor's fees which accrue daily at an annual rate equal to 0.40% of the daily NAV. In exchange for the sponsor's fee, the sponsor has agreed to pay all ordinary fees and expenses of the trust (which include the fees and expenses of the trustee and the fees and expenses of the custodian for the custody of the trust's gold bars), the fees and expenses of the sponsor, certain taxes, the fees of the marketing agent, printing and mailing costs, legal and audit fees, registration fees, NYSE Arca listing fees and other marketing costs and expenses. In order to pay the trust's expenses, the trustee sells gold held by the trust on an as needed basis. Each sale of gold by the trust is a taxable event to shareholders of the trust.

Table of Contents
Additionally, if the trust incurs unforeseen expenses that cause the total ordinary expenses of the trust to exceed 0.70% per year of the daily adjusted NAV of the trust, the ordinary expenses will accrue at a rate greater than 0.40% per year of the daily adjusted NAV of the trust, even after the sponsor and the marketing agent have completely waived their combined fees of 0.30% per year of the daily adjusted NAV of the trust.
The trustee's fee is payable monthly in arrears and is accrued daily at an annual rate equal to 0.02% of the adjusted NAV of the trust, subject to a minimum fee of $500,000 and a maximum fee of $2,000,000 per year. The custodian's fee is computed at an annual rate equal to 0.10% of the average daily aggregate value of the first 4.5 million ounces of gold held in the trust and 0.06% of the average daily aggregate value of all gold held in the trust in excess of 4.5 million ounces.
Understanding the LBMA Gold Price
Although the market for physical gold is global, most over the counter market trades are cleared through London. In addition to coordinating market activities, the LBMA acts as the principal point of contact between the market and its regulators. A primary function of the LBMA is its involvement in the promotion of refining standards by maintenance of the "London Good Delivery Lists," which are the lists of LBMA accredited melters and assayers of gold. The LBMA also coordinates market clearing and vaulting, promotes good trading practices and develops standard documentation.
ICE Benchmark Administration ("IBA"), on behalf of the LBMA, has assumed responsibility for establishing the LBMA Gold Price as of March 20, 2015. In April 2017, the IBA introduced central clearing to the gold auction. Central clearing removes the need for firms to have large bilateral credit lines in place with each other in order to become a direct participant. This opens up the auction to a broader cross section of the market and also facilitates greater volume in the auction.
IBA operates electronic auctions for spot, unallocated Loco London gold (gold bullion that is physically held in London), providing a market-based platform for buyers and sellers to trade. The auctions are run at 10:30am and 3:00pm London time. The final auction price is published to the market as LBMA Gold Price AM and LBMA Gold Price PM.
The price formation for the gold auction is in USD only. The final price is converted into the benchmark in other currencies including: Australian Dollars; British Pounds, Canadian Dollars, Euros, Onshore and Offshore Yuan, Indian Rupees, Japanese Yen, Malaysian Ringgit, Russian Rubles, Singapore Dollars, South African Rand, Swiss Francs, New Taiwan Dollars, Thai Baht and Turkish Lira. The benchmarks in other currencies are not tradeable directly through the auction.
The methodology is reviewed by the Precious Metals Oversight Committee as documented in its Terms of Reference. The frequency of reviews is set by the Oversight Committee through its Calendar of Agenda Items.
The auctions run in rounds of 30 seconds. At the start of each round, IBA publishes a price for that round. Participants then have 30 seconds to enter, change or cancel their orders (how much gold they want to buy or sell at that price). At the end of each round, order entry is frozen and the system checks to see if the difference between buying and selling (the imbalance) is within the imbalance threshold (normally 10,000 oz. for gold).
If the imbalance is outside of the threshold at the end of a round, then the auction is not balanced, the price is adjusted and a new round starts. If the imbalance is within the threshold then the auction is finished and the price is set. Any imbalance is shared equally between all direct participants (even if they did not place orders or did not log in) and the net volume for each participant trades at the final price. The final price is then published as the LBMA Gold Price in US Dollars and also converted into the benchmarks in other currencies using foreign exchange rates from when the final round ended.
The prices during the auction are determined by an algorithm that takes into account current market conditions and the activity in the auction. Each auction is actively supervised by IBA staff.
If the IBA discovers an error during an auction round, the auction round could be stopped and restarted. If the IBA makes an error in an auction which is discovered after an auction is finished, the auction could not be rerun, but the IBA could replace the published auction price with a No Publication. If a participant makes an error which is discovered after an auction is finished, the auction could not be rerun. If fewer than three direct participants are present for the auction and the IBA therefore publishes a price without conducting an auction but the IBA publishes an incorrect price, the incorrect price could be amended if the error were discovered within 30 minutes after publication.If the IBA publishes an incorrect non-USD price, the incorrect non-USD price could be amended if the

error were discovered within 30 minutes after publication.

As of October 31, 2018, the SPDR® website reported the following annual returns on the market price of the trust's shares and the price of gold (determined by the London PM Fix through March 19, 2015). The market

Table of Contents

price returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at the time the NAV of the trust is calculated on the relevant date. Trust shares: 1 year, -4.57%; 3 years, 1.75%; 5 years, -2.05%; 10 years, 4.90%; since ETF inception, 7.00%; gold: 1 year, -4.35%; 3 years, 2.07%; 5 years, -1.70%; 10 years, 5.21%; since ETF inception, 7.51%.

Historical Closing Prices of the Trust's Shares

The closing price of shares of the trust has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant trust closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the trust over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the trust from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of SPDR® Gold Trust

"SPDR®" is a registered trademark of Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC ("S&P") and Dow Jones is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Trademark Holdings LLC ("Dow Jones") and have been licensed for use by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC. The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, Dow Jones, S&P or their respective affiliates, and neither S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, Dow Jones, S&P or their respective affiliates make any representation regarding the advisability of investing in the index.

Table of Contents

iShares® TIPS Bond ETF

The shares of the iShares® TIPS Bond ETF (the "ETF") are issued by iShares® Trust, a registered investment company.

- The ETF is a tracking ETF that seeks investment results which correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index.
- The index it tracks is the Bloomberg Barclays U.S. Treasury Inflation Protected Securities (TIPS) Index (Series-L) (the "index").
- Investment Advisor: BlackRock ETF Advisors ("BFA").
- The ETF's shares trade on the NYSE Arca under the ticker symbol "TIP".
- The iShares® Trust's SEC CIK Number is 0001100663.
- The ETF's launch date was December 4, 2003.
- The ETF's shares are issued or redeemed only in creation units of 100,000 shares or multiples thereof.

We obtained the following fee information from the iShares® website without independent verification. The investment advisor is paid a management fee from the ETF calculated based on the aggregate average daily net assets of the ETF and a set of other specified iShares® funds (the "funds"). The management fee for the ETF equals the ratio of the ETF's net assets over the aggregate net assets of the ETF multiplied by the amount calculated as follows: 0.2000% per annum of the aggregate net assets less than or equal to $121.0 billion; plus 0.1900% per annum of the aggregate net assets over $121.0 billion up to and including $181.0 billion; plus 0.1805% per annum of the aggregate net assets over $181.0 billion up to and including $231.0 billion; plus 0.1715% per annum of the aggregate net assets over $231.0 billion up to and including $281.0 billion; plus 0.1630% per annum of the aggregate net assets in excess of $281.0 billion. As of September 30, 2018, the expense ratio of the ETF was 0.20% per annum.

For additional information regarding iShares® Trust or BFA, please consult the reports (including the Semi-Annual Report to Shareholders on Form N–CSRS for the period ended April 30, 2018) and other information iShares® Trust files with the SEC. In addition, information regarding the ETF, including its top portfolio holdings, may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the iShares® website at us.ishares.com/product_info/fund/overview/TIP.htm. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Investment Objective and Strategy

The ETF seeks to provide investment results that correspond generally to the price and yield performance, before fees and expenses, of the index. The ETF's investment objective and the index that the ETF tracks may be changed without shareholder approval.

BFA uses a representative sampling indexing strategy to attempt to track the performance of the index. For the ETF, this strategy involves investing in a representative sample of securities that collectively have an investment profile similar to that of the index. The securities selected are expected to have, in the aggregate, investment characteristics (based on factors such as market capitalization and industry weightings), fundamental characteristics (such as return variability, duration, maturity or credit ratings and yield) and liquidity measures similar to those of the index. The ETF may or may not hold all of the securities in the index.

The ETF generally invests at least 90% of its assets in the bonds in the index and at least 95% of its assets in U.S. government bonds. The ETF may invest up to 10% of its assets in U.S. government bonds not included in the index, but which BFA believes will help the ETF track the index. The ETF may also invest up to 5% of its assets in repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government obligations and in cash and cash equivalents, including shares of money market funds advised by BFA or its affiliates. The ETF may lend securities representing up to one-third of the value of the ETF's total assets (including the value of the collateral received).

Table of Contents

The ETF's Holdings

The following table displays the top holdings of the ETF. We obtained the information in the tables below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

iShares® TIPS Bond ETF Top Ten Holdings as of November 12, 2018

Treasury Inflation-Protected Note	Percentage (%)
0.13% due 4/15/2021	9.59%
0.13% due 4/15/2020	8.77%
0.63% due 1/15/2026	7.12%
0.38% due 7/15/2025	5.74%
0.13% due 7/15/2024	5.64%
0.13% due 7/15/2026	4.78%
0.13% due 1/15/2023	4.14%
0.25% due 1/15/2025	4.04%
0.13% due 1/15/2022	3.83%
0.13% due 4/15/2022	3.56%
Total	57.21%

The following table displays additional information about the bonds held by the ETF as of November 12, 2018. We obtained the information in the table below from the iShares® website without independent verification.

Weighted average maturity	7.96 years
Weighted average coupon	0.62%
Effective duration	7.29 years

Weighted average maturity is the length of time until the average security in the ETF will mature or be redeemed by its issuer. Weighted average coupon is the average coupon rate of the underlying bonds in the ETF, weighted by the relative size in the ETF. Effective duration is a measure of the potential responsiveness of a bond or portfolio price to small parallel shifts in interest rates, taking into account the possible changes in expected bond cash flows due to small parallel shifts in interest rates. Real modified duration is a measure of the potential responsiveness of an inflation-linked bond or portfolio price to small parallel shifts in real interest rates (as opposed to nominal interest rates).

As of November 12, 2018, the ETF's holdings were comprised of 38 U.S. Treasury bonds (99.99% of holdings) and cash and/or derivatives (0.01% of holdings). Of the ETF's U.S. Treasury bond holdings, all were AAA rated under the S&P major rating category. The S&P major rating categories are derived from the S&P, Moody's and Fitch ratings for a security.

Tracking Error

The performance of the ETF and the index may vary due to a variety of factors, including differences between the securities and other instruments held in the ETF's portfolio and those included in the index, pricing differences, transaction costs, the ETF holding uninvested cash, differences in timing of the accrual of distributions, tax gains or losses, changes to the index or the costs of complying with various new or existing regulatory requirements. Tracking error also may result because the ETF incurs fees and expenses, while the index does not. BFA expects that, over time, the ETF's tracking error will not exceed 5%. The ETF's use of a representative sampling indexing strategy can be expected to produce a larger tracking error than would result if the ETF used a replication indexing strategy in which an ETF invests in substantially all of the securities in its index in approximately the same proportions as in the index.

As of October 31, 2018, iShares® reported the following average annual returns on the market price of the ETF's shares and the index. The market price of the ETF's shares takes into account distributions on the shares

Table of Contents

and the returns shown account for changes in the mid-point of the bid and ask prices at 4:00 p.m., Eastern time on the relevant date. ETF shares: 1 year, -1.40%; 3 years, 1.30%; 5 years, 0.85%; 10 years, 3.90%; since inception, 3.65%; index: 1 year, -1.24%; 3 years, 1.46%; 5 years, 0.97%; 10 years, 4.11%; since ETF inception, 3.80%.

The Index

The index is administered by Bloomberg Index Services Limited (the "index administrator"), which determines the composition and relative weightings of the securities in the index and publishes information regarding its market value. The index measures the performance of the inflation-protected public obligations of the U.S. Treasury, commonly known as "TIPS." TIPS are securities issued by the U.S. Treasury that are designed to provide inflation protection to investors. TIPS are income-generating instruments whose interest and principal payments are adjusted for inflation — a sustained increase in prices that erodes the purchasing power of money. The inflation adjustment, which is typically applied monthly to the principal of the bond, follows a designated inflation index, the Consumer Price Index (the "CPI"), and TIPS' principal payments are adjusted according to changes in the CPI. A fixed coupon rate is applied to the inflation-adjusted principal so that as inflation rises, both the principal value and the interest payments increase. This can provide investors with a hedge against inflation, as it helps preserve the purchasing power of an investment. Because of this inflation adjustment feature, inflation-protected bonds typically have lower yields than conventional fixed-rate bonds. The index is calculated in U.S. dollars on a total return (gross) basis.

The index includes all publicly-issued U.S. Treasury inflation-protected securities that have at least one year remaining to maturity, are rated investment grade using the middle rating of Moody's, S&P and Fitch, and have $500 million or more par amount outstanding. In determining index eligibility, Federal Reserve purchases and sales in open market operations of U.S. Treasuries are deducted from the total amount outstanding using data made publicly available on the Federal Reserve Bank of New York website. New issuances bought at auction by the Federal Reserve do not enter the index, and net secondary market purchases/sales are adjusted at each month-end with a one-month lag.

In addition, the securities must be denominated in U.S. dollars and bear interest at a fixed rate. The index does not include certain issues, such as Treasury bills, bellwether securities, or coupon issues that have been stripped from bonds. The securities in the index are updated on the last calendar day of each month.

Rebalancing the Index. The index is rebalanced at each month-end, and this represents the fixed set of bonds on which index returns are calculated for the ensuing month, which is referred to as the "returns universe". While intra-month changes are not made to the returns universe, there is a second universe of stocks kept for the index, the "projected universe", where indicative intra-month changes to securities (credit rating change, sector reclassification, amount outstanding changes, corporate actions, ticker changes) are reflected on a daily basis. These changes will affect the composition of the returns universe at month-end when the index is rebalanced, and the projected universe becomes the returns universe. Eligible securities issued, but not necessarily settled, on or before the month-end rebalancing date qualify for immediate inclusion in the projected universe and inclusion in the returns universe the following month, so long as required security reference information and pricing are readily available.

Intra-month cash flows. Intra-month cash flows from interest and principal payments contribute to monthly index returns, but the cash itself does not generate its own partial month return. However, at each rebalancing, accumulated cash is stripped out of the index and is effectively reinvested into the index for the following month, so that index results over two or more months reflect monthly compounding.

Calculation. The amount outstanding reported for the TIPS is equal to the notional par value of each TIP. The notional amount is adjusted on a monthly basis in the projected universe for government purchases and sales for Federal Reserve SOMA account conducted in the previous month, and the adjustments are reflected in the returns universe in the following month. When a new TIPS is issued or an existing issue is reopened, the initial par amount outstanding is reduced for any issuance bought by the Federal Reserve at auction.

The "index ratio" is used as a multiplier to adjust the nominal principal and coupon payments of the security, so that their real values remain unchanged. The index ratio is generally the ratio of the CPI to the base CPI. Each security has its own unique base CPI, depending on when it was issued. Therefore, the index ratio differs for each bond.

Table of Contents

The index ratio is used to calculate the inflated price and the inflated accrued interest of the securities held in the index. The market value of the index is equal to (inflated price + inflated accrued interest) / 100) * amount outstanding.

Additional information regarding the index may be obtained from other sources including, but not limited to, press releases, newspaper articles, other publicly available documents, and the US TIPS (Series-L) Index factsheet available at bloombergindices.com/bloomberg-barclays-indices-resources/. We are not incorporating by reference the website, the sources listed above or any material they include in this prospectus supplement.

Historical Closing Prices of the ETF's Shares

The closing price of shares of the ETF has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the closing price of the shares during the period shown below is not an indication that the shares are more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of your notes. The period shown below will be approximately ten years, but may be shorter if Bloomberg Financial Services does not provide historical closing prices for the entirety of such period (whether due to the applicable inception date occurring less than ten years from the date hereof or otherwise).

You should not take the historical closing prices of the shares as an indication of the future performance of the shares. We cannot give you any assurance that the future performance of the shares will result in your receiving an amount greater than the outstanding face amount of your notes on the stated maturity date. Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the shares. Before investing in the offered notes, you should consult publicly available information to determine the relevant ETF closing prices between the date of this prospectus supplement and the date of your purchase of the offered notes. The actual performance of the ETF over the life of the offered notes, as well as the cash settlement amount at maturity may bear little relation to the historical prices shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical prices of the shares of the ETF from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the closing prices shown in the graph below from Bloomberg Financial Services without independent verification.

Historical Performance of iShares® TIPS Bond ETF

Table of Contents

"iShares®" is a registered trademark of BlackRock Institutional Trust Company, N.A. ("BITC"). The index is not sponsored, endorsed, sold, or promoted by BITC. BITC makes no representations or warranties to the owners of the index or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in the index. BITC has no obligation or liability in connection with the operation, marketing, trading or sale of the index.

Table of Contents

THE NOTIONAL INTEREST RATE

The money market position is included in the cash equivalent asset class and reflects the notional return accruing to a hypothetical investor from an investment in a money market account denominated in U.S. dollars that accrues interest at a rate determined by reference to the notional interest rate, which is the notional interest rate.

The graph below illustrates the historical levels of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate for the period shown below. The level of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate has fluctuated in the past and may, in the future, experience significant fluctuations. Any historical upward or downward trend in the level of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate during the period shown below is not an indication that the level of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate is more or less likely to increase or decrease at any time during the life of the notes. See "U.K. Regulators Will No Longer Persuade or Compel Banks to Submit Rates for Calculation of LIBOR After 2021; Interest Rate Benchmark May Be Discontinued" and "Additional Risk Factors Specific to Your Notes — Regulation and Reform of "Benchmarks", Including LIBOR and Other Types of Benchmarks, May Cause such "Benchmarks" to Perform Differently Than in the Past, or to Disappear Entirely, or Have Other Consequences Which Cannot be Predicted" for more information about 3-month USD LIBOR.

You should not take the historical level of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate as an indication of future levels of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate.

Neither we nor any of our affiliates make any representation to you as to the performance of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate. The actual levels of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate during the term of the notes may bear little relation to the historical levels of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate shown below.

The graph below shows the daily historical levels of the 3-month USD LIBOR rate from November 20, 2008 through November 20, 2018. We obtained the 3-month USD LIBOR rates shown in the graph below from Reuters, without independent verification.

Historical Performance of 3 Month USD LIBOR

The notes are not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by ICE Benchmark Administration and ICE Benchmark Administration makes no representation regarding the advisability of investing in the notes.

Table of Contents

SUPPLEMENTAL DISCUSSION OF FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES

The following section supplements the discussion of U.S. federal income taxation in the accompanying prospectus. The following section is the opinion of Sidley Austin llp, counsel to GS Finance Corp. and The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. It applies to you only if you hold your notes as a capital asset for tax purposes. This section does not apply to you if you are a member of a class of holders subject to special rules, such as:

- a dealer in securities or currencies;
- a trader in securities that elects to use a mark-to-market method of accounting for your securities holdings;
- a bank;
- a regulated investment company;
- a life insurance company;
- a tax-exempt organization;
- a partnership;
- a person that owns the notes as a hedge or that is hedged against interest rate risks;
- a person that owns the notes as part of a straddle or conversion transaction for tax purposes; or
- a United States holder (as defined below) whose functional currency for tax purposes is not the U.S. dollar.

This section is based on the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, its legislative history, existing and proposed regulations under the Internal Revenue Code, published rulings and court decisions, all as currently in effect. These laws are subject to change, possibly on a retroactive basis.

You should consult your tax advisor concerning the U.S. federal income tax and other tax consequences of your investment in the notes, including the application of state, local or other tax laws and the possible effects of changes in federal or other tax laws.

United States Holders

This subsection describes the tax consequences to a United States holder. You are a United States holder if you are a beneficial owner of notes and you are:

- a citizen or resident of the United States;
- a domestic corporation;
- an estate whose income is subject to U.S. federal income tax regardless of its source; or
- a trust if a United States court can exercise primary supervision over the trust's administration and one or more United States persons are authorized to control all substantial decisions of the trust.

If you are not a United States holder, this section does not apply to you and you should refer to "— United States Alien Holders" below.

Your notes will be treated as debt instruments subject to special rules governing contingent payment debt instruments for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Under those rules, the amount of interest you are required to take into account for each accrual period will be determined by constructing a projected payment schedule for your notes and applying rules similar to those for accruing original issue discount on a hypothetical noncontingent debt instrument with that projected payment schedule. This method is applied by first determining the yield at which we would issue a noncontingent fixed rate debt instrument with terms and conditions similar to your notes (the "comparable yield") and then determining as of the issue date a payment schedule that would produce the comparable yield. These rules will generally have the effect of requiring you to include amounts in income in respect of your notes over their term based on the comparable yield for the notes, even though you generally will not receive any payments from us until maturity.

It is not entirely clear how, under the rules governing contingent payment debt instruments, the maturity date for debt instruments (such as your notes) that provide for the possibility of early redemption should be determined for purposes of computing the comparable yield and projected payment schedule. It would be reasonable, however, to compute the comparable yield and projected payment schedule for your notes (and we intend to make the computation in such a manner) based on the assumption that your notes will remain outstanding until the stated maturity date.

Table of Contents

We have determined that the comparable yield for the notes is equal to 4.39% per annum, compounded semi-annually with a projected payment at maturity of $1,357.22 based on an investment of $1,000.

Based on this comparable yield, if you are an initial holder that holds a note until maturity and you pay your taxes on a calendar year basis, we have determined that you would be required to report the following amounts as ordinary income, not taking into account any positive or negative adjustments you may be required to take into account based on the actual payments on the notes, from the note each year:

Accrual Period	Interest Deemed to Accrue During Accrual Period (per $1,000 note)	Total Interest Deemed to Have Accrued from Original Issue Date (per $1,000 note) as of End of Accrual Period
November 29, 2018 through December 31, 2018	$3.78	$3.78
January 1, 2019 through December 31, 2019	$44.54	$48.32
January 1, 2020 through December 31, 2020	$46.52	$94.84
January 1, 2021 through December 31, 2021	$48.59	$143.43
January 1, 2022 through December 31, 2022	$50.75	$194.18
January 1, 2023 through December 31, 2023	$53.00	$247.18
January 1, 2024 through December 31, 2024	$55.35	$302.53
January 1, 2025 through December 11, 2025	$54.69	$357.22

You are required to use the comparable yield and projected payment schedule that we compute in determining your interest accruals in respect of your notes, unless you timely disclose and justify on your U.S. federal income tax return the use of a different comparable yield and projected payment schedule.

The comparable yield and projected payment schedule are not provided to you for any purpose other than the determination of your interest accruals in respect of your notes, and we make no representation regarding the amount of contingent payments with respect to your notes.

If you purchase your notes at a price other than their adjusted issue price determined for tax purposes, you must determine the extent to which the difference between the price you paid for your notes and their adjusted issue price is attributable to a change in expectations as to the projected payment schedule, a change in interest rates, or both, and reasonably allocate the difference accordingly. The adjusted issue price of your notes will equal your notes' original issue price plus any interest deemed to be accrued on your notes (under the rules governing contingent payment debt instruments) as of the time you purchase your notes. The original issue price of your notes will be the first price at which a substantial amount of the notes is sold to persons other than bond houses, brokers or similar persons or organizations acting in the capacity of underwriters, placement agents or wholesalers. Therefore, you may be required to make the adjustments described above even if you purchase your notes in the initial offering if you purchase your notes at a price other than the issue price.

If the adjusted issue price of your notes is greater than the price you paid for your notes, you must make positive adjustments increasing (i) the amount of interest that you would otherwise accrue and include in income each year, and (ii) the amount of ordinary income (or decreasing the amount of ordinary loss) recognized upon maturity by the amounts allocated under the previous paragraph to each of interest and the projected payment schedule; if the adjusted issue price of your notes is less than the price you paid for your notes, you must make negative adjustments, decreasing (i) the amount of interest that you must include in income each year, and (ii) the amount of ordinary income (or increasing the amount of ordinary loss) recognized upon maturity by the amounts allocated under the previous paragraph to each of interest and the projected payment schedule. Adjustments allocated to the interest amount are not made until the date the daily portion of interest accrues.

Because any Form 1099-OID that you receive will not reflect the effects of positive or negative adjustments resulting from your purchase of notes at a price other than the adjusted issue price determined for tax purposes, you are urged to consult with your tax advisor as to whether and how adjustments should be made to the amounts reported on any Form 1099-OID.

Table of Contents

You will recognize income or loss upon the sale, exchange, redemption or maturity of your notes in an amount equal to the difference, if any, between the cash amount you receive at such time and your adjusted basis in your notes. In general, your adjusted basis in your notes will equal the amount you paid for your notes, increased by the amount of interest you previously accrued with respect to your notes (in accordance with the comparable yield and the projected payment schedule for your notes), and increased or decreased by the amount of any positive or negative adjustment, respectively, that you are required to make if you purchase your notes at a price other than the adjusted issue price determined for tax purposes.

Any income you recognize upon the sale, exchange, redemption or maturity of your notes will be ordinary interest income. Any loss you recognize at such time will be ordinary loss to the extent of interest you included as income in the current or previous taxable years in respect of your notes, and, thereafter, capital loss. If you are a noncorporate holder, you would generally be able to use such ordinary loss to offset your income only in the taxable year in which you recognize the ordinary loss and would generally not be able to carry such ordinary loss forward or back to offset income in other taxable years.

Pursuant to recently enacted legislation, for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2018, with respect to a debt instrument issued with original issue discount, such as the notes, an accrual method taxpayer that reports revenues on an applicable financial statement generally must recognize income for U.S. federal income tax purposes no later than the taxable year in which such income is taken into account as revenue in an applicable financial statement of the taxpayer. For this purpose, an "applicable financial statement" generally means a financial statement certified as having been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles or that is made on the basis of international financial reporting standards and which is used by the taxpayer for various specified purposes. This rule could potentially require such a taxpayer to recognize income for U.S. federal income tax purposes with respect to the notes prior to the time such income would be recognized pursuant to the rules described above. Potential investors in the notes should consult their tax advisors regarding the potential applicability of these rules to their investment in the notes.

United States Alien Holders

If you are a United States alien holder, please see the discussion under "United States Taxation — Taxation of Debt Securities — United States Alien Holders" in the accompanying prospectus for a description of the tax consequences relevant to you. You are a United States alien holder if you are the beneficial owner of the notes and are, for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

- a nonresident alien individual;
- a foreign corporation; or
- an estate or trust that in either case is not subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net income basis on income or gain from the notes.

The Treasury Department has issued regulations under which amounts paid or deemed paid on certain financial instruments ("871(m) financial instruments") that are treated as attributable to U.S.-source dividends could be treated, in whole or in part depending on the circumstances, as a "dividend equivalent" payment that is subject to tax at a rate of 30% (or a lower rate under an applicable treaty), which in the case of amounts you receive upon the sale, exchange, redemption or maturity of your notes, could be collected via withholding. If these regulations were to apply to the notes, we may be required to withhold such taxes if any U.S.-source dividends are paid on any ETFs included in the index during the term of the notes. We could also require you to make certifications (e.g., an applicable Internal Revenue Service Form W-8) prior to the maturity of the notes in order to avoid or minimize withholding obligations, and we could withhold accordingly (subject to your potential right to claim a refund from the Internal Revenue Service) if such certifications were not received or were not satisfactory. If withholding was required, we would not be required to pay any additional amounts with respect to amounts so withheld. These regulations generally will apply to 871(m) financial instruments (or a combination of financial instruments treated as having been entered into in connection with each other) issued (or significantly modified and treated as retired and reissued) on or after January 1, 2021, but will also apply to certain 871(m) financial instruments (or a combination of financial instruments treated as having been entered into in connection with each other) that have a delta (as defined in the applicable Treasury regulations) of one and are issued (or significantly modified and treated as retired and reissued) on or after January 1, 2017. In addition, these regulations will not apply to financial instruments that reference a "qualified index" (as defined in the regulations). We have determined that, as of the issue date of your notes, your notes will not be subject to withholding under these rules. In certain limited circumstances, however, you should be aware that it is possible for United States alien holders to be liable for tax under these rules with respect to a combination of transactions treated as having been entered into in connection with each other even when no withholding is required. You should consult your tax advisor concerning these regulations, subsequent official guidance and regarding any other possible alternative characterizations of your notes for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Table of Contents

Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA) Withholding

Pursuant to Treasury regulations, Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA) withholding (as described in "United States Taxation—Taxation of Debt Securities—Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA) Withholding" in the accompanying prospectus) will generally apply to obligations that are issued on or after July 1, 2014; therefore, the notes will generally be subject to FATCA withholding. However, according to published guidance, the withholding tax described above will not apply to payments of gross proceeds from the sale, exchange, redemption or other disposition of the notes made before January 1, 2019.

Table of Contents

EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT INCOME SECURITY ACT

This section is only relevant to you if you are an insurance company or the fiduciary of a pension plan or an employee benefit plan (including a governmental plan, an IRA or a Keogh Plan) proposing to invest in the notes.

The U.S. Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (“ERISA”) and the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), prohibit certain transactions (“prohibited transactions”) involving the assets of an employee benefit plan that is subject to the fiduciary responsibility provisions of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code (including individual retirement accounts, Keogh plans and other plans described in Section 4975(e)(1) of the Code) (a “Plan”) and certain persons who are “parties in interest” (within the meaning of ERISA) or “disqualified persons” (within the meaning of the Code) with respect to the Plan; governmental plans may be subject to similar prohibitions unless an exemption applies to the transaction. The assets of a Plan may include assets held in the general account of an insurance company that are deemed “plan assets” under ERISA or assets of certain investment vehicles in which the Plan invests. Each of The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. and certain of its affiliates may be considered a “party in interest” or a “disqualified person” with respect to many Plans, and, accordingly, prohibited transactions may arise if the notes are acquired by or on behalf of a Plan unless those notes are acquired and held pursuant to an available exemption. In general, available exemptions are: transactions effected on behalf of that Plan by a “qualified professional asset manager” (prohibited transaction exemption 84-14) or an “in-house asset manager” (prohibited transaction exemption 96-23), transactions involving insurance company general accounts (prohibited transaction exemption 95-60), transactions involving insurance company pooled separate accounts (prohibited transaction exemption 90 1), transactions involving bank collective investment funds (prohibited transaction exemption 91-38) and transactions with service providers under Section 408(b)(17) of ERISA and Section 4975(d)(20) of the Code where the Plan receives no less and pays no more than “adequate consideration” (within the meaning of Section 408(b)(17) of ERISA and Section 4975(f)(10) of the Code). The person making the decision on behalf of a Plan or a governmental plan shall be deemed, on behalf of itself and the plan, by purchasing and holding the notes, or exercising any rights related thereto, to represent that (a) the plan will receive no less and pay no more than “adequate consideration” (within the meaning of Section 408(b)(17) of ERISA and Section 4975(f)(10) of the Code) in connection with the purchase and holding of the notes, (b) none of the purchase, holding or disposition of the notes or the exercise of any rights related to the notes will result in a nonexempt prohibited transaction under ERISA or the Code (or, with respect to a governmental plan, under any similar applicable law or regulation), and (c) neither The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. nor any of its affiliates is a “fiduciary” (within the meaning of Section 3(21) of ERISA or, with respect to a governmental plan, under any similar applicable law or regulation) with respect to the purchaser or holder in connection with such person’s acquisition, disposition or holding of the notes, or as a result of any exercise by The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. or any of its affiliates of any rights in connection with the notes, and neither The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. nor any of its affiliates has provided investment advice in connection with such person’s acquisition, disposition or holding of the notes.

If you are an insurance company or the fiduciary of a pension plan or an employee benefit plan (including a government plan, an IRA or a Keogh plan) and propose to invest in the notes, you should consult your legal counsel.

Table of Contents

SUPPLEMENTAL PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

GS Finance Corp. has agreed to sell to GS&Co., and GS&Co. has agreed to purchase from GS Finance Corp., the aggregate face amount of the offered notes specified on the front cover of this prospectus supplement. GS&Co. proposes initially to offer the notes to the public at the original issue price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus supplement, and to certain securities dealers at such price less a concession not in excess of 2.25% of the face amount. In addition to the concession, any such securities dealer will receive from us a structuring fee of 0.35% of the face amount of each such note.

GS&Co. has engaged Incapital LLC to provide certain marketing services from time to time relating to notes of this series. Incapital LLC will receive a fee of 0.8% of the face amount of each note offered hereby from us in connection with such services.

In the future, GS&Co. or other affiliates of GS Finance Corp. may repurchase and resell the offered notes in market-making transactions, with resales being made at prices related to prevailing market prices at the time of resale or at negotiated prices. GS Finance Corp. estimates that its share of the total offering expenses, excluding underwriting discounts and commissions, will be approximately $20,000. For more information about the plan of distribution and possible market-making activities, see "Plan of Distribution" in the accompanying prospectus.

We will deliver the notes against payment therefor in New York, New York on November 29, 2018. Under Rule 15c6-1 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, trades in the secondary market generally are required to settle in two business days, unless the parties to any such trade expressly agree otherwise. Accordingly, purchasers who wish to trade notes on any date prior to two business days before delivery will be required to specify alternative settlement arrangements to prevent a failed settlement.

We have been advised by GS&Co. that it intends to make a market in the notes. However, neither GS&Co. nor any of our other affiliates that makes a market is obligated to do so and any of them may stop doing so at any time without notice. No assurance can be given as to the liquidity or trading market for the notes.

Any notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated by this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement may not be offered, sold or otherwise made available to any retail investor in the European Economic Area. Consequently no key information document required by Regulation (EU) No 1286/2014 (the "PRIIPs Regulation") for offering or selling the notes or otherwise making them available to retail investors in the EEA has been prepared and therefore offering or selling the notes or otherwise making them available to any retail investor in the EEA may be unlawful under the PRIIPs Regulation. For the purposes of this provision:

a) the expression "retail investor" means a person who is one (or more) of the following:

(i) a retail client as defined in point (11) of Article 4(1) of Directive 2014/65/EU (as amended, "MiFID II"); or

(ii) a customer within the meaning of Directive 2002/92/EC (as amended, the "Insurance Mediation Directive"), where that customer would not qualify as a professional client as defined in point (10) of Article 4(1) of MiFID II; or

(iii) not a qualified investor as defined in Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, the "Prospectus Directive"); and

b) the expression an "offer" includes the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for the notes.

In relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a "Relevant Member State"), GS&Co. has represented and agreed that with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus Directive is implemented in that Relevant Member State (the "Relevant Implementation Date") it has not made and will not make an offer of notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated by this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement to the public in that Relevant Member State except that, with effect from and including the Relevant Implementation Date, an offer of such notes may be made to the public in that Relevant Member State:

a) at any time to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;

b) at any time to fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), subject to obtaining the prior consent of the relevant dealer or dealers nominated by the issuer for any such offer; or

S-170

Table of Contents

c) at any time in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive,

provided that no such offer of notes referred to above shall require us or any dealer to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an "offer of notes to the public" in relation to any notes in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for the notes, as the same may be varied in that Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Member State and the expression "Prospectus Directive" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU), and includes any relevant implementing measure in the Relevant Member State.

Any invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity (within the meaning of Section 21 of the FSMA) in connection with the issue or sale of the notes may only be communicated or caused to be communicated in circumstances in which Section 21(1) of the FSMA does not apply to GS Finance Corp. or The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc.

All applicable provisions of the FSMA must be complied with in respect to anything done by any person in relation to the notes in, from or otherwise involving the United Kingdom.

The notes may not be offered or sold in Hong Kong by means of any document other than (i) to "professional investors" as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571 of the Laws of Hong Kong) and any rules made thereunder, or (ii) in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a "prospectus" as defined in the Companies (Winding Up and Miscellaneous Provisions) Ordinance (Cap. 32 of the Laws of Hong Kong) or which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of that Ordinance; and no advertisement, invitation or document relating to the notes may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere) which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public in Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the securities laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to the notes which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to "professional investors" as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance and any rules made thereunder.

This prospectus supplement, along with the accompanying prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus have not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus supplement, along with the accompanying prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the notes may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the notes be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor (as defined in Section 4A of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the "SFA")) under Section 274 of the SFA, (ii) to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA) pursuant to Section 275(1) of the SFA, or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A) of the SFA, and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275 of the SFA or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA, in each case subject to conditions set forth in the SFA.

Where the notes are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor, the securities (as defined in Section 239(1) of the SFA) of that corporation shall not be transferable for six months after that corporation has acquired the notes under Section 275 of the SFA except: (1) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the SFA or to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA), (2) where such transfer arises from an offer in that corporation's securities pursuant to Section 275(1A) of the SFA, (3) where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer, (4) where the transfer is by operation of law, (5) as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA, or (6) as specified in Regulation 32 of the Securities and Futures (Offers of Investments) (Shares and Debentures) Regulations 2005 of Singapore ("Regulation 32").

Where the notes are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary of the trust is an accredited investor, the beneficiaries' rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferable for six months after that trust has acquired the notes under Section 275 of the SFA except: (1) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the SFA or to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA), (2) where such transfer arises from an offer that is made on terms that such rights or interest are acquired at a consideration of not less than S$200,000 (or its equivalent in a foreign currency) for each transaction (whether such amount is to be paid for in cash or by exchange of securities or other assets), (3) where no consideration is

Table of Contents

or will be given for the transfer, (4) where the transfer is by operation of law, (5) as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA, or (6) as specified in Regulation 32.

The notes have not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Act of Japan (Act No. 25 of 1948, as amended), or the FIEA. The notes may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to or for the benefit of any resident of Japan (including any person resident in Japan or any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan) or to others for reoffering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to or for the benefit of any resident of Japan, except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of the FIEA and otherwise in compliance with any relevant laws and regulations of Japan.

The notes are not offered, sold or advertised, directly or indirectly, in, into or from Switzerland on the basis of a public offering and will not be listed on the SIX Swiss Exchange or any other offering or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. Accordingly, neither this prospectus supplement nor any accompanying prospectus supplement, prospectus or other marketing material constitute a prospectus as defined in article 652a or article 1156 of the Swiss Code of Obligations or a listing prospectus as defined in article 32 of the Listing Rules of the SIX Swiss Exchange or any other regulated trading facility in Switzerland. Any resales of the notes by the underwriters thereof may only be undertaken on a private basis to selected individual investors in compliance with Swiss law. This prospectus supplement and accompanying prospectus and prospectus supplement may not be copied, reproduced, distributed or passed on to others or otherwise made available in Switzerland without our prior written consent. By accepting this prospectus supplement and accompanying prospectus and prospectus supplement or by subscribing to the notes, investors are deemed to have acknowledged and agreed to abide by these restrictions. Investors are advised to consult with their financial, legal or tax advisers before investing in the notes.

Conflicts of Interest

GS&Co. is an affiliate of GS Finance Corp. and The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. and, as such, will have a “conflict of interest” in this offering of notes within the meaning of Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (FINRA) Rule 5121. Consequently, this offering of notes will be conducted in compliance with the provisions of FINRA Rule 5121. GS&Co. will not be permitted to sell notes in this offering to an account over which it exercises discretionary authority without the prior specific written approval of the account holder.

Table of Contents

VALIDITY OF THE NOTES AND GUARANTEE

In the opinion of Sidley Austin llp, as counsel to GS Finance Corp. and The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc., when the notes offered by this prospectus supplement have been executed and issued by GS Finance Corp., the related guarantee offered by this prospectus supplement has been executed and issued by The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc., and such notes have been authenticated by the trustee pursuant to the indenture, and such notes and the guarantee have been delivered against payment as contemplated herein, (a) such notes will be valid and binding obligations of GS Finance Corp., enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency and similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally, concepts of reasonableness and equitable principles of general applicability (including, without limitation, concepts of good faith, fair dealing and the lack of bad faith), provided that such counsel expresses no opinion as to the effect of fraudulent conveyance, fraudulent transfer or similar provision of applicable law on the conclusions expressed above and (b) such related guarantee will be a valid and binding obligation of The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc., enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency and similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally, concepts of reasonableness and equitable principles of general applicability (including, without limitation, concepts of good faith, fair dealing and the lack of bad faith), provided that such counsel expresses no opinion as to the effect of fraudulent conveyance, fraudulent transfer or similar provision of applicable law on the conclusions expressed above. This opinion is given as of the date hereof and is limited to the laws of the State of New York and the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware as in effect on the date hereof. In addition, this opinion is subject to customary assumptions about the trustee’s authorization, execution and delivery of the indenture and the genuineness of signatures and certain factual matters, all as stated in the letter of such counsel dated July 10, 2017, which has been filed as Exhibit 5.6 to the registration statement on Form S-3 filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission by GS Finance Corp. and The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc. on July 10, 2017.

Table of Contents

We have not authorized anyone to provide any information or to make any representations other than those contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus supplement or the accompanying prospectus. We take no responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give you. This prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus is an offer to sell only the notes offered hereby, but only under circumstances and in jurisdictions where it is lawful to do so. The information contained in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus is current only as of the respective dates of such documents.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Prospectus Supplement

	Page
Summary Information	S-11
Hypothetical Examples	S-13
Additional Risk Factors Specific to Your Notes	S-17
Specific Terms of Your Notes	S-41
Use of Proceeds	S-46
Hedging	S-46
The Index	S-47
The Eligible Underlying Assets	S-73
The Notional Interest Rate	S-164
Supplemental Discussion of Federal Income Tax Consequences	S-165
Employee Retirement Income Security Act	S-169
Supplemental Plan of Distribution	S-170
Conflicts of Interest	S-172
Validity of the Notes and Guarantee	S-173

Prospectus Supplement dated July 10, 2017

Use of Proceeds	S-2
Description of Notes We May Offer	S-3
Considerations Relating to Indexed Notes	S-15
United States Taxation	S-18
Employee Retirement Income Security Act	S-19
Supplemental Plan of Distribution	S-20
Validity of the Notes and Guarantees	S-21

Prospectus dated July 10, 2017

Available Information	2
Prospectus Summary	4
Risks Relating to Regulatory Resolution Strategies and Long-Term Debt Requirements	8
Use of Proceeds	11
Description of Debt Securities We May Offer	12
Description of Warrants We May Offer	45
Description of Units We May Offer	60

GS Finance Corp.	65
Legal Ownership and Book-Entry Issuance	67
Considerations Relating to Floating Rate Debt Securities	72
Considerations Relating to Indexed Securities	73
Considerations Relating to Securities Denominated or Payable in or Linked to a Non-U.S. Dollar Currency	74
United States Taxation	77
Plan of Distribution	92
Conflicts of Interest	94
Employee Retirement Income Security Act	95
Validity of the Securities and Guarantees	95
Experts	96
Review of Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements by Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	96
Cautionary Statement Pursuant to the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995	96

$864,000

GS Finance Corp.

Autocallable GS Momentum Builder® Multi-
Asset 5S ER Index-Linked Notes due 2025

guaranteed by
The Goldman Sachs Group, Inc.

Goldman Sachs & Co. LLC